SAMSUNG

Contact SAMSUNG WORLD WIDE

If you have any questions or comments relating to Samsung products, please contact the SAMSUNG customer care centre.

Country	Customer Care Centre ☎	Web Site
AUSTRIA	0800 - SAMSUNG (0800 - 7267864)	www.samsung.com/at/support
BELGIUM	02-201-24-18	www.samsung.com/be/support (Dutch) www.samsung.com/be_fr/support (French)
BOSNIA	051 331 999	www.samsung.com/support
BULGARIA	07001 33 11 , sharing cost	www.samsung.com/bg/support
CROATIA	062 726 786	www.samsung.com/hr/support
CZECH	800 - SAMSUNG (800-726786)	www.samsung.com/cz/support
	Samsung Electronics Czech and Slovak, s.r.o. V Parku 2343/24, 148 00 - Praha 4	
DENMARK	70 70 19 70	www.samsung.com/dk/support
FINLAND	030-6227 515	www.samsung.com/fi/support
FRANCE	01 48 63 00 00	www.samsung.com/fr/support
GERMANY	0180 6 SAMSUNG bzw. 0180 6 7267864* [HHP] 0180 6 M SAMSUNG bzw. (*0,20 €/Anruf aus dem dt. Festnetz, aus dem Mobilfunk max. 0,60 €/Anruf)	www.samsung.com/de/support
CYPRUS	8009 4000 only from landline, toll free	www.samsung.com/gr/support
GREECE	80111-SAMSUNG (80111 726 7864) only from land line (+30) 210 6897691 from mobile and land line	
HUNGARY	0680SAMSUNG (0680-726-786) 0680PREMIUM (0680-773-648)	http://www.samsung.com/hu/support
ITALIA	800-SAMSUNG (726-7864) [HHP] 800.Msamsung (800.67267864)	www.samsung.com/it/support
LUXEMBURG	261 03 710	www.samsung.com/support
MONTENEGRO	020 405 888	www.samsung.com/support
SLOVENIA	080 697 267 090 726 786	www.samsung.com/si/support
NETHERLANDS	0900-SAMSUNG (0900-7267864) (€ 0,10/Min)	www.samsung.com/nl/support
NORWAY	815 56480	www.samsung.com/no/support
POLAND	0 801-172-678* lub +48 22 607-93-33 ** [HHP] 0 801-672-678* lub +48 22 607-93-33** *(całkowity koszt połączenia jak za 1 impuls według taryfy operatora) ** (koszt połączenia według taryfy operatora)	www.samsung.com/pl/support
PORTUGAL	808 20 7267	www.samsung.com/pt/support
ROMANIA	08008 SAMSUNG (08008 726 7864) TOLL FREE No.	www.samsung.com/ro/support
SERBIA	011 321 6899	www.samsung.com/rs/support
SLOVAKIA	0800 - SAMSUNG (0800-726 786)	www.samsung.com/sk/support
SPAIN	0034902172678 [HHP] 0034902167267	www.samsung.com/es/support
SWEDEN	0771 726 7864 (SAMSUNG)	www.samsung.com/se/support
SWITZERLAND	0848 726 78 64 (0848-SAMSUNG)	www.samsung.com/ch/support (German) www.samsung.com/ch_fr/support (French)
U.K	0330 SAMSUNG (7267864)	www.samsung.com/uk/support
EIRE	0818 717100	www.samsung.com/ie/support
LITHUANIA	8-800-77777	www.samsung.com/lt/support
LATVIA	8000-7267	www.samsung.com/lv/support
ESTONIA	800-7267	www.samsung.com/ee/support
TURKEY	444 77 11	www.samsung.com/tr/support

© 2014 Samsung Electronics Co., Ltd. All rights reserved.

BN68-06352G-01

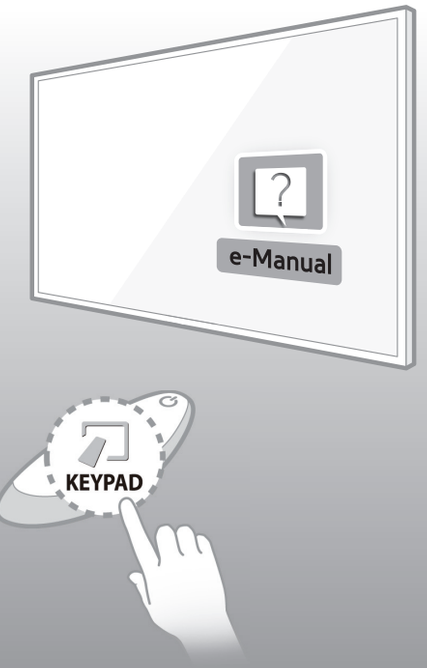
SAMSUNG

SERIES 8

Samsung UHD TV

Ultra High Definition 4K

user manual



Thank you for purchasing this Samsung product.

To receive more complete service, please register your product at

www.samsung.com/register

Model _____ Serial No. _____

Java POWERED

Warning! Important Safety Instructions

(Please read the appropriate section that corresponds to the marking on your Samsung product before attempting to install the product.)

CAUTION

RISK OF ELECTRIC SHOCK DO NOT OPEN

CAUTION: TO REDUCE THE RISK OF ELECTRIC SHOCK, DO NOT REMOVE COVER (OR BACK). THERE ARE NO USER SERVICEABLE PARTS INSIDE. REFER ALL SERVICING TO QUALIFIED PERSONNEL.



This symbol indicates that high voltage is present inside. It is dangerous to make any kind of contact with any internal part of this product.



This symbol alerts you that important literature concerning operation and maintenance has been included with this product.

The slots and openings in the cabinet and in the back or bottom are provided for necessary ventilation. To ensure reliable operation of this apparatus, and to protect it from overheating, these slots and openings must never be blocked or covered.

- Do not cover this apparatus in a confined space, such as a bookcase or built-in cabinet, unless proper ventilation is provided.
- Do not place this apparatus near or over a radiator or heat resistor, or where it is exposed to direct sunlight.
- Do not place a vessel containing water (vases etc.) on this apparatus, as this can result in a risk of fire or electric shock.

Do not expose this apparatus to rain or place it near water (near a bathtub, washbowl, kitchen sink, or laundry tub, in a wet basement, or near a swimming pool etc.). If this apparatus accidentally gets wet, unplug it and contact an authorised dealer immediately. Make sure to pull out the power cord from the outlet before cleaning.

This apparatus use batteries. In your community there might be regulations that require you to dispose of these batteries properly under environmental considerations. Please contact your local authorities for disposal or recycling information.

Do not overload wall outlets, extension cords or adaptors beyond their capacity, since this can result in fire or electric shock.

Power-supply cords should be routed so that they are not likely to be walked on or pinched by items placed upon or against them, paying particular attention to cords at plug end, adaptors and the point where they exit from the appliance.

To protect this apparatus from a lightning storm, or when it is left unattended and unused for long periods of time, unplug it from the wall outlet and disconnect the antenna or cable system. This will prevent damage to the set due to lightning and power line surges.

Before connecting the AC power cord to the DC adaptor outlet, make sure the voltage designation of the DC adaptor corresponds to the local electrical supply.

Never insert anything metallic into the open parts of this apparatus. Doing so may create a danger of electric shock.

To avoid electric shock, never touch the inside of this apparatus. Only a qualified technician should open this apparatus.

Make sure to plug the power cord in until it is firmly inserted. When removing the power cord, make sure to hold the power plug when pulling the plug from the outlet. Do not touch the power cord with wet hands.

If this apparatus does not operate normally - in particular, if there are any unusual sounds or smells coming from it - unplug it immediately and contact an authorised dealer or service centre.

Be sure to pull the power plug out of the outlet if the TV is to remain unused or if you are to leave the house for an extended period of time (especially when children, elderly or disabled people will be left alone in the house).

- Accumulated dust can cause an electric shock, an electric leakage or a fire by causing the power cord to generate sparks and heat or the insulation to deteriorate.

Be sure to contact an authorised service centre, when installing your set in a location with heavy dust, high or low temperatures, high humidity, chemical substances and where it operates for 24 hours such as the airport, the train station etc. Failure to do so may cause serious damage to your set.

Use only a properly grounded plug and receptacle.

- An improper ground may cause electric shock or equipment damage. (Class I Equipment only.)

To disconnect the apparatus from the mains, the plug must be pulled out from the mains socket, therefore the mains plug shall be readily operable.

Do not allow children to hang onto the product.

Store the accessories (battery, etc.) in a location safely out of the reach of children.

Do not install the product in an unstable location such as a shaky self, a slanted floor or a location exposed to vibration.

Do not drop or impart any shock to the product. If the product is damaged, disconnect the power cord and contact a service centre.

Unplug the power cord from the power outlet and wipe the product using a soft, dry cloth. Do not use any chemicals such as wax, benzene, alcohol, thinners, insecticide, aerial freshener, lubricant or detergent. This may damage the appearance or erase the printing on the product.

Apparatus shall not be exposed to dripping or splashing.

Do not dispose of batteries in a fire.

Do not short circuit, disassemble or overheat the batteries.

Danger of explosion if battery is incorrectly replaced. Replace only with the same or equivalent type.

WARNING - TO PREVENT THE SPREAD OF FIRE, KEEP CANDLES OR OTHER OPEN FLAMES AWAY FROM THIS PRODUCT AT ALL TIMES.

* Figures and illustrations in this User Manual are provided for reference only and may differ from the actual product appearance. Product design and specifications may change without notice.

CIS languages (Russian, Ukrainian, Kazakhs) are not available for this product, since this is manufactured for customers in EU region.



What's in the Box?

Samsung Smart Control & Batteries (AA x 2)
Remote Control & Batteries (AAA x 2)
User Manual
Warranty Card (Not available in some locations)
Regulatory Guide
Power Cord
Samsung 3D Active Glasses



CI Card Adapter


IR Extender Cable


wall mount adapter

- Please make sure the following items are included with your TV. If any items are missing, contact your dealer.
- The items' colours and shapes may vary depending on the models.
- Cables not included can be purchased separately.
- Check for any accessories hidden behind or in the packing materials when opening the box.

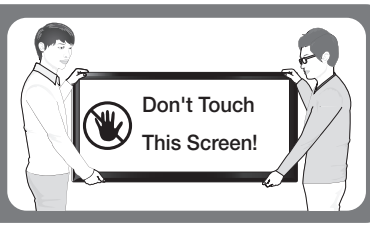
An administration fee may be charged if either

(a) an engineer is called out at your request and there is no defect with the product (i.e. where the user manual has not been read).

(b) you bring the unit to a repair centre and there is no defect with the product (i.e. where the user manual has not been read).

You will be informed of the administration fee amount before a technician visits.

Warning: Screens can be damaged from direct pressure when handled incorrectly. We recommend lifting the TV at the edges, as shown.



Attaching the TV to the Stand

Make sure you have all the accessories shown, and that you assemble the stand following the provided assembly instructions.

Mounting the TV on the Wall Using the Wall Mount Kit (Optional)

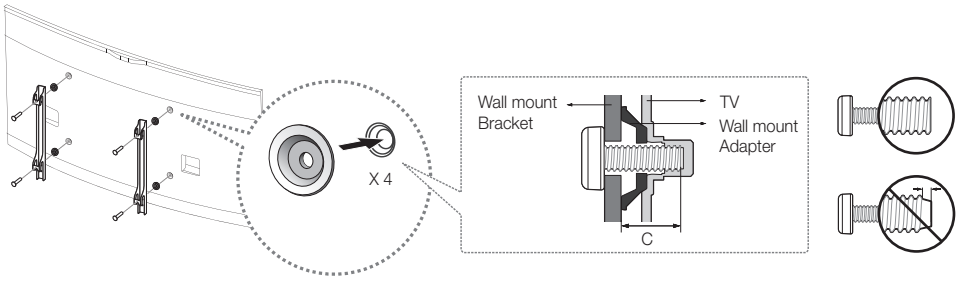
If you mount this product on a wall, it should be mounted only as recommended by the manufacturer. Unless it is correctly mounted, the product may slide or fall, causing serious injury to a child or adult, and serious damage to the product.

Installing the Wall Mount Kit

The wall mount kit (sold separately) lets you mount the TV on the wall.

To assemble the wall mount, use the styrofoam that came with the TV's packaging to protect it. Lay the TV down and attach the screws.

For detailed information about installing the wall mount, refer to the instructions provided with the wall mount. We recommend that you contact a technician for assistance when installing the wall mount bracket. We do not advise you to do it yourself. Samsung Electronics is not responsible for any damage to the product or injury to yourself or others if you select to install the wall mount on your own.



Before installing any other wall mounting kit, assemble the wall mount adapter provided separately with the TV.

- Refer to "Install manual" included in our wall mounting kit.

Wall Mount Kit Specifications (VESA)

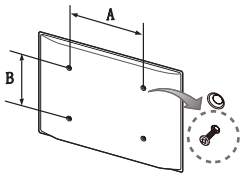
The wall mount kit is not supplied, but is sold separately. Install your wall mount on a solid wall perpendicular to the floor. When attaching the wall mount to other building materials, please contact your nearest dealer. If the product is installed on a ceiling or slanted wall, it may fall and result in severe personal injury.

- Standard dimensions for wall mount kits are shown in the table below.
- When purchasing our wall mount kit, a detailed installation manual and all parts necessary for assembly are provided.
- Do not use screws that do not comply with the VESA standard screw specifications.
- Do not use screws that are longer than the standard dimension or do not comply with the VESA standard screw specifications. Screws that are too long may cause damage to the inside of the TV set.

- For wall mounts that do not comply with the VESA standard screw specifications, the length of the screws may differ depending on the wall mount specifications.
- Do not fasten the screws that are too strongly; this may damage the product or cause the product to fall, leading to personal injury. Samsung is not liable for these kinds of accidents.
- Samsung is not liable for product damage or personal injury when a non-VESA or non-specified wall mount is used or the consumer fails to follow the product installation instructions.
- Do not mount the TV at more than a 15 degree tilt.

When using a third-party wall mount, note that the assembling screw length(C) is shown below.

Product Family	Inches	VESA Spec.(A * B)	C (mm)	Standard Screw	Quantity
UHD-TV	55	400 X 400	21.3 ~ 26.3	M8	4
	65		21.0 ~ 26.0		



Do not install your Wall Mount Kit while your TV is turned on. It may result in personal injury due to electric shock.

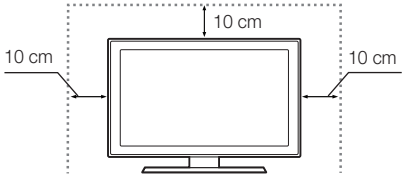
Providing Proper Ventilation for Your TV

When you install your TV, maintain a distance of at least 10 cm between the TV and other objects (walls, cabinet sides, etc.) to ensure proper ventilation. Failing to maintain proper ventilation may result in a fire or a problem with the product caused by an increase in its internal temperature.

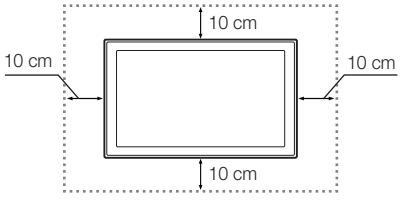
If you use parts provided by another manufacturer, it may cause difficulties with the product or result in injury caused by the product falling.

- Whether you install your TV using a stand or a wall-mount, we strongly recommend you use parts provided by Samsung Electronics only.

Installation with a stand.



Installation with a wall-mount.



Other Cautions

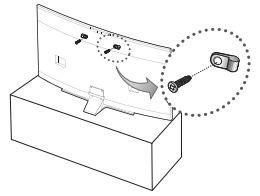
- The actual appearance of the TV may differ from the images in this manual, depending on the model.
- Be careful when you touch the TV. Some parts can be somewhat hot.

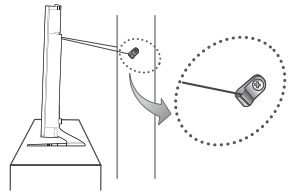
Securing the TV to the Wall



Caution: Pulling, pushing, or climbing on the TV may cause the TV to fall. In particular, ensure that your children do not hang on to or destabilize the TV. Doing so may cause the TV to tip over, resulting in serious injuries or death. Follow all safety precautions provided in the Safety Flyer included with your TV. For added stability and safety, you can purchase and install the anti-fall device as described below.

To Avoid the TV from Falling

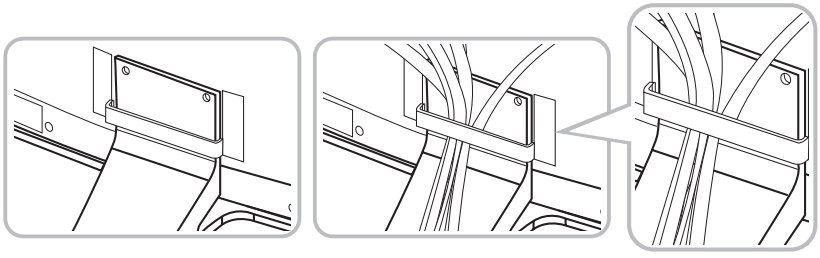




wall

1. Put the screws into the clamps and firmly fasten them into the wall. Confirm that the screws have been firmly installed into the wall.
   - You may need additional material such as anchors depending on the type of wall.
   - Since the necessary clamps, screws, and string are not supplied, please purchase these additionally.
2. Remove the screws from the centre back of the TV, put the screws into the clamps, and then fasten the screws into the TV again.
   - Screws may not be supplied with the product. In this case, please purchase screws of the following specifications.
   - Screw Specifications : For a 55 ~ 65 inches: M8
3. Connect the clamps fixed into the TV and the clamps fixed onto the wall with a strong cable and then tie the string tightly.
   - Install the TV close to the wall so that it does not fall backwards.
   - It is safe connecting the string so that the clamps fixed onto the wall are equal to or lower than the clamps fixed on the TV.
   - Untie the string before moving the TV.
4. Verify that all connections are properly secured. Periodically check connections for any sign of damage. If you have any doubt about the security of your connections, contact a professional installer.

Arrange the cables using the Cable Holder



Connecting devices to your TV

You can connect various external devices using the connectors located at the back of the product. Check the connectors and then refer to the assembly instructions provided for more information on supported external devices.

Connecting to a COMMON INTERFACE slot (Your TV viewing Card Slot)

- Turn the TV off to connect or disconnect a CI card or CI card adapter.

Attaching the CI Card Adapter

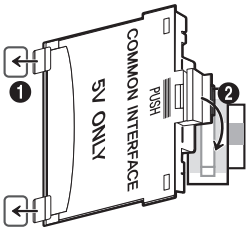
- A CI Card Adapter that lets the TV use two different CI Cards is available, depending on the model.

Attach the adapter as shown.

- To install the CI CARD Adapter, please remove the sticker attached to the TV.

To connect the CI CARD Adapter, follow these steps.

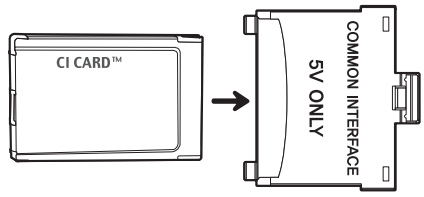
- We recommend attaching the adapter before installing the wall mount, or inserting the “CI or CI+ CARD”.



1. Insert the CI CARD Adapter into the two holes on the product 1.
   - Please locate the two holes at the back of the TV next to the **COMMON INTERFACE** port.
2. Connect the CI CARD Adapter to the **COMMON INTERFACE** port on the product 2.
3. Insert the “CI or CI+ CARD”.

We recommend that you attach the CI Card adapter and insert the CI card (viewing card) before you mount the TV on the wall because it may be difficult and dangerous to do this when it is on the wall.

Using the “CI or CI+ CARD”



To watch paid channels, the “CI or CI+ CARD” must be inserted.

- If you don’t insert the “CI or CI+ CARD”, some channels will display the “Scrambled Signal” message.
- The pairing information containing a telephone number, the “CI or CI+ CARD” ID, the Host ID, and other information will be displayed in about 2~3 minutes. If an error message is displayed, please contact your service provider.
- When the configuration of channel information has finished, the message “Updating Completed” is displayed, indicating the channel list is updated.

NOTE

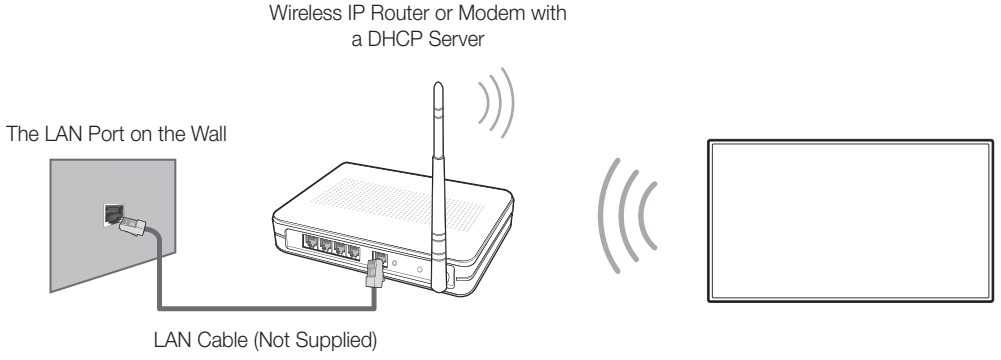
- You must obtain a “CI or CI+ CARD” from a local cable service provider.
- When removing the “CI or CI+ CARD”, carefully pull it out as dropping the “CI or CI+ CARD” may damage it.
- Insert the “CI or CI+ CARD” in the direction marked on the card.
- The location of the COMMON INTERFACE slot may differ depending on the model.
- A “CI or CI+ CARD” is not supported in some countries and regions, therefore, check with your authorised dealer.
- If you have any problems, please contact a service provider.
- Insert the “CI or CI+ CARD” that supports the current aerial settings. The screen will be distorted or will not be visible.

Connecting to a Network

Connecting the TV to a network gives you access to online services such as the Smart Hub, as well as software updates.

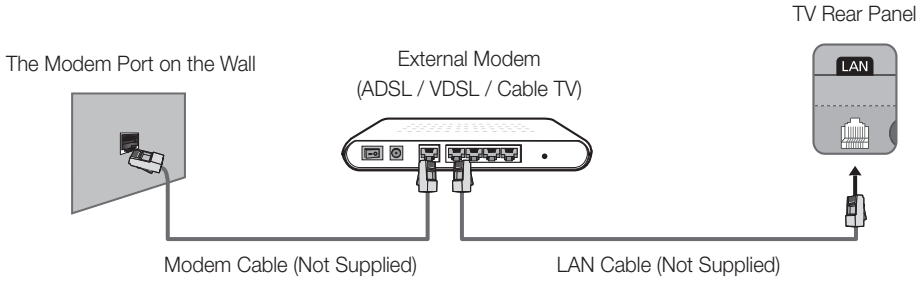
Network Connection - Wireless

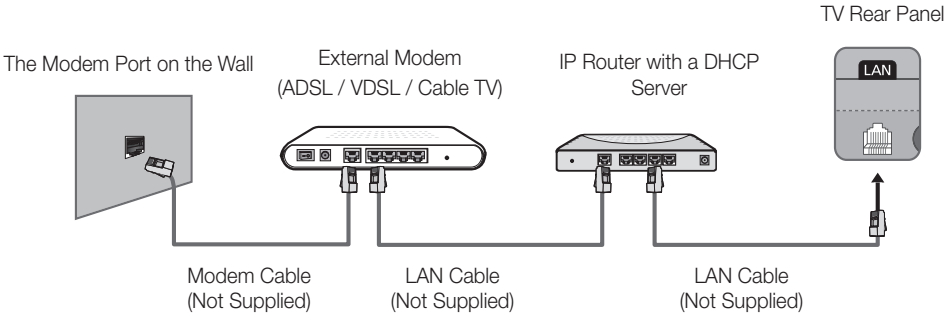
Connect the TV to the Internet using a standard router or modem.

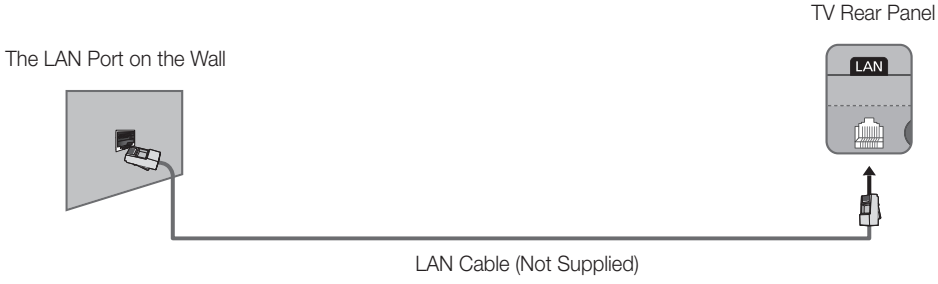


Network Connection - Wired

There are three main ways to connect your TV to your network using cable, depending on your network setup. They are illustrated starting below:





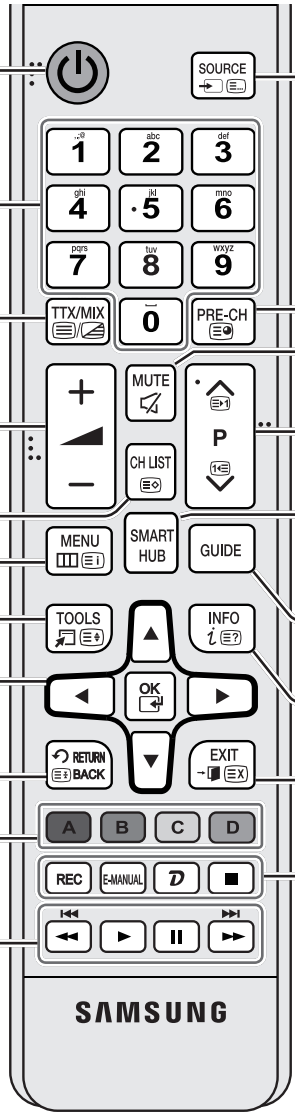


- The TV does not support network speeds less than or equal to 10Mbps.
- Use Cat 7 cable for the connection.

Remote Control

Learn where the function buttons are on your remote, such as: **SOURCE**, **MUTE**, **−** ◢ **+**, ∧ **P** ∨, **MENU**, **TOOLS**, ⏎, **INFO**, **CH LIST**, **RETURN**, **GUIDE** and **EXIT**.

- This remote control has Braille points on the **Power**, **Channel**, and **Volume** buttons and can be used by visually impaired persons.
- Your TV also comes with a Samsung Smart Control. For information about the Samsung Smart Control, refer to the e-Manual.



Turns the TV on and off.

Displays and selects available video sources.

Gives direct access to channels.

Alternately selects Teletext ON Double, Mix or OFF.

Returns to the previous channel.

Cuts off the sound temporarily.

Adjusts the volume.

Changes channels.

Displays channel lists.

Brings up **Smart Hub** applications. Refer to the e-Manual chapter, **Smart Features** > **Smart Hub**.

Opens the OSD (Menu).

Quickly selects frequently used functions.

Displays the **EPG** (Electronic Programme Guide).

Moves the cursor, selects the on-screen menu items, and changes the values seen on the TV's menu.

Displays information on the TV screen.

Returns to the previous menu.

Exits the menu.

Use these buttons according to the directions on the TV screen.

REC: Records whatever you are currently watching.

E-MANUAL: Displays the **e-Manual**.

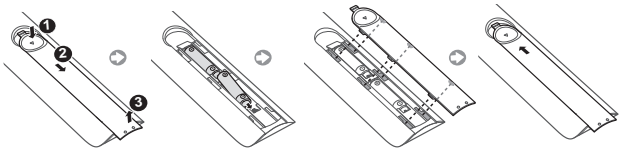
𝒟: Use this button when using data broadcast service.

■: Stop.

Use these buttons with specific features. Use these buttons according to the directions on the TV screen.

Installing the batteries (Battery size: AAA)

Match the polarities of the batteries to the symbols in the battery compartment.

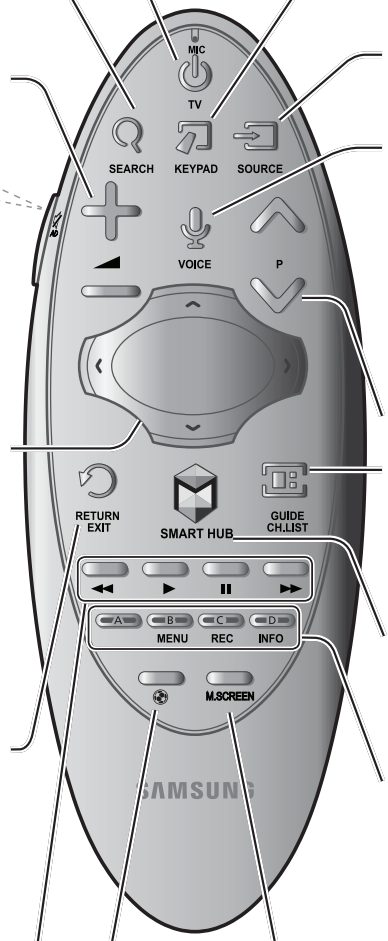


- Use the remote control within 7m of the TV.
- Bright lights may affect the performance of the remote control. Avoid using the remote control near special fluorescent lights or neon signs.

- The colour and shape may vary depending on the model.

Samsung Smart Control

- Colours and shape may vary depending on the model.



Turns the TV on/off.

Press this button to use the search window.

Changes the volume.

: Turns the sound on/off.

AD: Press and hold this button to bring up the **Accessibility Shortcuts** panel. Select the options to turn them on or off.



- Touchpad: Place a finger on the touch pad and move the Samsung Smart Control. The pointer on the screen moves in the direction and as much as the Samsung Smart Control is moved. Press the touchpad to run the focused item.
- ∧ ∨ < >: Moves the pointer or focus.

RETURN: Returns to the previous menu. Additionally, when you press this button while watching TV, you can return to the previous channel.

EXIT: Press and hold this button to exit all currently running applications.

Use these buttons with specific features. Use these buttons according to the directions on the TV screen.

Enable **Football Mode** for an optimal sports viewing experience.

With the virtual remote control on the screen, you can easily enter digits, control content, and use functions.

Changes the source.

Starts voice recognition. When the microphone icon appears on the screen, say a voice command into the microphone.

- Say a voice command 10cm to 15cm from the microphone and at an appropriate volume.

Changes the channel.

GUIDE: Displays the digital channel broadcasting schedule.

CH.LIST: Press and hold to launch the **CH.LIST**.

Launches Smart Hub. Pressing **SMART HUB** while an application is running terminates the application.

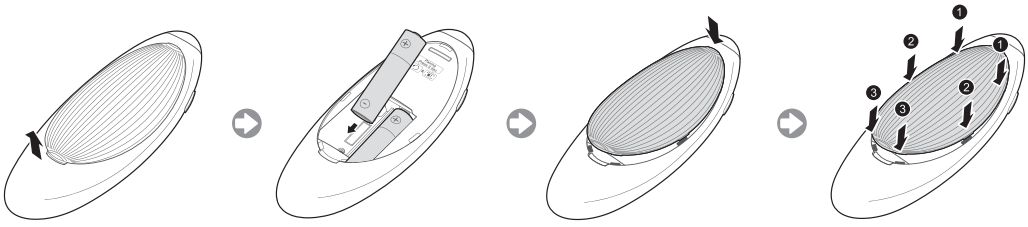
Colour button: Use these colour buttons to access additional options specific to the feature in use.

- **MENU**: Press and hold to display a menu on the screen.
- **REC**: Press and hold to record the broadcast.
- **INFO**: Press and hold to view information about the current digital channel or media file.

M.SCREEN: You can split the TV screen and use various functions such as watching TV, surfing the web, watching video, and so on. For more information, refer to the **e-Manual**.

Inserting Batteries into Samsung Smart Control

To use Samsung Smart Control, first refer to the figure below and insert batteries into the unit.

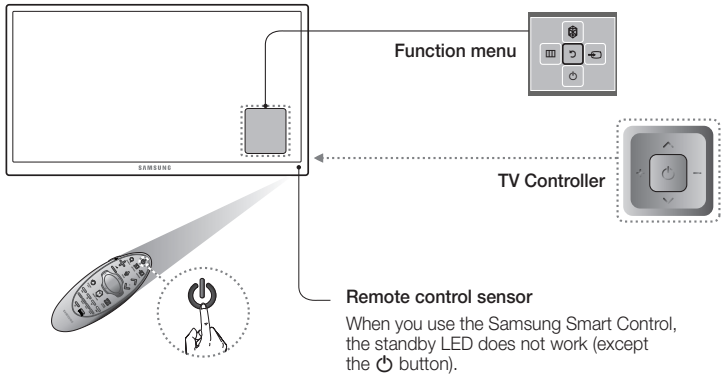


1. Gently pull on the battery cover's notch and then remove the cover completely once it comes loose.
2. Insert 2 AA alkaline batteries, making sure to align the positive and negative polarities correctly.
3. Place the battery cover on the remote control and insert the top part of the cover into the remote control.
4. Press the catches on both sides of the battery cover in the order shown so that the cover is completely attached to the remote control.

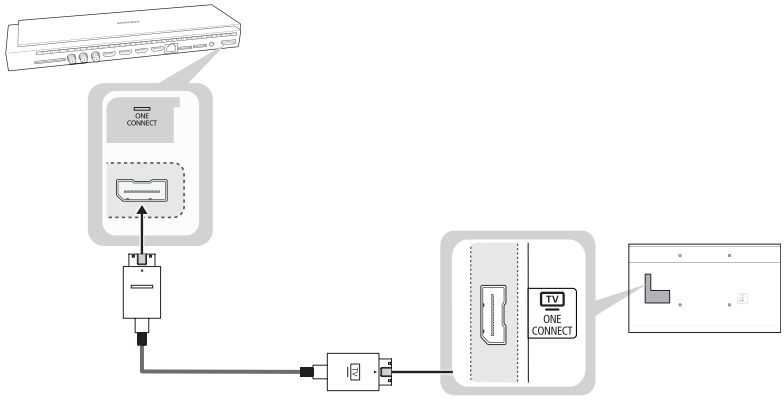
Turning on the TV

Turn on the TV using the ⏻ button on the remote control or TV panel.

- The product colour and shape may vary depending on the model.
- The TV's Controller, a small joystick-like button at the right back of the TV, lets you control the TV without the remote control.


Function menu
TV Controller
Remote control sensor
When you use the Samsung Smart Control, the standby LED does not work (except the ⏻ button).

TV Upgrade using UHD Evolution Kit (sold separately)



Connecting UHD Evolution Kit (sold separately) to a Samsung TV will allow you to enjoy the latest features and content without having to purchase a new TV. Experience the latest features and services offered by Samsung Electronics via UHD Evolution Kit.

- UHD Evolution Kit is sold separately. Purchasing UHD Evolution Kit will allow you to upgrade the software to the version from the year in which your UHD Evolution Kit was released. However, an UHD Evolution Kit may not be available, depending on the product.

Initial setup

The initial setup dialogue box appears when the TV is first activated. Follow the on-screen instructions to finish the initial setup process, including the selecting the menu language, scanning channels, connecting to the network, and more. During each step, either make a choice or skip the step. You can manually perform this process at a later time in the **System** > **Setup** menu.

- If you connect any device to **HDMI1** before starting the installation, the **Channel Source** will be changed to **Set-top box** automatically.
- If you do not want to select **Set-top box**, please select **Aerial**.

Password Change

System > **Change PIN**

Changing the TV's password.

1. Run **Change PIN** and then enter the current password in the password field. The default password is "1-1-1-1".
2. Enter a new password and then enter it again to confirm it. The password change is complete.

- If you forgot your PIN code, press the buttons in the following sequence to reset the PIN to "1-1-1-1":

  For the Standard Remote Control: In Standby mode: **MUTE** → 8 → 2 → 4 → **POWER** (On)

  For the Samsung Smart Control: When the TV turns on: **MUTE** → Volume up → **RETURN** → Volume down → **RETURN** → Volume up → **RETURN**

Selecting the video source

You can select a connected external device using the **SOURCE** button.

For example, to switch to a gaming console connected to the second HDMI connector, press **SOURCE**. From the **Source** list, select **HDMI2** to change the input signal to HDMI mode. Connector names may vary depending on the model.

The following options are available in the **Source** screen:

TOOLS Button

Select a port connected to an external device, and press and hold the Enter button. The following functions are available:

- Available options for each connector may vary.

Edit Name

Rename devices connected to the TV for easier identification of external sources.

For example, you can designate a computer connected to the TV via an HDMI-DVI cable as **DVI PC**.

Alternatively, simply designate a computer connected to the TV via an HDMI cable as **PC**.

You can also designate an AV device connected to the TV via an HDMI-DVI cable as **DVI Devices**.

Information

View detailed information about the connected devices.

Anynet+ (HDMI-CEC)

Displays a list of Anynet+ (HDMI-CEC)-compliant devices that are connected to the TV.

- This option is only available when **Anynet+ (HDMI-CEC)** is **On**.

Disconnect USB Device

Used to safely remove a USB device connected to the TV. This option is only available when a USB device has been selected.

Using the Samsung Smart Control

Samsung Smart Control makes it even easier and more convenient to use the TV. Pressing the **KEYPAD** button displays a virtual remote control that allows you to easily enter digits, control content, and activate functions on the screen.

- We recommend using Samsung Smart Control at a distance of less than 6m. A usable distance may differ depending on the wireless environmental conditions.

Pairing the Samsung Smart Control

To control the TV with Samsung Smart Control, you need to pair Samsung Smart Control to the TV via Bluetooth. Pair Samsung Smart Control to the TV.

- Samsung Smart Control can only be paired to a single TV.

Point Samsung Smart Control at the remote control sensor of the TV and press the **TV** button to turn the TV on.

- Remote control receiver's location may vary depending on the model.

Reconnecting Samsung Smart Control



If the Samsung Smart Control stops operating or works abnormally, replace the batteries as this may be due to insufficient battery power.

If the problem persists, the Samsung Smart Control restores pairing with the TV.

1. Press both the **RETURN** button and the **GUIDE** button simultaneously for more than 3 seconds.
   - You must place the Samsung Smart Control approximately 30cm ~ 40cm away from the TV and ensure it is pointing towards the remote control receiver.
2. Connection image is appeared on the screen. And then, Samsung Smart Control is connecting to TV automatically.

When you see this alarm icon on the screen...



<Low battery Alarm Icon>

Following alarm icon indicates Samsung Smart Control's batteries are low. If the alarm icon pops up, replace the batteries. Samsung recommends using alkaline batteries for a longer operating life.

Using the TV by Moving the Samsung Smart Control

The Samsung Smart Control has a motion sensor (gyro sensor) that allows you to easily control the TV by holding and moving the Samsung Smart Control.

After placing a finger on the touchpad, a pointer appears on the screen. Hold and move the Samsung Smart Control. The pointer moves the same way the Samsung Smart Control is moved. It's also possible to scroll up and down on scrollable screens.

- If you remove the finger from touchpad, the screen pointer disappears.

Using the TV with the Touchpad

- Navigate to the **Support** menu and select the **Smart Control Tutorial** option to learn how to use the touchpad, following the on screen instructions.

Moving the Focus/Pointer

Press the directional buttons (up, down, left, and right) to move the pointer or focus in the direction.

Menu Access & Item Selection

Press the touchpad. This lets you access a TV menu or select an item.

Displaying the Context-sensitive Menu on Smart Hub

Press and hold on the touch pad from the Smart Hub screen. The Options menu available to the selected item appears.

- The Options menu depends on the context.

Moving to the Smart Hub panel

On the Smart Hub screen, drag left or right on the touchpad. This will move the Smart hub panels left or right.

Scrolling on the Web Browser

Drag up/down on the touchpad in the web browser screen. This scrolls through the web screen.

Displaying the Remote Control on the Screen (virtual remote control)

Press the **KEYPAD** button to display the virtual remote control on the screen. You can easily enter digits, control content, and use TV buttons with the virtual remote control.

- The virtual remote control buttons may vary depending on the TV's current status.

Controlling External Devices with the TV Remote (Universal Remote Setup)

System > **Universal Remote Setup**

- Availability depends on the specific model and area.

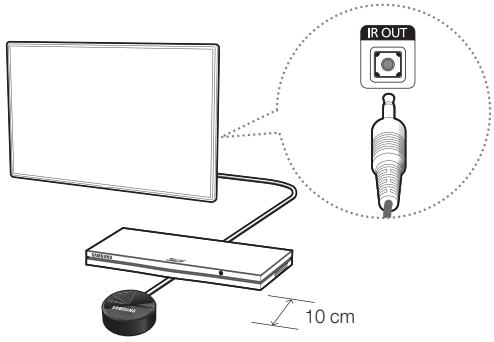
The universal remote control feature lets you control cable boxes, Blu-ray players, home theatres, and other external devices connected to the TV using the TV's remote control. In order to use the TV's remote control as a universal remote, you must first connect the IR extender cable (included).

- You can also use the Anynet+ (HDMI-CEC) function to operate some external Samsung devices with your TV's remote control without any additional setup. For more information, refer to the **e-Manual**.
- Certain external devices connected to the TV may not support the universal remote feature.

Setting Up the Universal Remote Control

Connect the IR extender cable to the TV's IR output connector as shown in the diagram and place the transmitter end within 10 cm of the external device's receiver pointing in the direction of the remote receiver. However, there must be no obstacles between the IR extender cable and the external device. The presence of obstacles interferes with the transmission of the remote control signal.

- When you use an external device registered with the Universal Remote Control on the Samsung Smart Control, you can use the external device without connecting an IR extender cable. However, if you want to use an external device using **Voice Control**, be sure to connect an IR extender cable.



Controlling External Devices with the TV Remote

1. Turn on the external device to set up the universal remote function for, and bring up the **Source** screen.
2. Select **Universal remote setup** from the top of the screen. This initiates the universal remote setup process.
3. Follow the on-screen instructions and register the external device.

Viewing more TV features

The **e-Manual** contains more detailed information on the TV features. Refer to the embedded **e-Manual** (**Support** > **e-Manual**).

Launching the e-Manual

The embedded e-Manual contains information.

- You can also download a copy of the e-Manual from Samsung's website, and read it on your computer or print it out.
- Yellow words indicate a menu item; white bold words indicate remote control buttons. Arrows are used to indicate the menu path. (Example: **Picture** > **Picture Mode**)

1. Select **e-Manual**. The e-Manual loads.
2. Select a category from the side of the screen. Once a selection has been made, the contents of the selected category appear.
3. Select an item from the list. This opens the e-manual on the corresponding page.

If a description doesn't fit on a single screen...

You can scroll pages in one of the following ways.

- Position the focus on the page to display / on the screen. Press ∧, ∨ button.

Additional e-Manual Features

Loading Pages using Keywords

Select **Search** from the side of the screen to bring up the search screen. Enter a search term and then select **Done**. Select an item from the search results to load the corresponding page.

Loading Pages from the Index Page

Select **Index** from the side of the screen to bring up the index screen. Select a keyword from the list to navigate to the relevant page.

Using the History to Load Previously Read Pages

Select **Recent pages** from the side of the screen. A list of previously read pages is shown. Select a page. The e-Manual jumps to the selected page.

Accessing the Menu from the e-Manual (Try Now)

Select (**Try Now**) on a feature-description to directly move to the corresponding menu and try out the feature.

If you want to read an **e-Manual** entry on a specific screen menu feature,

Using Samsung Smart Control: Press the **KEYPAD** button and select e-Manual.

Using the remote control: Press the **E-MANUAL** button.

- Certain menu options cannot be used.

Loading Reference Pages

Select (**Link**) from the side of a feature-description page to access the corresponding reference page.

Updating the e-Manual to the Latest Version

You can update the e-Manual in the same way as updating apps.

1. Select the **e-Manual** item in the **SAMSUNG APPS** screen.
2. Press and hold the Enter button. The Options menu appears.
3. From the Options menu on the screen, select **Update apps**. A popup window appears.
   - **Update apps** is shown on the screen only when an update is required.
4. Select **e-Manual** in the popup window and then select **Update**. You can update the **e-Manual** to the latest version.

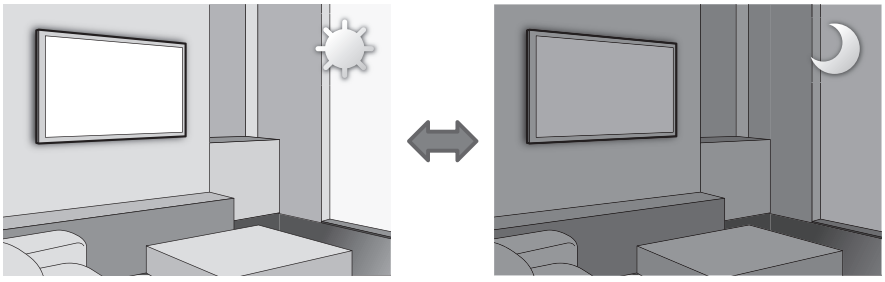
Troubleshooting

If you have any questions about the TV, first refer to the Troubleshooting list below. If none of these troubleshooting tips apply, please visit “www.samsung.com” and click on Support, or contact the call centre listed on the back cover of this manual.

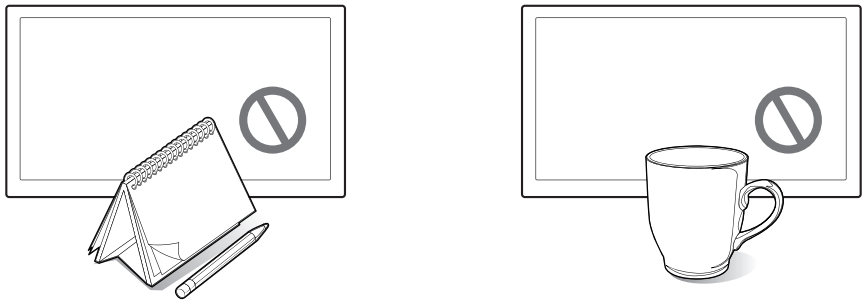
Issues	Solutions and Explanations
The TV won’t turn on.	Make sure the AC power cord is securely plugged into the wall outlet and the TV. Make sure the wall outlet is working. Try pressing the ⏻ button on the TV to make sure the problem is not the remote. If the TV turns on, refer to the “Remote control does not work” item below.
There is no picture/video.	Check the cable connections. Remove and reconnect all cables connected to the TV and external devices. Set the video outputs of your external devices (Cable/Sat Box, DVD, Blu-ray etc) to match the TV's input connections. For example, if the output of an external device is HDMI, it should be connected to an HDMI input on the TV. Make sure your connected devices are powered on. Be sure to select the correct input source. Reboot the connected device by unplugging it, and then reconnecting the device’s power cable.
The remote control does not work.	Replace the remote control batteries. Make sure the batteries are installed with their polarities (+/–) in the correct direction. Clean the sensor’s transmission window on the remote. Try pointing the remote directly at the TV from 1.5 ~ 1.8 m away.
The remote control of the cable/ set top box doesn’t turn the TV on or off or adjust the volume.	Programme the Cable/Set remote control to operate the TV. Refer to the Cable/Set-Top-Box user manual for the SAMSUNG TV code.

- This TFT LED panel uses a panel consisting of sub pixels which require sophisticated technology to produce. There may, however be a few bright or dark pixels. These pixels will have no impact on the performance of the product.
- To keep your TV running optimally upgrade to the latest firmware on the Samsung website via the USB device USB (Samsung.com > Support > Downloads).
- Some of the pictures and functions above are available for specific models only.

Cautions about the Eco Sensor and Screen Brightness



The Eco Sensor measures the light in the room and optimises the brightness of the TV automatically to reduce power consumption. This causes the TV to brighten and dim automatically. To turn this function off, go to **System** > **Eco Solution** > **Eco Sensor**.



Do not block the sensor with any material. This may decrease the picture brightness.

1. **Eco Sensor**: This power-saving feature automatically adjusts the screen brightness of the TV according to the ambient light detected by the Light Sensor.
2. To enable or disable the **Eco Sensor**, go to **System** > **Eco Solution** > **Eco Sensor** and select **On** or **Off**.
3. Please note: If the screen is too dark while watching TV in a dark environment, this may be due to the **Eco Sensor**.

What is Remote Support?

Samsung's Remote Support service offers you one-on-one support with a Samsung Technician who can remotely:

- **Diagnose** your TV
- **Adjust** your TV settings
- **Perform a factory reset** for your TV
- Install recommended **firmware updates**

How Does it Work?

Having a Samsung Tech remotely service your TV is really pretty simple



1. **Call the Samsung Contact Centre** and ask for remote support.



2. **Open the menu** on your TV and go to the **Support section**.



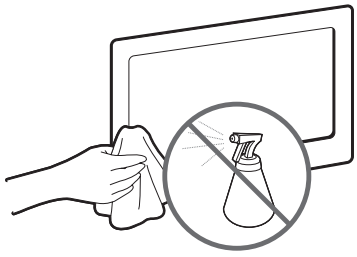
3. Select Remote Management and **Provide the Pin#** to the agent.



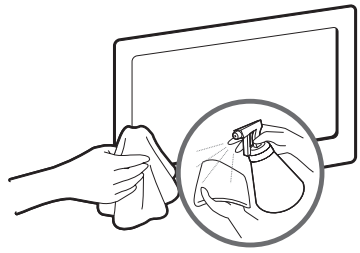
4. The agent will then **access your TV**. That's it!

Storage and Maintenance

- If a sticker was attached to the TV screen, some debris may remain after you remove the sticker. Please clean the debris off before watching TV.
- The exterior and screen of the product can get scratched while cleaning it. Be sure to wipe the exterior and screen carefully using a soft cloth to prevent scratches.



Do not spray water directly onto the product. Any liquid that enters the product may result in product failure, fire, or electric shock.



Clean the product with a soft damp cloth using a small amount of water. Do not use a flammable liquid (e.g. benzene, thinners) or a cleaning agent.

TV Specifications

Display Resolution	3840 x 2160	
Screen Curvature	4200R	
Environmental Considerations Operating Temperature Operating Humidity Storage Temperature Storage Humidity	 50°F to 104°F (10°C to 40°C) 10% to 80%, non-condensing -4°F to 113°F (-20°C to 45°C) 5% to 95%, non-condensing	
Stand Swivel (Left / Right)	0°	
Sound (Output)	60W [Front TW(10W+10W) + Front Mid (10W+10W) + Woofer (10W+10W)]	
Model Name	UE55HU8200	UE65HU8200
Screen Size (Diagonal)	55 inches	65 inches
Dimensions (W x H x D) Body With stand	 1232.6 x 715.0 x 93.4 mm 1232.6 x 761.7 x 286.0 mm	 1450.7 x 840.0 x 111.5 mm 1450.7 x 888.0 x 306.0 mm
Weight Without Stand With Stand	 19.9 kg 23.2 kg	 26.4 kg 30.1 kg

- The design and specifications are subject to change without prior notice.
- For information about the power supply, and about power consumption, refer to the label attached to the product.
- Typical power consumption is measured according to IEC 62087 Ed.2

Standby mode

To decrease power consumption, unplug the power cord when the TV will not be used for a long time.

Licences

The terms HDMI and HDMI High-Definition Multimedia Interface, and the HDMI Logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of HDMI Licensing LLC in the United States and other countries.

Still image warning

Avoid displaying still images (such as jpeg picture files), still image elements (such as TV channel logos, stock or news bars at the bottom of the screen etc.), or programmes in panorama or 4:3 image format. Constantly displaying still pictures can cause image burn-in on the LED screen, which will affect the image quality. To reduce risk of this occurring please follow the recommendations below:

- Avoid displaying the same TV channel for long periods.
- Always try to display any image in full screen. Use the TV set's picture format menu for the best possible match.
- Reduce brightness and contrast to avoid the appearance of after-images.
- Use all TV features designed to reduce image retention and screen burn. Refer to the e-Manual for more details.

Recommendation - EU Only

Hereby, Samsung Electronics, declares that this TV is in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 1999/5/EC.

The official Declaration of Conformity may be found at http://www.samsung.com, go to Support > Search Product Support and enter the model name.

This equipment may only be used indoors.

This equipment may be operated in all EU countries.

Correct Disposal of This Product (Waste Electrical & Electronic Equipment)

(Applicable in countries with separate collection systems)

This marking on the product, accessories or literature indicates that the product and its electronic accessories (e.g. charger, headset, USB cable) should not be disposed of with other household waste at the end of their working life. To prevent possible harm to the environment or human health from uncontrolled waste disposal, please separate these items from other types of waste and recycle them responsibly to promote the sustainable reuse of material resources.

Household users should contact either the retailer where they purchased this product, or their local government office, for details of where and how they can take these items for environmentally safe recycling.

Business users should contact their supplier and check the terms and conditions of the purchase contract. This product and its electronic accessories should not be mixed with other commercial wastes for disposal.

Correct disposal of the batteries in this product

(Applicable in countries with separate collection systems)

This marking on battery, manual or packaging indicates that the batteries in this product should not be disposed of with other household waste at the end of their working life. Where marked, the chemical symbols Hg, Cd or Pb indicate that the battery contains mercury, cadmium or lead above the reference levels in EC Directive 2006/66. If batteries are not properly disposed of, these substances can cause harm to human health or the environment.

To protect natural resources and to promote material reuse, please separate batteries from other types of waste and recycle them through your local, free battery return system.

This page is intentionally left blank.

Avvertenza! Istruzioni importanti di sicurezza

(Leggere la sezione corrispondente al codice del prodotto Samsung acquistato prima di iniziare l'installazione.)

ATTENZIONE

RISCHIO DI SCOSSE ELETTRICHE, NON APRIRE

ATTENZIONE: PER RIDURRE IL RISCHIO DI SCOSSE ELETTRICHE, NON RIMUOVERE IL COPERCHIO (O IL PANNELLO POSTERIORE). NON CONTIENE PARTI RIPARABILI DALL'UTENTE. RIVOLGERSI A UN TECNICO DELL'ASSISTENZA QUALIFICATO.



Questo simbolo indica che all'interno sono presenti tensioni pericolose. E' pericoloso toccare in qualsiasi modo le parti interne di questo prodotto.



Questo simbolo indica la disponibilità di informazioni importanti nella letteratura del prodotto relative al funzionamento e alla manutenzione del dispositivo.

Sul retro o sul fondo del telaio sono presenti aperture di ventilazione. Per evitare il surriscaldamento del dispositivo e garantirne un funzionamento ottimale, non ostruire o coprire in nessun caso le aperture di ventilazione.

- Non posizionare il prodotto all'interno di uno spazio confinato, come ad esempio una libreria o un vano a incasso, privo di adeguata ventilazione.
- Non collocare il prodotto vicino o sopra un radiatore o una resistenza, né esporlo a luce solare diretta.
- Non collocare sul prodotto recipienti pieni d'acqua (come vasi, ecc...); la mancata osservanza di questa precauzione può causare incendio o scosse elettriche.

Non esporre il prodotto alla pioggia né posizionarlo vicino a una fonte d'acqua (per esempio nei pressi di una vasca, un lavabo, un lavello, un lavatoio, una piscina, sopra una superficie bagnata, ecc.). Se il prodotto entra a contatto con l'acqua, scollegarlo dalla presa elettrica e rivolgersi immediatamente a un rivenditore autorizzato. Scollegare il cavo di alimentazione dalla presa prima di eseguire la pulizia del prodotto.

Questo prodotto utilizza batterie. Seguire le normative locali in vigore per il corretto smaltimento delle batterie. Contattare l'autorità locale per richiedere informazioni sulle modalità di riciclo e smaltimento.

Non sovraccaricare le prese a parete, le prolunghe e gli adattatori oltre la loro capacità per evitare rischi di incendio e scosse elettriche.

Far correre i cavi di alimentazione in modo da non calpestarli o schiacciarli da o contro qualche oggetto, ponendo particolare attenzione in prossimità di spine, adattatori e del punto in cui il cavo fuoriesce dall'apparecchio.

Per proteggere l'apparecchio in caso di fulmini, o se è stato lasciato incustodito o non utilizzato per un lungo periodo di tempo, scollegarlo dalla presa a parete e scollegare il sistema via cavo/antenna. Questa precauzione proteggerà il prodotto dai danni causati da fulmini e picchi di corrente.

Prima di collegare il cavo di alimentazione CA all'adattatore CC, verificare che la tensione dell'adattatore CC corrisponda alla tensione erogata localmente.

Non inserire mai oggetti metallici nelle aperture dell'apparecchio. La mancata osservanza di questa precauzione può causare scosse elettriche.

Per evitare il pericolo di scosse elettriche, non toccare mai le parti interne dell'apparecchio. L'apparecchio può essere aperto solo da un tecnico qualificato.

Inserire saldamente la spina del cavo di alimentazione nella presa elettrica. Per scollegare l'alimentazione, estrarre la spina dalla presa. Non toccare il cavo di alimentazione con le mani bagnate.

Se l'apparecchio funziona in modo anomalo, in particolare se emette odori o rumori insoliti, scollegarlo immediatamente dall'alimentazione e contattare un rivenditore o un centro di assistenza autorizzato.

Se il televisore rimane inutilizzato per diverso tempo, e in particolare se bambini, anziani o disabili vengono lasciati soli in casa senza supervisione, scollegare la spina dalla presa di corrente.

- La polvere accumulata può causare scosse elettriche, perdite di corrente o incendio a causa del surriscaldamento o delle scintille generate dal cavo di alimentazione o dal degrado della protezione isolante.

Contattare un centro assistenza autorizzato quando si installa l'apparecchio in un locale molto polveroso o che presenta temperature alte o basse, elevata umidità, sostanze chimiche o in caso di funzionamento 24 ore su 24, per esempio in aeroporti, stazioni ferroviarie, ecc..

Utilizzare solo una spina e una presa opportunamente collegate a terra.

- Una messa a terra inadeguata può causare scosse elettriche o danni al prodotto. (Solo dispositivi di Classe I.)

Per escludere la corrente elettrica dal prodotto è necessario scollegare la spina dalla presa elettrica; assicurarsi pertanto che la presa sia facilmente accessibile.

Non lasciare che i bambini giocando si appendano al prodotto.

Tenere gli accessori (per es. le batterie) in un luogo sicuro lontano dalla portata dei bambini.

Non installare il prodotto in una posizione instabile, come per esempio su una mensola non salda, una superficie inclinata o un luogo soggetto a vibrazioni.

Non urtare né lasciare cadere il prodotto. Se il prodotto risulta danneggiato, scollegare il cavo di alimentazione e rivolgersi al centro assistenza.

Scollegare il cavo di alimentazione dalla presa di corrente e pulire il prodotto con un panno morbido e asciutto. Non usare prodotti chimici quali cera, benzene, alcol, solventi, insetticidi, deodoranti per l'ambiente, lubrificanti o detergenti. In caso contrario la superficie potrebbe deteriorarsi e il testo stampato sul prodotto potrebbe cancellarsi.

Non esporre il prodotto a gocce o spruzzi d'acqua.

Non gettare le batterie nel fuoco.

Non disassemblare, surriscaldare o far entrare le batterie in cortocircuito.

Una installazione scorretta delle batterie può causarne l'esplosione. Sostituire solo con batterie dello stesso tipo o equivalenti.

AVVERTENZA - PER EVITARE IL PERICOLO DI INCENDIO, NON AVVICINARE MAI AL PRODOTTO CANDELE ACCESE O ALTRE FIAMME LIBERE.



* Le figure e le illustrazioni presenti in questo Manuale dell'utente sono fornite unicamente a titolo di riferimento e possono differire da quelle del prodotto attuale. Le specifiche e il design del prodotto possono variare senza preavviso. Le lingue CSI (russo, ucraino, kazako) non sono disponibili per questo prodotto, destinato solo alla regione UE.

Contenuto della confezione

Samsung Smart Control e batterie (2 tipo AA)

Telecomando e batterie (2 tipo AAA)

Manuale dell'utente

Scheda di garanzia (non disponibile in alcuni paesi)

Guida alle normative

Cavo di alimentazione

Occhiali 3D attivi Samsung



Adattatore scheda CI



Cavo di prolunga IR



Adattatore montaggio a parete

- Controllare che nella confezione siano contenuti i seguenti componenti. In caso di mancanza di uno o più componenti, contattare il rivenditore.
- La forma e il colore dei componenti possono variare in base al modello.
- Eventuali cavi non forniti possono essere acquistati separatamente.
- Una volta aperta la confezione, verificare che non vi siano accessori nascosti dietro o all'interno dei materiali di imballaggio.

Può essere richiesto un rimborso se

(a) l'uscita del tecnico in seguito a una chiamata non rileva difetti nel prodotto (ovvero laddove l'utente non abbia letto il manuale dell'utente).

(b) l'utente ha portato l'unità presso un centro di riparazione che non rileva difetti nel prodotto (ovvero laddove l'utente non abbia letto il manuale dell'utente).

Prima dell'uscita del tecnico l'utente viene informato delle spese amministrative.

Avvertenza: Una pressione diretta sulla superficie del pannello provocata da una manipolazione non corretta può danneggiare lo schermo. Si raccomanda di sollevare il televisore prendendolo per i bordi, come mostrato.



Montaggio del televisore sul piedistallo

Verificare di disporre di tutti gli accessori mostrati quindi montare il piedistallo seguendo le istruzioni fornite.

Montaggio a parete del televisore con il kit di supporto a parete (opzionale)

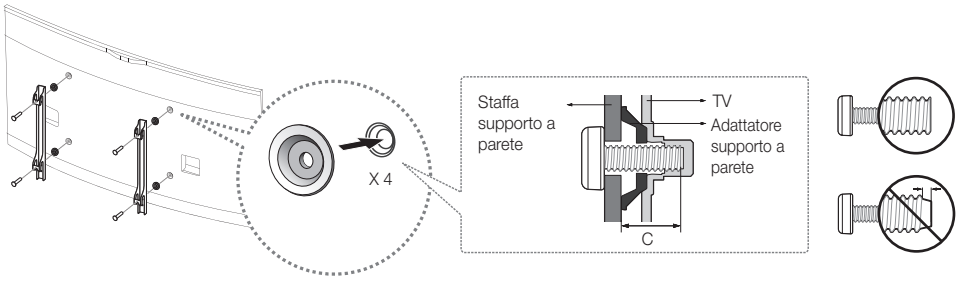
Il montaggio a parete di questo prodotto deve seguire le specifiche raccomandate dal produttore. In caso di installazione non corretta, il prodotto potrebbe scivolare dalla struttura o cadere, causando gravi lesioni a bambini e adulti eventualmente presenti e gravi danni al prodotto.

Installazione del kit di montaggio a parete

Il kit di supporto a parete (venduto separatamente) consente di montare il televisore direttamente a una parete.

Per montare la staffa a parete utilizzare i fogli di styrofoam contenuti nell'imballaggio a protezione del televisore. Appoggiare il televisore e fissare le viti.

Per informazioni dettagliate sull'installazione a parete, consultare le istruzioni fornite insieme al kit. Rivolgersi a un tecnico per il montaggio della staffa a parete. Si sconsiglia di eseguire il montaggio autonomamente. Samsung Electronics non può essere ritenuta responsabile per eventuali danni al prodotto o infortuni causati da una installazione autonoma del kit di supporto a parete da parte dell'utente.



Prima di installare un kit di montaggio a parete diverso dal nostro, assemblare l'adattatore per montaggio a parete fornito separatamente con il televisore.

- Vedere il "Manuale di installazione" incluso nel nostro kit di montaggio a parete.

Specifiche del kit di montaggio a parete (VESA)

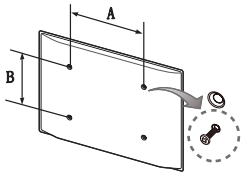
Il kit di montaggio a parete non è fornito in dotazione ma è venduto separatamente. Installare la staffa su una parete solida perpendicolare al pavimento. Se la staffa deve essere fissata ad altri tipi di materiale, consultare il rivenditore di zona. Se il prodotto viene installato a soffitto o su una parete inclinata, potrebbe cadere causando gravi lesioni personali.

- Nella tabella sotto riportata vengono indicate le dimensioni standard dei kit di montaggio a parete.
- All'acquisto del kit di montaggio a parete viene fornita la guida all'installazione e tutte le parti necessarie per il montaggio.
- Non utilizzare viti non conformi agli standard VESA.
- Non utilizzare viti più lunghe delle dimensioni standard o non conformi alle specifiche dello standard VESA. Viti troppo lunghe possono danneggiare i componenti interni del televisore.

- Per sistemi di montaggio a parete non conformi allo standard VESA, la lunghezza delle viti potrebbe differire in base alle specifiche del sistema di montaggio usato.
- Non serrare le viti con eccessiva forza poiché ciò potrebbe danneggiare il prodotto o causarne la caduta provocando lesioni personali. Samsung non può essere ritenuta responsabile per tali incidenti.
- Samsung non può essere ritenuta responsabile per eventuali danni o lesioni personali qualora vengano usati sistemi di montaggio a parete non conformi allo standard VESA o l'utente non segua le istruzioni di installazione fornite.
- Non installare il televisore con una inclinazione superiore a 15 gradi.

Se si usa un supporto a parete non Samsung, la lunghezza della vite di assemblaggio (C) è indicata nella tabella sottostante.

Famiglia di prodotti	Pollici	Spec. VESA (A * B)	C (mm)	Vite standard	Quantità
TV UHD	55	400 X 400	21,3 ~ 26,3	M8	4
	65		21,0 ~ 26,0		



Non installare il kit di montaggio a parete mentre il televisore è acceso. La mancata osservanza di questa precauzione potrebbe provocare lesioni personali causate da scariche elettriche.

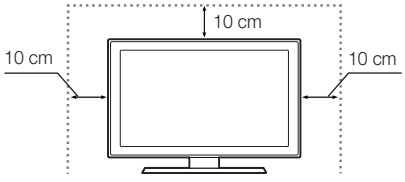
Garantire un'adeguata ventilazione al televisore

Per garantire un'adeguata ventilazione all'apparecchio, durante l'installazione del televisore lasciare una distanza minima di 10 cm tra il televisore e gli elementi circostanti (per esempio pareti, pannelli del vano TV, ecc...). Una ventilazione inadeguata può causare l'innalzamento della temperatura interna del prodotto e il rischio di incendio.

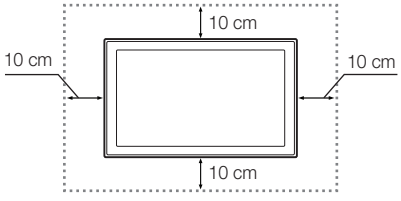
L'uso di componenti di altri produttori può causare malfunzionamenti o lesioni personali per la caduta del prodotto.

- Se il televisore viene installato su un piedistallo o un sistema di montaggio a parete, utilizzare solo componenti forniti da Samsung Electronics.

Installazione con piedistallo.



Installazione con supporto a parete.



Altre precauzioni

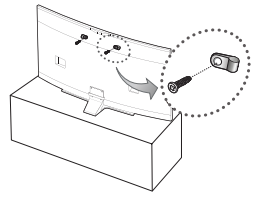
- L'aspetto del televisore può differire dalle immagini presenti in questo manuale a seconda del modello acquistato.
- Prestare attenzione quando si tocca il televisore. Alcune parti potrebbero essere calde.

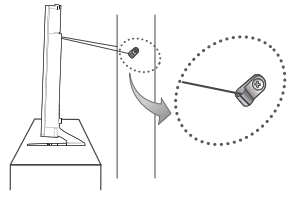
Fissaggio del televisore alla parete



Attenzione: Tirare, spingere o arrampicarsi sul televisore sono azioni che possono provocarne la caduta. In particolare, si raccomanda di non far giocare i bambini con il televisore poiché potrebbero appendervisi o destabilizzarlo. Se ciò dovesse verificarsi, il televisore potrebbe cadere provocando lesioni personali gravi e perfino mortali. Seguire tutte le precauzioni di sicurezza descritte nella documentazione allegata al televisore. Per una maggiore stabilità e sicurezza del prodotto, è possibile acquistare e installare il dispositivo anticaduta come segue.

Per evitare una eventuale caduta del televisore

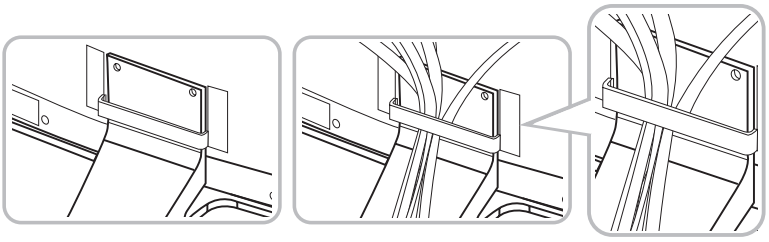




parete

1. Avvitare saldamente i ganci alla parete. Verificare che le viti siano state fissate saldamente alla pareti.
   - A seconda del tipo di parete, potrebbe essere necessario utilizzare anche dei sistemi di ancoraggio.
   - Poiché i ganci, le viti e il cavo di sicurezza non sono forniti in dotazione, è necessario acquistare tali materiali separatamente.
2. Rimuovere le viti dal centro del pannello posteriore del televisore, inserirle nei ganci e quindi avvitarle nuovamente al televisore.
   - Le viti potrebbero non essere fornite insieme al prodotto. In questo caso, acquistare le viti in base alle specifiche qui riportate.
   - Specifiche delle viti: Per i modelli da 55 ~ 65 pollici: M8
3. Collegare i ganci fissati al televisore a quelli fissati alla parete utilizzando un cavo resistente, quindi legarlo strettamente.
   - Installare il televisore vicino alla parete in modo che non possa cadere.
   - Collegare il cavo in modo che i ganci fissati alla parete si trovino allineati o leggermente più in basso di quelli fissati al televisore.
   - Slegare il cavo prima di spostare il televisore.
4. Verificare che tutte le connessioni siano adeguatamente fissate. Controllare periodicamente le connessioni per verificarne l'eventuale presenza di danni. Per qualsiasi dubbio relativo alla sicurezza delle connessioni effettuate, contattare un installatore specializzato.

Disporre i cavi utilizzando il reggicavo



Collegamento dei dispositivi al televisore

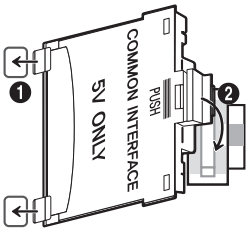
E' possibile collegare vari dispositivi esterni mediante i connettori posizionati sul retro del prodotto. Verificare i connettori quindi consultare le istruzioni di montaggio fornite per reperire ulteriori dettagli sui dispositivi esterni supportati.

Connessione a uno slot COMMON INTERFACE (alloggiamento scheda per la visione del televisore)

- Spegnere il televisore per inserire o rimuovere una scheda CI o un adattatore di schede CI.

Collegamento dell'adattatore di schede CI

- In base al modello è disponibile un adattatore per schede CI che consente al televisore di utilizzare due schede CI differenti.



Collegare l'adattatore come mostrato.

- Per installare l'adattatore della SCHEDA CI, rimuovere l'adesivo sul televisore.

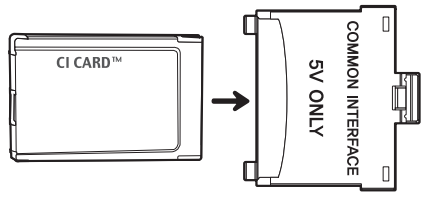
Per collegare l'adattatore della SCHEDA CI, seguire questi passaggi.

- Si consiglia di collegare l'adattatore prima di eseguire l'installazione del sistema di montaggio a parete o di inserire la “SCHEDA CI o CI+.”

1. Inserire l'adattatore della SCHEDA CI nella presa a due poli sul prodotto 1.
   - Localizzare i due fori sul retro del televisore vicino alla porta **COMMON INTERFACE**.
2. Inserire l'adattatore della SCHEDA CI nella porta **COMMON INTERFACE** sul prodotto 2.
3. Inserire la “SCHEDA CI o CI+”.

Si consiglia di inserire l'adattatore della scheda CI e la scheda CI (per la visione) prima di montare il televisore a parete poiché a montaggio eseguito potrebbe essere difficile e pericoloso eseguire questa operazione.

Uso della “SCHEDA CI o CI+”



Per la visione di canali a pagamento è necessario inserire una “SCHEDA CI o CI+”.

- Se non si inserisce una “SCHEDA CI o CI+", alcuni canali potranno visualizzare il messaggio “Segnale criptato”.
- Le informazioni di pairing che contengono un numero telefonico, l’ID della "SCHEDA CI o CI+", l’ID host e altri dati verranno visualizzati entro 2~3 minuti. Se viene visualizzato un messaggio di errore, contattare il fornitore del servizio.
- Quando la configurazione delle informazioni relative al canale è completata, viene visualizzato il messaggio “Updating Completed” (Aggiornamento completato), a indicare che l'elenco dei canali è stato aggiornato.

NOTA

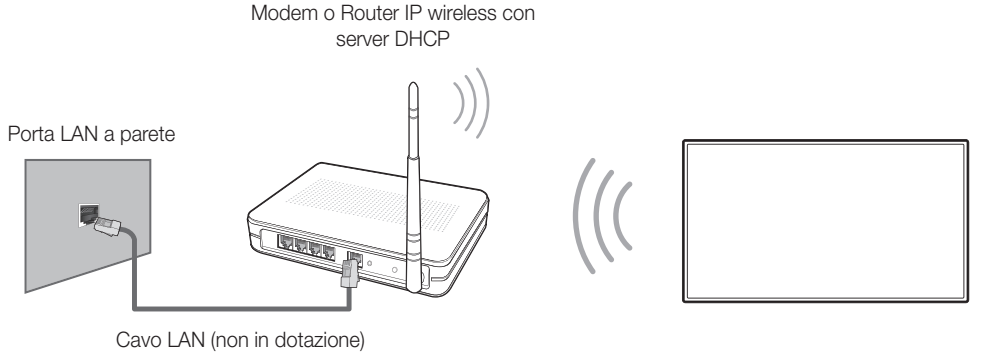
- E' necessario richiedere una "SCHEDA CI o CI+" al fornitore del servizio locale.
- Estrarre con delicatezza la "SCHEDA CI o CI+" prestando attenzione a non farla cadere poiché potrebbe subire danni.
- Inserire la "SCHEDA CI o CI+" nella direzione indicata sulla scheda stessa.
- La posizione dell'alloggiamento COMMON INTERFACE può variare in base al modello.
- La "SCHEDA CI o CI+" non è supportata in alcune nazioni e regioni; controllare con il rivenditore autorizzato di zona.
- In caso di problemi, contattare il fornitore del servizio.
- Inserire la “SCHEDA CI o CI+” in grado di supportare le impostazioni antenna correnti. Lo schermo non visualizzerà le immagini oppure queste saranno distorte.

Connessione alla rete

La connessione a Internet dello Smart TV consente di accedere a servizi online quali Smart Hub, così come di scaricare gli aggiornamenti software non appena disponibili.

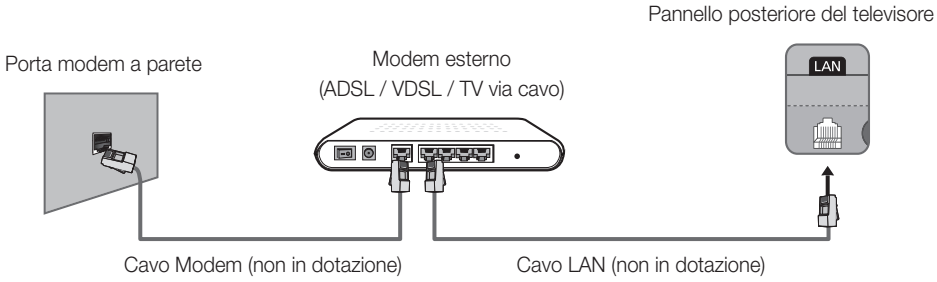
Connessione di rete - Wireless

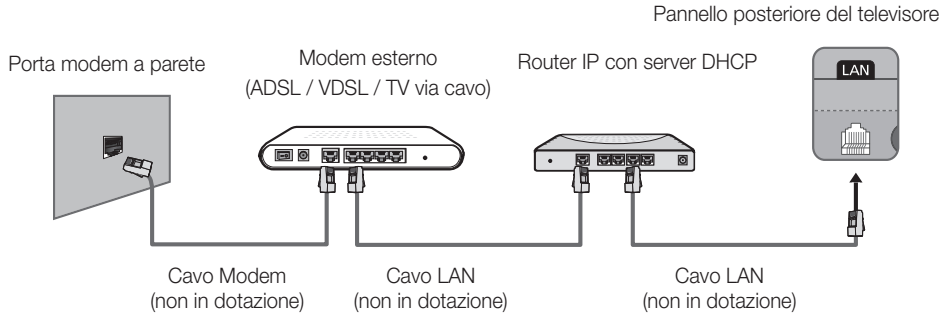
Collegare il televisore a Internet usando un router o un modem standard.



Connessione di rete - Cablata

Esistono principalmente tre modi per collegare il televisore alla rete via cavo, a seconda dell'impostazione di rete. Di seguito vengono descritti più in dettaglio:


Pannello posteriore del televisore
Porta modem a parete
Modem esterno
(ADSL / VDSL / TV via cavo)
LAN
Cavo Modem (non in dotazione)
Cavo LAN (non in dotazione)



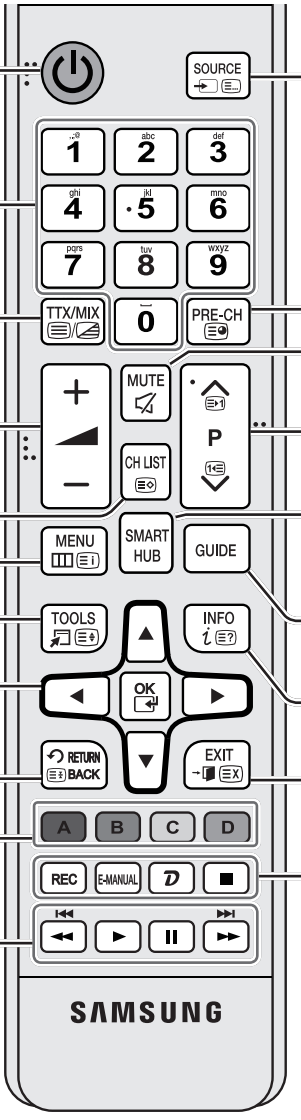


- Il televisore non supporta velocità di rete pari o inferiori a 10 Mbps.
- Usare un cavo Cat 7 per la connessione.

Telecomando

Apprendere il posizionamento dei seguenti tasti funzione sul telecomando: **SOURCE**, **MUTE**, **−** ◢ **+**, ∧ **P** ∨, **MENU**, **TOOLS**, ⏎, **INFO**, **CH LIST**, **RETURN**, **GUIDE** e **EXIT**.

- Questo telecomando è dotato di punti in Braille sui tasti **Power**, **Channel**, e **Volume** per consentirne l'uso da parte di persone non vedenti.
- Il televisore è inoltre dotato di Samsung Smart Control. Per informazioni sull'uso dello Samsung Smart Control, consultare l'e-Manual.



Accende e spegne il televisore.

Visualizza e seleziona le sorgenti video disponibili.

Accesso diretto ai canali.

Seleziona alternativamente le modalità Teletext ON, Double, Mix o OFF.

Ritorna al canale precedente.

Esclude temporaneamente l'audio.

Regola il volume.

Cambia i canali.

Visualizza l'elenco canali.

Visualizza le applicazioni Smart Hub. Vedere l'e-Manual al capitolo **Funzioni Smart** > **Smart Hub**.

Apre il menu OSD.

Seleziona rapidamente le funzioni usate più frequentemente.

Visualizza la **EPG** (Electronic Programme Guide).

Muove il cursore, seleziona le voci del menu OSD e cambia i valori visualizzati sul menu del prodotto.

Visualizza le informazioni sullo schermo TV.

Per tornare al menu precedente.

Esce dal menu.

Utilizzare questi tasti in base alle istruzioni visualizzate sullo schermo TV.

REC: Registra il contenuto che si sta guardando.

E-MANUAL: Visualizza il **e-Manual**.

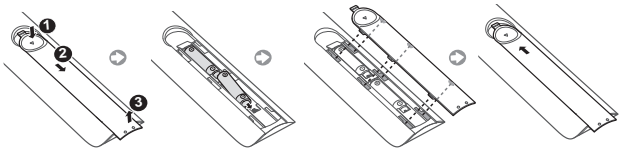
Utilizzare questi tasti con funzioni specifiche. Utilizzare questi tasti in base alle istruzioni visualizzate sullo schermo TV.

𝒟: Utilizzare questo tasto quando si usa il servizio di trasmissione dati.

■: arresta.

Inserimento delle batterie (tipo: AAA)

Far corrispondere le polarità delle batterie con i simboli presenti nel vano batterie.

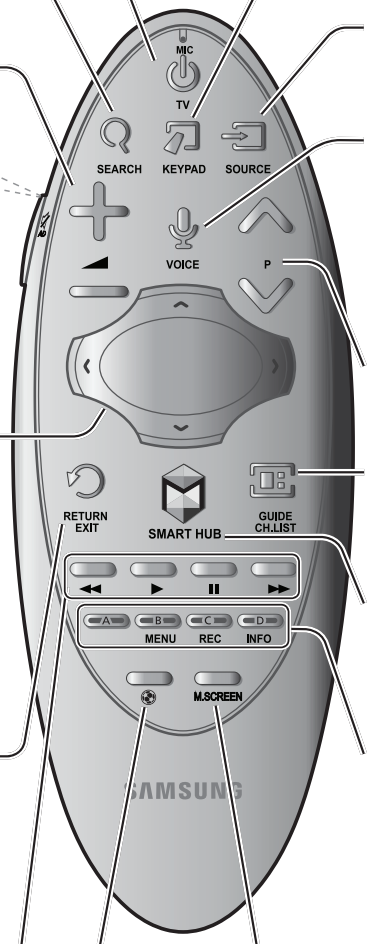


- La forma e il colore possono variare in base al modello.

- Usare il telecomando entro 7 metri dal televisore.
- Una illuminazione intensa può influenzare le prestazioni del telecomando. Evitare l'uso del telecomando nelle immediate vicinanze di lampade a fluorescenza o luci al neon.

Samsung Smart Control

- La forma e il colore possono variare in base al modello.





Accende/spegne il televisore.

Premere questo tasto per utilizzare la finestra di ricerca.

Per regolare il volume.

: Attiva/Disattiva l'audio.

AD: Tenere premuto questo tasto per visualizzare il pannello **Collegamenti di accessibilità** panel. Selezionare le opzioni per attivarle/disattivarle.

- Touchpad: Posizionare un dito sul touchpad e muovere il Samsung Smart Control. Il puntatore sullo schermo si sposta seguendo il movimento del Samsung Smart Control. Premere il touchpad per eseguire l'elemento evidenziato.
  - : Per spostare il puntatore o il focus.

RETURN: Per tornare al menu precedente. Inoltre, premendo questo tasto durante la visione TV si torna al canale precedente.

EXIT: Tenere premuto questo tasto per uscire da tutte le applicazioni in esecuzione.

Utilizzare questi tasti con funzioni specifiche. Utilizzare questi tasti in base alle istruzioni visualizzate sullo schermo TV.

Attiva la **Modalità Calcio** per la visione ottimale di eventi sportivi.

Con il telecomando virtuale a schermo è possibile immettere numeri, controllare contenuti e utilizzare funzioni.

Cambia la sorgente.

Avvia il riconoscimento vocale. Quando l'icona del microfono viene visualizzata a schermo, impartire un comando vocale nel microfono.

- Pronunciare un comando vocale a 10~15 cm dal microfono a un volume di voce appropriato.

Per cambiare canale.

GUIDE: Visualizza la programmazione dei canali digitali.

CH.LIST: Tenere premuto per avviare **CH.LIST**.

Avvia il servizio Smart Hub. Premendo **SMART HUB** durante l'esecuzione di una applicazione, l'applicazione viene chiusa.

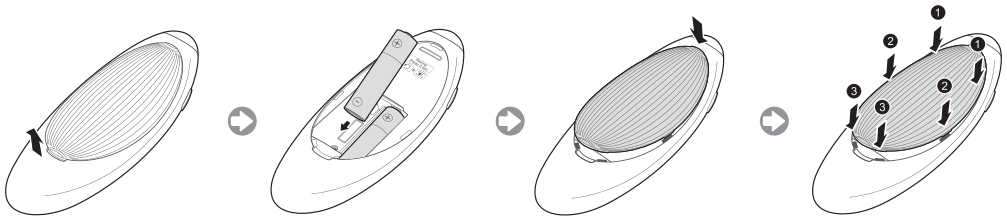
Tasti colore: Utilizzare i tasti colorati per accedere alle ulteriori opzioni specifiche per la funzione in uso. Utilizzare i tasti colorati per accedere alle ulteriori opzioni specifiche per la funzione in uso.

- **MENU**: Tenere premuto per visualizzare il menu a schermo.
- **REC**: Tenere premuto per registrare la trasmissione.
- **INFO**: Tenere premuto per vedere le informazioni sul canale digitale o sul file multimediale corrente.

M.SCREEN: E' possibile dividere lo schermo TV e usare varie funzioni per vedere la TV, navigare in Rete, guardare video e molto altro ancora. Per ulteriori i nformazioni, vedere l' **e-Manual**.

Inserimento delle batterie nello Samsung Smart Control

Per utilizzare lo Samsung Smart Control, vedere la figura sottostante e inserire le batterie nell'unità come indicato.

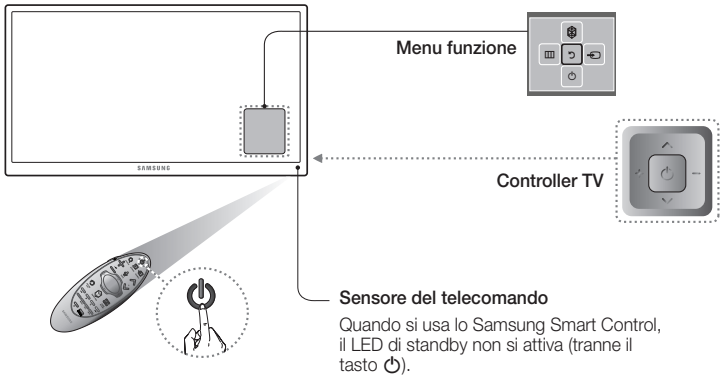


1. Sollevare delicatamente il coperchio del vano batterie, quindi rimuoverlo.
2. Inserire 2 batterie alcaline tipo AA facendo attenzione a rispettare la polarità.
3. Posizionare il coperchio del vano batterie sul telecomando, quindi inserire la parte superiore del coperchio nell'alloggiamento previsto.
4. Per chiudere il coperchio del vano batterie, premerlo sui lati seguendo l'ordine indicato in figura fino alla completa chiusura.

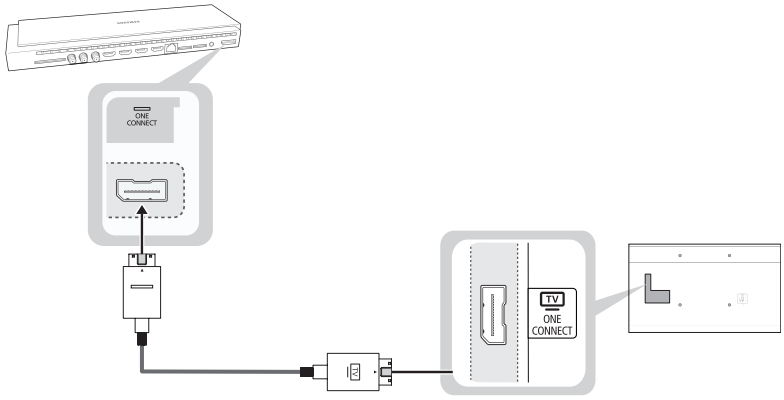
Accensione del televisore

Accendere il televisore premendo il tasto ⏻ sul telecomando o sul pannello TV.

- La forma e il colore del prodotto possono variare in base al modello.
- Il Controller TV, un piccolo tasto simile a un joy stick posizionato sul lato posteriore destro del televisore, consente di controllare l'apparecchio TV senza l'uso del telecomando.


Menu funzione
Controller TV
Sensore del telecomando
Quando si usa lo Samsung Smart Control, il LED di standby non si attiva (tranne il tasto ⏻).

Aggiornamento TV mediante UHD Evolution Kit (venduto separatamente)



Il collegamento di un UHD Evolution Kit (venduto separatamente) a un TV Samsung consente di utilizzare le ultime funzioni e contenuti disponibili senza dover acquistare un nuovo TV. Prova le funzioni e i servizi più recenti offerti da Samsung Electronics attraverso l'UHD Evolution Kit.

- L'UHD Evolution Kit è acquistabile separatamente. L'UHD Evolution Kit consente di aggiornare il software TV alla versione in uso nell'anno di rilascio dell'UHD Evolution Kit acquistato. L'UHD Evolution Kit potrebbe tuttavia non essere disponibile a seconda del prodotto.

Impostazione iniziale

La finestra dell'impostazione iniziale viene visualizzata alla prima accensione del televisore. Seguire le istruzioni a schermo per completare l'impostazione iniziale, inclusa la selezione della lingua dei menu, la ricerca dei canali, la connessione alla rete e altre configurazioni. A ogni fase della procedura, eseguire una selezione o passare alla fase successiva. E' possibile eseguire manualmente questo processo in un momento successivo accedendo al menu **Sistema** > **Impostazione**.

- Collegando un dispositivo qualsiasi a **HDMI1** prima di iniziare l'installazione, la **Sorgente canale** verrà impostata automaticamente su **Set-top box**.
- Se non si desidera selezionare **Set-top box**, scegliere **Antenna**

Cambio password

Sistema > **Cambia PIN**

Modifica della password del televisore.

1. Eseguire la funzione **Cambia PIN** e digitare la password nel relativo campo. La password predefinita è “1-1-1-1”.
2. Digitare una nuova password, quindi digitarla nuovamente per la conferma. La password è stata modificata.

- Qualora si sia dimenticato il codice PIN, premere i tasti nella sequenza seguente per ripristinare il codice PIN predefinito “1-1-1-1”:

  Per telecomando standard: In modalità Standby: **MUTE** → 8 → 2 → 4 → **POWER** (On)

  Per Samsung Smart Control:Quando il televisore si accende: **MUTE** → Aumenta il volume→ **RETURN** → Diminuisce il volume→ **RETURN** → Aumenta il volume→ **RETURN**

Selezione della sorgente video

E' possibile selezionare il dispositivo esterno collegato premendo il tasto **SOURCE**.

Per esempio, per accedere alla console di gioco collegata al secondo connettore HDMI, premere **SOURCE**. Dall'elenco **Sorgente**, selezionare **HDMI2** per cambiare il segnale d'ingresso in modalità HDMI. I nomi dei connettori possono variare in base al prodotto.

Nella schermata **Sorgente** sono disponibili le seguenti opzioni:

Tasto TOOLS

Selezionare una porta connessa a un dispositivo esterno quindi tenere premuto il tasto Invio. Sono disponibili le seguenti funzioni:

- Le opzioni disponibili per ogni connettore possono variare.

Modifica Nome

per rinominare i dispositivi collegati al televisore e identificare più facilmente le sorgenti esterne.

Per esempio è possibile designare come **DVI PC** un computer collegato al televisore mediante un cavo HDMI-DVI.

Oppure designare come **PC** un computer collegato al televisore mediante un cavo HDMI.

O ancora è possibile designare come **Dispositivi DVI** un dispositivo AV collegato al televisore mediante un cavo HDMI-DVI.

Informazioni

Per visualizzare maggiori informazioni sui dispositivi collegati.

Anynet+ (HDMI-CEC)

Visualizza l'elenco dei dispositivi conformi Anynet+ (HDMI-CEC) collegati al televisore.

- Questa opzione è disponibile solo quando **Anynet+ (HDMI-CEC)** è impostata su **On**.

Rimuovi USB

Per rimuovere in modo sicuro un dispositivo USB collegato al televisore. Questa opzione è disponibile solo quando è selezionato un dispositivo USB.

Uso dello Samsung Smart Control

Con lo Samsung Smart Control usare il televisore è ancora più comodo e facile. Premendo il tasto **KEYPAD**, viene visualizzato a schermo un telecomando virtuale attraverso il quale l'utente può immettere numeri, controllare contenuti e attivare funzioni.

- Si consiglia di utilizzare lo Samsung Smart Control a una distanza inferiore a 6 m. La distanza operativa può variare a seconda delle condizioni dell'ambiente wireless.

Abbinamento dello Samsung Smart Control

Per controllare il televisore con lo Samsung Smart Control, abbinare lo Samsung Smart Control al televisore via Bluetooth. Abbinare lo Samsung Smart Control al televisore.

- Lo Samsung Smart Control può essere abbinato a un solo televisore.

Per accendere il televisore, puntare lo Samsung Smart Control verso il ricevitore del telecomando sul televisore e premere il tasto **TV**.

- La posizione del ricevitore può variare in base al modello.

Riconnessione dello Samsung Smart Control



Se il Samsung Smart Control smette di funzionare o funziona in modo anomalo, ciò potrebbe essere dovuto alla scarsa potenza della batteria pertanto si consiglia di sostituirla.

Se il problema persiste, il Samsung Smart Control ripristina l'abbinamento con il televisore.

1. Premere contemporaneamente i tasti **RETURN** e **GUIDE** per oltre 3 secondi.
   - Posizionare il Samsung Smart Control a circa 30 ~ 40 cm dal televisore e puntarlo verso il ricevitore del telecomando.
2. L'icona di connessione viene visualizzata a schermo. Al termine, il dispositivo Samsung Smart Control viene collegato automaticamente al televisore.

Quando sullo schermo appare questa icona di allarme...



<Icona Allarme batteria esausta>

La seguente icona di allarme indica che le batterie dello Samsung Smart Control sono esauste. Se viene visualizzata l'icona di allarme, sostituire le batterie. Samsung raccomanda l'uso di batterie alcaline per una maggiore durata del telecomando.

Uso del televisore muovendo lo Samsung Smart Control

Lo Samsung Smart Control dispone di un sensore di movimento (giroscopio) per controllare il televisore attraverso lo spostamento dello Samsung Smart Control.

Posizionando un dito sul touchpad, sullo schermo viene visualizzato un puntatore. Tenere premuto e muovere il Samsung Smart Control. Il movimento del puntatore rispecchia quello del Samsung Smart Control. E' inoltre possibile scorrere le schermate verso l'alto e il basso.

- Alzando il dito dal touchpad, il puntatore scompare dallo schermo.

Uso del televisore con il touchpad

- Accedere al menu **Supporto** e selezionare l'opzione **Esercit. su Smart Control** per apprendere l'uso del touchpad seguendo le istruzioni a schermo.

Spostamento del focus/puntatore

Premere i tasti direzionali (su, giù, sinistra e destra) per spostare il puntatore o il focus nella medesima direzione.

Accesso ai menu e Selezione delle voci

Premere il touchpad. Questa azione consente di accedere al menu TV o di selezionare una voce.

Visualizzazione di menu contestuali su Smart Hub

Tenere un dito premuto sul touchpad nella schermata Smart Hub.Viene visualizzato il menu Opzioni disponibile per la voce selezionata.

- Il menu Opzioni dipende dal contesto.

Accesso al pannello Smart Hub

Nella schermata Smart Hub, trascinare un dito verso destra o sinistra sul touchpad. Questa azione consente di spostare i pannelli Smart Hub a sinistra o a destra.

Scorrimento sul Web Browser

Scorrere un dito verso l'alto/il basso sul touchpad nella schermata Web Browser. Questa azione permette di scorrere il contenuto della schermata web.

Visualizzazione del telecomando a schermo (telecomando virtuale)

Premere **KEYPAD** per visualizzare a schermo il telecomando virtuale. Il telecomando virtuale consente di immettere cifre, controllare contenuti e utilizzare i tasti TV.

- I tasti del telecomando virtuale possono variare a seconda dello stato operativo del televisore.

Controllo dei dispositivi esterni con il telecomando TV (Configuraz. telecomando universale)

Sistema > **Configuraz. telecomando universale**

- La disponibilità dipende dal modello e dall'area.

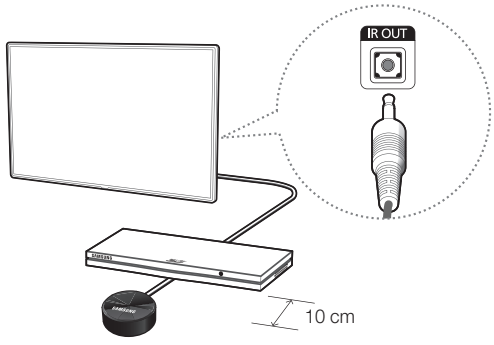
La funzione telecomando universale consente di controllare i dispositivi collegati al televisore quali ricevitori via cavo, lettori Blu-ray, sistemi home theater e dispositivi esterni di altre marche utilizzando il telecomando TV. Per utilizzare il telecomando TV come telecomando universale è necessario per prima cosa collegare la prolunga IR (in dotazione).

- E' inoltre possibile utilizzare la funzione Anynet+ (HDMI-CEC) per controllare mediante il telecomando TV altri dispositivi esterni Samsung senza dover eseguire ulteriori impostazioni. Per ulteriori informazioni, vedere l' **e-Manual**.
- Alcuni dispositivi esterni collegati al televisore potrebbero non supportare la funzione telecomando universale.

Configurazione del telecomando universale

Collegare la prolunga IR al connettore di uscita IR del televisore come mostrato in figura, quindi posizionare il terminale del trasmettitore a una distanza massima di 10 cm dal ricevitore del dispositivo esterno puntandolo verso di esso. Tuttavia, non devono esservi ostacoli tra la prolunga IR e il dispositivo esterno. La presenza di ostacoli interferisce con la trasmissione del segnale del telecomando.

- Quando si usa un dispositivo esterno registrato con l'Universal Remote Control sul Samsung Smart Control, è possibile utilizzare il dispositivo esterno senza dover collegare un cavo di prolunga IR. Tuttavia, se si desidera usare un dispositivo esterno con le funzioni **Controllo vocale**, collegare un cavo di prolunga IR.



Controllo dei dispositivi esterni con il telecomando TV

1. Accendere il dispositivo esterno per il quale si desidera configurare la funzione telecomando universale e visualizzare la schermata **Sorgente**.
2. Selezionare **Configuraz. telecomando universale** in alto nella schermata. Viene avviata la procedura di configurazione del telecomando universale.
3. Seguire le istruzioni a schermo e registrare il dispositivo esterno.

Vista di altre funzioni TV

L'**e-Manual** contiene ulteriori informazioni sulle funzioni TV. Vedere l' **e-Manual** (**Supporto** > **e-Manual**).

Avvio dell'e-Manual.

L'e-Manual offre all'utente una serie di informazioni sul prodotto.

- Dal sito web Samsung è possibile scaricare una copia dell'e-Manual per leggerlo sul computer o stamparlo.
- I termini in giallo indicano le voci di menu; i termini in bianco evidenziati in grassetto indicano i tasti del telecomando. Le frecce indicano il percorso dei menu. (Esempio: **Immagine** > **Modalità immagine**)

1. Selezionare **e-Manual**. L'e-Manual viene caricato.
2. Selezionare una categoria a lato dello schermo. Una volta effettuata una selezione vengono visualizzati i contenuti della categoria selezionata.
3. Selezionare una voce dall'elenco. Questo consente di aprire l'e-Manual alla pagina corrispondente.

Se la descrizione è lunga e comprende più di una pagina...

E' possibile scorrere le pagine in una delle seguenti modalità.

- Posizionare il focus sulla pagina per visualizzare a schermo i tasti / . Premere ∧, ∨.

Funzioni e-Manual supplementari

Caricamento delle pagine mediante parole chiave

Selezionare **Cerca** a lato dello schermo per visualizzare la schermata di ricerca. Immettere la parola di ricerca e selezionare **Fatto**. Scegliere una voce dall'elenco dei risultati per caricare la pagina corrispondente.

Caricamento delle pagine dalla pagina dell'indice

Selezionare **Indice** a lato dello schermo per visualizzare la schermata dell'indice. Selezionare una parola chiave dall'elenco per accedere alla pagina corrispondente.

Uso della Cronologia per caricare pagine lette in precedenza

Selezionare **Pagina aperta** a lato dello schermo. Viene visualizzato un elenco di pagine lette in precedenza. Selezionare una pagina. L'e-Manual passa alla pagina selezionata.

Accesso al Menu dall'e-Manual (Prova ora)

Selezionare (**Prova ora**) sulla descrizione di una funzione per accedere al menu corrispondente e provare subito la funzione.

Se si desidera leggere una voce dell'**e-Manual** su una schermata specifica,

Uso dello Samsung Smart Control: premere **KEYPAD** e selezionare **e-Manual**.

Uso del telecomando: Premere il tasto **E-MANUAL**.

- Alcune opzioni di menu non sono disponibili per l'uso.

Caricamento pagine di riferimento

Selezionare (**Collega**) a lato della pagina contenente la descrizione della funzione per accedere alla pagina di riferimento corrispondente.

Aggiornamento dell'e-Manual all'ultima versione disponibile

E' possibile aggiornare l'e-Manual utilizzando la stessa procedura utilizzata per l'aggiornamento delle app.

1. Selezionare **e-Manual** nella schermata **SAMSUNG APPS**.
2. Tenere premuto il tasto Invio. Viene visualizzato il menu Opzioni.
3. Dal menu Opzioni, selezionare **Aggiorna applicazioni**. Sullo schermo viene visualizzata una finestra.
   - Il messaggio **Aggiorna applicazioni** appare a schermo solo quando è richiesto l'aggiornamento.
4. Selezionare **e-Manual** nella finestra a comparsa quindi selezionare **Aggiorn.**. E' possibile aggiornare il **e-Manual** all'ultima versione disponibile.

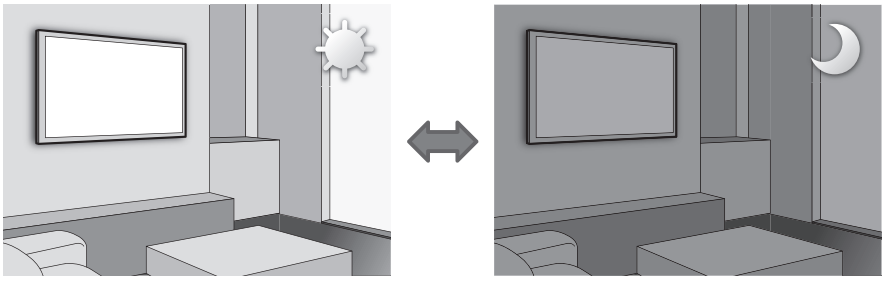
Risoluzione dei problemi

In caso di domande sul funzionamento del televisore, consultare per prima cosa la seguente sezione dedicata alla Risoluzione dei problemi. Se nessuna delle soluzioni fornite si dimostra utile per risolvere il problema, visitare il sito “www.samsung.com” quindi fare clic su Supporto, oppure chiamare il numero del Call Center riportato sul retro di copertina di questo manuale.

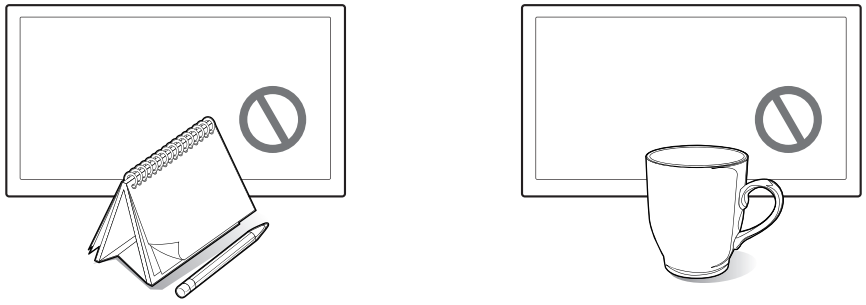
Problemi	Soluzioni e spiegazioni
Il televisore non si accende.	Verificare che la spina del cavo di alimentazione CA sia correttamente collegata alla presa a parete e al televisore. Verificare che la presa a parete sia funzionante. Provare a premere il tasto ⏻ sul televisore per verificare che il problema non sia il telecomando. Se il televisore si accende, vedere la sezione “Il telecomando non funziona” sotto riportata.
Nessuna immagine/video.	Verificare le connessioni dei cavi. Rimuovere e ricollegare tutti i cavi collegati al televisore e ai dispositivi esterni. Impostare l'uscita video dei dispositivi esterni (ricevitore via cavo/satellitare, lettore DVD, Blu-ray, ecc) in modo che le connessioni corrispondano all'ingresso del televisore. Ad esempio, se l'uscita di un dispositivo esterno è HDMI, deve essere collegata a un ingresso HDMI sul televisore. Verificare che il dispositivo collegato sia acceso. Verificare di aver selezionato la corretta sorgente d'ingresso. Riavviare il dispositivo connesso dopo averne scollegato e ricollegato il cavo di alimentazione.
Il telecomando non funziona.	Sostituire le batterie del telecomando. Verificare che le batterie siano state inserite nel verso giusto rispettando la polarità (+/-). Pulire la finestra di trasmissione del sensore sul telecomando. Puntare il telecomando verso il televisore a una distanza di 1,5 ~1,8 m.
Il telecomando del ricevitore via cavo/STB non riesce ad accendere o spegnere il televisore o a regolare il volume.	Programmare il telecomando del ricevitore via cavo/STB in modo che possa controllare le funzioni del televisore. Consultare il manuale dell'utente del ricevitore via cavo/STB per il codice del televisore SAMSUNG.

- Lo schermo LED TFT utilizza un pannello composto da sotto pixel la cui produzione richiede una speciale tecnologia. Tuttavia, alcuni pixel potrebbero risultare più luminosi o più scuri. Questo fenomeno non ha alcun impatto sulle prestazioni del prodotto.
- Per mantenere il televisore in condizioni ottimali, aggiornare il firmware all'ultima versione disponibile scaricabile dal sito web Samsung tramite USB (Samsung.com > Supporto > Download).
- Alcune delle immagini e funzioni sopra riportate sono disponibili solo per determinati modelli.

Precauzioni per l'uso del Sensore Eco e della luminosità schermo



Il Sensore Eco misura la luce ambientale e ottimizza automaticamente la luminosità del televisore allo scopo di ridurre il consumo energetico. L'attivazione di questa funzione riduce o aumenta automaticamente la luminosità del televisore. Per disattivare questa funzione, accedere a **Sistema** > **Soluzione Eco** > **Sensore Eco**.



Prestare attenzione a non ostruire il sensore. Ciò potrebbe causare la riduzione della luminosità dell'immagine.

1. **Sensore Eco**: questa funzione di risparmio energetico regola automaticamente la luminosità dello schermo TV a seconda della luce ambientale rilevata dal Sensore di luminosità.
2. Per attivare o disattivare la funzione **Sensore Eco**, accedere a **Sistema** > **Soluzione Eco** > **Sensore Eco** e selezionare **On** o **Off**.
3. Si prega di notare: Se lo schermo TV risulta troppo scuro durante la visione del televisore in un ambiente scarsamente illuminato, ciò potrebbe essere causato dall'attivazione della funzione **Sensore Eco**.

Cos'è l'Assistenza remota?

Il Servizio di Assistenza remota Samsung supporta il cliente a livello individuale attraverso un tecnico Samsung che remotamente:

- **Effettua la diagnosi** del televisore
- **Regola** le impostazioni TV
- **Esegue il ripristino del televisore** alle impostazioni di fabbrica
- Installa gli **aggiornamenti firmware** consigliati

Come funziona?

Ottenere un servizio di assistenza remota Samsung per il proprio televisore è una cosa molto semplice.



1. **Basta chiamare il Contact Center Samsung** e richiedere assistenza remota.



2. **Accedere al menu** sul televisore, quindi accedere alla sezione **Supporto**.



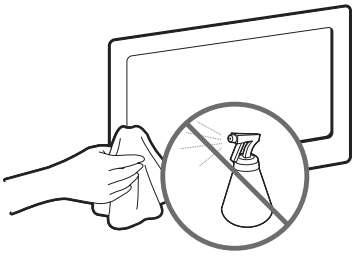
3. Selezionare Gestione remota e **fornire il codice PIN** all'addetto.



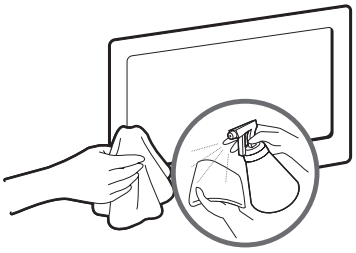
4. L'addetto **accederà quindi al televisore**. Tutto qui!

Conservazione e manutenzione

- Se allo schermo del televisore è stato apposto un adesivo, rimuovendolo possono rimanere dei residui. Eliminare i residui prima di usare il televisore.
- Il telaio e lo schermo del prodotto possono graffiarsi durante la pulizia. Usare un panno morbido per non graffiare il telaio e lo schermo durante la pulizia.



Non spruzzare acqua direttamente sul prodotto. Qualsiasi liquido che riesca a penetrare all'interno del prodotto può provocare guasti, incendio o scariche elettriche.



Pulire il prodotto con un panno morbido appena inumidito. Non utilizzare liquidi infiammabili (per es. benzene o diluenti) né soluzioni detergenti.

Specifiche TV

Risoluzione del display	3840 x 2160	
Curvatura dello schermo	4200R	
Caratteristiche ambientali Temperatura di esercizio Umidità di esercizio Temperatura di stoccaggio Umidità di stoccaggio	 Da 10°C a 40°C (50°F a 104°F) Dal 10% al 80%, senza condensa Da -20°C a 45°C (-4 °F a 113 °F) Dal 5% al 95%, senza condensa	
Piedistallo ruotabile (Sinistra / Destra)	0°	
Audio (Uscita)	60 W [TW anteriore (10W+10W) + Anteriore centrale (10W+10W) + Woofer (10W+10W)]	
Modello	UE55HU8200	UE65HU8200
Dimensione schermo (Diagonale)	55 pollici	65 pollici
Dimensioni (L x A x P) Corpo Con piedistallo	 1232,6 x 715,0 x 93,4 mm 1232,6 x 761,7 x 286,0 mm	 1450,7 x 840,0 x 111,5 mm 1450,7 x 888,0 x 306,0 mm
Peso Senza piedistallo Con piedistallo	 19,9 kg 23,2 kg	 26,4 kg 30,1 kg

- Design e specifiche sono soggetti a modifiche senza preavviso.
- Per informazioni sull'alimentazione elettrica e il consumo di corrente, consultare l'etichetta apposta al prodotto.
- Il consumo elettrico tipico viene misurato conformemente allo standard IEC 62087 Ed.2

Modalità Standby

Per ridurre il consumo elettrico, scollegare il cavo di alimentazione dalla presa a parete in caso di inutilizzo prolungato del televisore.

Licenze

The terms HDMI and HDMI High-Definition Multimedia Interface, and the HDMI Logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of HDMI Licensing LLC in the United States and other countries.

Avvertenza per la visualizzazione di immagini fisse

Evitare di visualizzare immagini fisse (per es. file jpeg) o elementi grafici fissi (come ad esempio il logo di un canale TV, la barra dei titoli di borsa o delle notizie nella parte inferiore dello schermo, ecc.) o immagini in formato panorama o 4:3. La visualizzazione continua di immagini fisse può provocare la bruciatura dello schermo LED e influenzare la qualità delle immagini. Per ridurre questo rischio, seguire questi consigli:

- Evitare di visualizzare lo stesso canale televisivo per un lungo periodo di tempo.
- Evitare di visualizzare le immagini sempre a pieno schermo. Usare il menu del formato immagine TV per selezionare il rapporto più appropriato.
- Ridurre la luminosità e il contrasto per evitare la comparsa di immagini residue.
- Usare tutte le funzioni TV disponibili per ridurre la ritenzione delle immagini e la bruciatura dello schermo. Consultare l'e-Manual per ulteriori dettagli.

Raccomandazioni - Solo UE

Con la presente, Samsung Electronics dichiara che questo TV è conforme ai requisiti essenziali e alle altre clausole pertinenti indicate nella Direttiva 1999/5/CE.

La Dichiarazione di conformità ufficiale è reperibile all'indirizzo http://www.samsung.com, accendendo alla pagina Supporto > Certificati CE, e immettendo i dati richiesti per l'identificazione del prodotto.

Questa apparecchiatura può essere utilizzata solo in interno.

L'uso di questa apparecchiatura è consentito in tutti i paesi europei.



Corretto smaltimento del prodotto (RAEE - Rifiuti da apparecchiature elettriche ed elettroniche)

(Applicabile nei paesi con sistemi di raccolta differenziata)

Questo simbolo riportato sul prodotto, sugli accessori e sulla documentazione indica che il prodotto e i suoi accessori elettronici (per es. caricatore, cuffie, cavo USB) non devono essere smaltiti unitamente ai rifiuti domestici al termine del loro ciclo vitale. Per prevenire eventuali danni all'ambiente o alla salute delle persone derivanti da uno smaltimento non appropriato, separarli da altri tipi di rifiuti e riciclarli in modo responsabile per promuovere il riutilizzo sostenibile delle risorse materiali.

Gli utenti residenziali sono invitati a contattare il rivenditore presso il quale hanno acquistato il prodotto, o l'ufficio locale preposto, per richiedere le informazioni relative alla raccolta differenziata e al riciclaggio di questo tipo di prodotto.

Gli utenti aziendali sono invitati a contattare il proprio fornitore e verificare i termini e le condizioni del contratto d'acquisto. Questo prodotto e i suoi accessori elettronici non devono essere smaltiti insieme agli altri rifiuti commerciali.



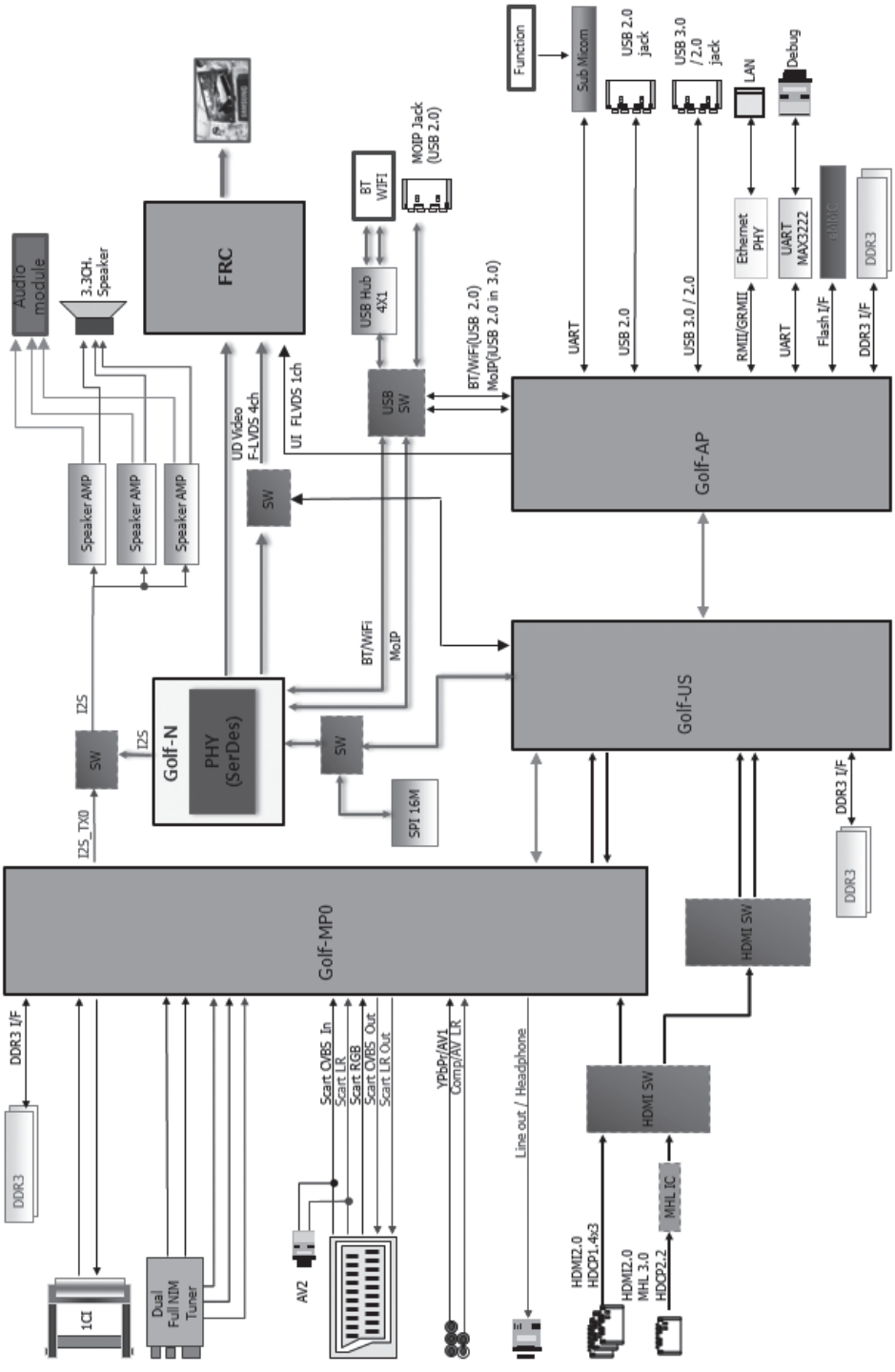
Corretto smaltimento delle batterie utilizzate in questo prodotto

(Applicabile nei paesi con sistemi di raccolta differenziata)

Questo contrassegno posto sulla batteria, sul manuale o sull'imballaggio, indica che le batterie contenute in questo prodotto non devono essere smaltite insieme ai rifiuti domestici una volta esauste. Laddove presenti, i simboli chimici Hg, Cd o Pb indicano che le batterie contengono mercurio, cadmio o piombo sopra i limiti stabiliti nell'ambito della Direttiva CE 2006/66. Se le batterie non vengono smaltite in modo corretto, tali sostanze possono causare danni alla salute o all'ambiente.

Per proteggere le risorse naturali e promuovere il riutilizzo dei materiali, separare le batterie dagli altri rifiuti e riciclarle utilizzando il sistema locale gratuito di ritiro delle batterie esauste.

Diagrammi a blocchi



Achtung! Wichtige Sicherheitshinweise

(Bitte lesen Sie den Abschnitt zu Ihrem Samsung-Gerät, ehe Sie es installieren.)

ACHTUNG

STROMSCHLAGGEFAHR NICHT ÖFFNEN

ACHTUNG: UM DIE GEFAHR EINES ELEKTRISCHEN SCHLAGES ZU VERRINGERN, ENTFERNEN SIE NICHT DIE ABDECKUNG (ODER RÜCKSEITE). IM GERÄTEINNEREN BEFINDEN SICH KEINE VOM BENUTZER ZU WARTENDEN TEILE. LASSEN SIE REPARATUREN NUR VON QUALIFIZIERTEM KUNDENDIENSTPERSONAL DURCHFÜHREN.



Dieses Symbol weist auf eine hohe Spannung im Innern des Geräts hin. Das Berühren von Teilen im Geräteinneren ist gefährlich.



Dieses Symbol weist darauf hin, dass diesem Gerät wichtige Anweisungen zu Betrieb und Wartung beigefügt sind.

Die Schlitze und Öffnungen im Gehäuse und in der Rückwand oder im Boden sind für die Belüftung erforderlich. Um den zuverlässigen Betrieb des Geräts zu gewährleisten und es vor Überhitzung zu schützen, dürfen diese Öffnungen keinesfalls blockiert oder bedeckt werden.

- Stellen Sie das Gerät nicht in abgeschlossene Räume wie z. B. in ein Bücherregal oder einen Einbauschrank. Dieser Einbau ist nur dann zulässig, wenn für ausreichende Belüftung gesorgt wird.
- Außerdem darf das Gerät keinesfalls in der Nähe oder über einem Radiator oder Heizkörper aufgestellt werden, oder an Orten, an denen es direkter Sonneneinstrahlung ausgesetzt ist.
- Stellen Sie keine mit Flüssigkeit gefüllten Behälter (Vasen usw.) auf das Gerät, da dies zu einem Brand oder Stromschlag führen kann.

Setzen Sie das Gerät keinesfalls Regen aus, und stellen Sie es nicht in der Nähe von Wasser auf (Badewanne, Küchenspüle, feuchter Keller, Schwimmbecken usw.). Falls das Gerät dennoch Nässe ausgesetzt war, trennen Sie es von der Stromversorgung und wenden Sie sich umgehend an den nächstgelegenen Händler. Ziehen Sie vor dem Reinigen des Geräts den Netzstecker aus der Steckdose.

Für dieses Gerät benötigen Sie Batterien. Entsorgen Sie die Batterien gemäß den für Sie geltenden Umweltschutzbestimmungen. Bitte wenden Sie sich bei Fragen zur ordnungsgemäßen Entsorgung an Ihre örtlichen Behörden.

Überlasten Sie Steckdosen, Verlängerungskabel und Netzteile keinesfalls, da dies zu einem Brand oder Stromschlag führen kann.

Netzkabel müssen so verlegt werden, dass niemand auf das Kabel treten kann oder es durch Gegenstände gequetscht wird, die auf dem Kabel stehen oder gegen das Kabel drücken. Besondere Aufmerksamkeit muss den Bereichen um Stecker, Steckdosen und dem Punkt zukommen, an dem das Netzkabel aus dem Gerät herausgeführt wird.

Zum Schutz des Geräts bei einem Gewitter oder längerem Nichtbetrieb trennen Sie das Gerät vom Netz. Trennen Sie darüber hinaus das Antennenkabel vom Gerät. Auf diese Weise werden Schäden durch Blitzschlag oder Spannungsstöße vermieden.

Stellen Sie sicher, dass die Nennspannung des Gleichstromnetzteils für die örtliche Stromversorgung geeignet ist, bevor Sie das Netzkabel an die Stromversorgung anschließen.

Führen Sie niemals Metallgegenstände in die Öffnungen dieses Geräts ein. Dies kann zu Stromschlägen führen.

Berühren Sie keinesfalls Bauteile im Geräteinneren, um Stromschläge zu vermeiden. Das Gerät darf nur von einem qualifizierten Techniker geöffnet werden.

Stellen Sie sicher, dass das Netzkabel fest in die Steckdose eingestöpselt wird. Fassen Sie das Netzkabel am Stecker an, wenn Sie es aus der Wandsteckdose ziehen. Berühren Sie das Netzkabel niemals mit feuchten Händen.

Wenn das Gerät nicht einwandfrei funktioniert, insbesondere beim Auftreten ungewöhnlicher Geräusche oder Gerüche aus dem Inneren, trennen Sie es unverzüglich von der Stromversorgung und wenden Sie sich umgehend an Ihren nächstgelegenen Händler oder das nächste Kundendienstzentrum.

Ziehen Sie auf jeden Fall den Netzstecker aus der Steckdose, wenn das Fernsehgerät längere Zeit nicht verwendet werden soll, weil Sie beispielsweise längere Zeit abwesend sind (besonders wenn Kinder und ältere Personen allein im Haus bleiben).

- Staubansammlungen können Stromschläge, Kurzschlüsse oder Brände verursachen, da am Netzkabel Funken auftreten oder die Hitze zu einer Beschädigung der Isolierung führt.

Wenden Sie sich an den autorisierten Kundendienst, wenn das Gerät an einem Ort mit hoher Konzentration an Staubpartikeln, außergewöhnlich hoher oder geringer Raumtemperatur, extrem hoher Luftfeuchtigkeit, in unmittelbarer Nähe zu chemischen Lösungsmitteln oder für den Dauerbetrieb, z. B. auf Bahn- oder Flughäfen, aufgestellt werden soll. Eine nicht fachgerechte Aufstellung kann zu schweren Schäden am Gerät führen.

Verwenden Sie nur ordnungsgemäß geerdete Stecker und Steckdosen.

- Eine fehlerhafte Erdung kann zu einem elektrischen Schlag oder Schäden am Gerät führen. (Nur Geräte der Klasse I.)

Wenn Sie das Gerät vom Stromnetz trennen möchten, müssen Sie den Netzstecker aus der Dose ziehen. Deshalb muss der Netzstecker jederzeit leicht erreichbar sein.

Achten Sie darauf, dass sich Kinder nicht an das Gerät hängen.

Lagern Sie die Zubehörteile (Batterie usw.) an einem sicheren Ort außerhalb der Reichweite von Kindern.

Bringen Sie das Gerät nicht an einem instabilen Ort wie z. B. einem wackligen Regal, einem abschüssigen Boden oder einem Ort an, der Vibrationen ausgesetzt ist.

Lassen Sie das Gerät nicht fallen, und vermeiden Sie Erschütterungen. Wenn das Gerät beschädigt ist, trennen Sie es vom Stromnetz, und wenden Sie sich an ein Kundendienstzentrum.

Ziehen Sie den Netzstecker aus der Steckdose, und wischen Sie das Gerät mit einem weichen, trockenen Tuch ab. Verwenden Sie keine Chemikalien wie Wachs, Benzol, Alkohol, Verdünner, Insektizide, Luftverbesserer, Schmiermittel oder Reinigungsmittel. Hierdurch kann das Aussehen des Geräts beschädigt oder der Aufdruck entfernt werden.

Es dürfen keinesfalls Tropfen oder Spritzer von Flüssigkeiten in das Gerät eindringen.

Entsorgen Sie Batterien niemals in einem Feuer.

Schließen Sie die Batterien nicht kurz, zerlegen und überhitzen Sie sie nicht.

Bei unsachgemäßem Austausch von Batterien besteht Explosionsgefahr. Setzen Sie nur Batterien des gleichen oder eines gleichwertigen Typs ein.

ACHTUNG: UM DIE AUSBREITUNG VON FEUER ZU VERHINDERN, SORGEN SIE JEDERZEIT DAFÜR, DASS DAS GERÄT NICHT MIT KERZEN ODER OFFENEM FEUER IN BERÜHRUNG KOMMT.



* Die Abbildungen und Illustrationen in diesem Handbuch dienen nur zur Information und können vom tatsächlichen Aussehen des Geräts abweichen. Änderungen an Ausführung und technischen Daten vorbehalten. Einige GUS-Sprachen (Russisch, Ukrainisch, Kasachisch) stehen für dieses Produkt nicht zur Verfügung, da das Gerät für Kunden in der EU hergestellt wurde.

Inhalt der Verpackung?

Samsung Smart Control & 2 Batterien (Typ AA)

Fernbedienung 2 Batterien (Typ AAA)

Benutzerhandbuch

Garantiekarte (nicht überall verfügbar)

Vorschriftenhandbuch

Netzkabel

Samsung 3D-Aktivbrille



CI-Kartenadapter



IR-Verlängerungskabel



Adapter für die Wandhalterung

- Vergewissern Sie sich, dass im Lieferumfang des Fernsehgeräts folgende Komponenten enthalten sind. Falls Komponenten fehlen sollten, setzen Sie sich bitte mit Ihrem Händler in Verbindung.
- Farbe und Form der Teile können sich je nach Modell unterscheiden.
- Nicht mitgelieferte Kabel können gesondert erworben werden.
- Kontrollieren Sie beim Öffnen der Verpackung, ob Zubehör hinter oder in den Verpackungsmaterialien versteckt ist.

Verwaltungskosten werden abgerechnet, wenn:

(a) auf Ihren Wunsch ein Ingenieur zu Ihnen geschickt wird, und es liegt kein Defekt des Geräts vor (d. h. wenn das Benutzerhandbuch nicht gelesen wurde)

(b) Sie das Gerät in eine Reparaturwerkstatt bringen, und es liegt kein Defekt des Geräts vor (d. h. wenn das Benutzerhandbuch nicht gelesen wurde)

Vor dem Besuch des Technikers werden Sie über die Höhe der Verwaltungsgebühr informiert.

Warnung: Der Bildschirm kann aufgrund direkter Krafteinwirkung während eines unsachgemäßen Transports beschädigt werden. Wir empfehlen daher, das Fernsehgerät beim Tragen wie in der Abbildung gezeigt an den Ecken des Geräts zu halten.



Befestigen des Fernsehgeräts am Standfuß

Stellen Sie sicher, dass alle dargestellten Zubehörteile vorhanden sind, und montieren Sie den Standfuß entsprechend der zur Verfügung gestellten Montageanleitung.

Wandmontage des Fernsehgeräts mit Hilfe der Wandhalterung (optional)

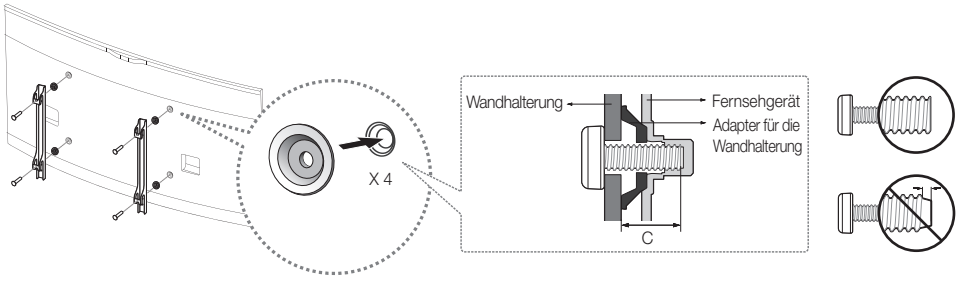
Wenn Sie dieses Produkt an einer Wand anbringen, müssen Sie dabei auf jeden Fall die Anweisungen des Herstellers einhalten. Wenn das Gerät nicht ordnungsgemäß montiert ist, könnte es herunterfallen, ein Kind oder einen Erwachsenen ernsthaft verletzen und beschädigt werden.

Anbringen der Wandhalterung

Mit der (separat erhältlichen) Wandhalterung können Sie das Fernsehgerät an einer Wand befestigen.

Verwenden Sie beim Montieren der Wandhalterung zum Schutz des Fernsehgeräts das Styropormaterial, in dem der Fernseher geliefert wurde. Legen Sie das Fernsehgerät auf eine weiche Unterlage, und befestigen Sie die Schrauben.

Detaillierte Informationen zum Montieren der Wandhalterung finden Sie in den Anweisungen zur Wandhalterung. Wir empfehlen Ihnen, sich beim Anbringen der Wandhalterung von einem Techniker helfen zu lassen. Wir raten davon ab, dies selbst zu erledigen. Samsung Electronics haftet nicht für Schäden an Gerät oder Personen, wenn die Montage der Wandhalterung vom Kunden selbst durchgeführt wird.



Befestigen Sie vor der Montage einer anderen Wandhalterung den Wandhalterungsadapter, der separat mit dem Fernsehgerät geliefert wird.

- Weitere Informationen erhalten Sie in der Montageanleitung unsere Wandhalterungsbausatzes.

Spezifikation (VESA) der Wandhalterung

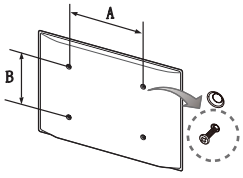
Die Wandhalterung wird nicht mitgeliefert, sondern ist gesondert erhältlich. Montieren Sie die Wandhalterung an einer soliden Wand, die senkrecht zum Boden steht. Bei Installation der Wandhalterung auf anderen Trägermaterialien wenden Sie sich bitte an Ihren Fachhändler. Bei Montage des Geräts an einer Decke oder schrägen Wand kann das Fernsehgerät herunterfallen und Verletzungen verursachen.

- Die Standardabmessungen der Wandhalterung finden Sie in der nachfolgenden Tabelle.
- Beim Kauf unserer Wandhalterung erhalten Sie ein detailliertes Installationshandbuch sowie alle für die Montage erforderlichen Teile.
- Verwenden Sie keine Schrauben, die nicht der VESA-Standardspezifikation für Schrauben entsprechen.
- Verwenden Sie keine Schrauben, die länger sind als in der VESA-Standardspezifikation für Schrauben angegeben. Zu lange Schrauben können Schäden an den inneren Bauteilen des Fernsehgeräts verursachen.

- Bei Wandhalterungen, die nicht der VESA-Standardspezifikation für Schrauben entsprechen, hängt die Länge der Schrauben von der Spezifikation der Wandhalterung ab.
- Ziehen Sie die Schrauben nicht zu fest an, weil Sie auf diese Weise das Gerät beschädigen könnten oder weil das Gerät dadurch herunterfallen und damit Verletzungen verursachen könnte. Samsung haftet nicht bei derartigen Unfällen.
- Samsung haftet nicht für Geräteschäden oder Verletzungen, wenn eine Wandhalterung verwendet wird, die nicht dem VESA-Standard entspricht oder nicht spezifiziert ist, oder wenn der Verbraucher die Installationsanleitung für das Produkt nicht befolgt.
- Montieren Sie das Fernsehgerät nicht in einem Winkel von mehr als 15 Grad.

Wenn Sie die Wandhalterung eines Fremdherstellers verwenden, beachten Sie die unten angegebene Länge (C) der Montageschrauben.

Produktfamilie	Zoll	VESA-Spez. (A * B)	C (mm)	Standardschraube	Menge
UHD-Fernsehgerät	55	400 X 400	21,3 ~ 26,3	M8	4
	65		21,0 ~ 26,0		



Installieren Sie die Wandhalterung nicht bei eingeschaltetem Fernsehgerät. Sie könnten dabei einen Stromschlag erhalten und sich verletzen.

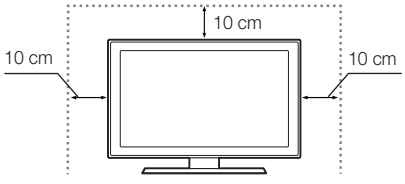
Ausreichende Belüftung Ihres Fernsehgeräts

Halten Sie beim Aufstellen des Fernsehgeräts einen Abstand von mindestens 10 cm zu anderen Objekten (Wänden, Schrankwänden usw.) ein, um eine ausreichende Lüftung zu gewährleisten. Wenn Sie nicht für eine ausreichende Lüftung sorgen, können aufgrund des Temperaturanstiegs im Innern des Geräts ein Brand oder ein Problem mit dem Gerät die Folge sein.

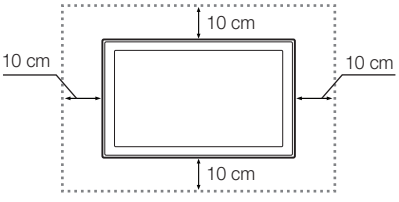
Wenn Sie Teile eines anderen Herstellers verwenden, kann es zu Problemen mit dem Gerät oder zu Verletzungen kommen, weil das Gerät herunterfällt.

- Wenn Sie einen Standfuß oder eine Wandhalterung einsetzen, empfehlen wir Ihnen dringend, ausschließlich Teile von Samsung Electronics zu verwenden.

Aufstellen des Geräts mit dem Standfuß



Installation des Geräts mit der Wandhalterung



Weitere Vorsichtsmaßnahmen

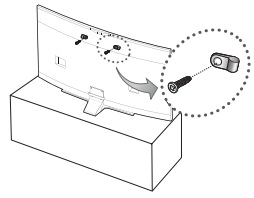
- Das tatsächliche Aussehen des Fernsehgeräts kann je nach Modell von den im Handbuch enthaltenen Abbildungen abweichen.
- Seien Sie vorsichtig, wenn Sie das Fernsehgerät berühren. Einige Teile können während des Betriebs sehr heiß werden.

Befestigen des Fernsehgeräts an der Wand

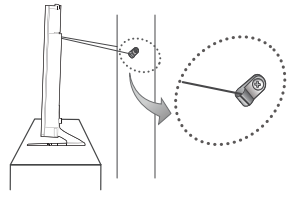


Achtung: Das Fernsehgerät kann hinfallen, wenn Sie daran ziehen, es schieben oder darauf klettern. Stellen Sie insbesondere sicher, dass sich keine Kinder an das Fernsehgerät hängen oder es in sonstiger Weise destabilisieren. Andernfalls kann das Fernsehgerät umkippen, was schwere oder tödliche Verletzungen zur Folge haben kann. Beachten Sie alle in den Ihrem Fernsehgerät beigefügten Sicherheitshinweisen genannten Anweisungen. Für mehr Stabilität und Sicherheit können Sie wie unten beschrieben die Absturzsicherung erwerben und anbringen.

So verhindern Sie, dass das Fernsehgerät herunterfällt



1. Stecken Sie die Schrauben durch die Halterungen, und befestigen Sie sie sicher an der Wand. Vergewissern Sie sich, dass die Schrauben gut in der Wand halten.
   - Je nach Ausführung der Wand benötigen Sie zum Befestigen weiteres Material, wie z. B. Dübel.
   - Da die benötigten Halterungen, Schrauben und das Band nicht zum Lieferumfang gehören, müssen Sie diese Teile gesondert erwerben.

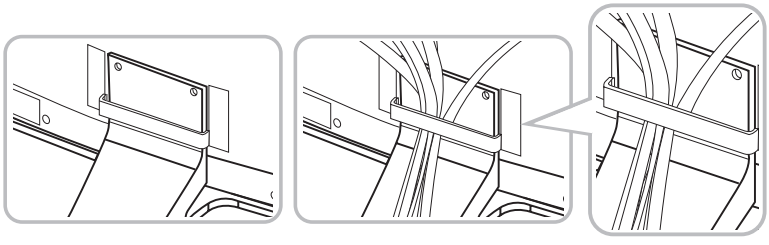


2. Entfernen Sie die Schrauben in der Mitte auf der Rückseite des Fernsehgeräts. Setzen Sie diese Schrauben in die Halterungen ein, und befestigen Sie sie dann wieder am Fernsehgerät.
   - Die Schrauben werden möglicherweise nicht zusammen mit dem Gerät geliefert. Kaufen Sie in diesem Fall Schrauben, die den folgenden Angaben entsprechen.
   - Technische Daten der Schrauben: Bei einem 55 – 65-Zoll-Gerät: M8

Wand

3. Verbinden Sie die Halterungen an der Wand und die Halterung am Fernsehgerät mit einem festen Kabel miteinander, und ziehen Sie es dann fest.
   - Stellen Sie das Fernsehgerät in der Nähe der Wand auf, damit es nicht nach hinten kippen kann.
   - Es ist noch sicherer, wenn die Halterungen an der Wand niedriger als die Halterungen am Fernsehgerät sind.
   - Lösen Sie das Band, ehe Sie den Fernseher bewegen.
4. Kontrollieren Sie, ob alle Verbindungen fest sitzen. Kontrollieren Sie die Verbindungen regelmäßig auf Anzeichen von Schäden. Bei Zweifeln hinsichtlich der Sicherheit Ihrer Halterungen wenden Sie sich an einen professionellen Installationsbetrieb.

Ordnen Sie die Kabel mit Hilfe des Kabelhalters



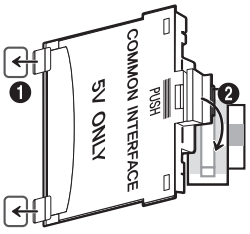
Anschließen von Geräten an Ihren Fernseher

Mit den Buchsen auf der Rückseite des Geräts können Sie verschiedene externe Geräte anschließen. Überprüfen Sie die Anschlüsse und schlagen Sie dann in den Montageanweisungen nach. wenn Sie weitere Informationen über die unterstützten externen Geräte benötigen.

Verbinden mit dem COMMON INTERFACE-Steckplatz (Fernsehen mit Ihrer PayTV-Karte)

- Schalten Sie den Fernseher aus, um eine CI-Karte oder einen CI-Kartenadapter anzuschließen oder zu trennen.

Befestigen des CI-Kartenadapters



- Je nach Modell steht ein CI-Kartenadapter zur Verfügung, mit dem zwei verschiedene CI-Karten mit dem Fernsehgerät verwendet werden können.

Befestigen Sie den Adapter wie unten gezeigt.

- Entfernen Sie zum Installieren des CI-Kartenadapters den Aufkleber am Fernsehgerät.

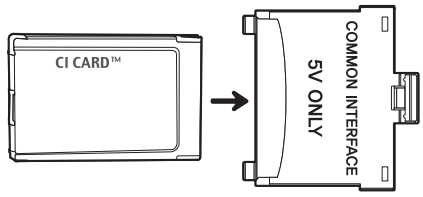
Gehen Sie folgendermaßen vor, um den CI-Kartenadapter anzuschließen.

- Wir empfehlen, den Adapter anzuschließen, bevor Sie die Wandhalterung befestigen oder die „CI“- oder „CI+“-Karte einstecken.

1. Setzen Sie den CI-Kartenadapter in die beiden Bohrungen des Geräts 1 ein.
   - Suchen Sie die beiden Öffnungen neben dem Anschluss **COMMON INTERFACE** auf der Rückseite des Fernsehgeräts.
2. Schließen Sie den CI-Kartenadapter an den Anschluss **COMMON INTERFACE** von Gerät 2 an.
3. Setzen Sie die „CI“- oder „CI+“-Karte ein.

Wir empfehlen, dass Sie den CI-Kartenadapter und die CI-Karte (Smartcard) anschließen, ehe Sie das Fernsehgerät an der Wand anbringen, denn wenn es erst an der Wand befestigt ist, kann dies schwierig und gefährlich sein.

Verwenden der „CI“- oder „CI+“-Karte



Um Bezahlsender zu sehen, müssen Sie eine „CI“- oder „CI+“-Karte einsetzen.

- Wenn Sie keine „CI“- oder „CI+“-Karte einsetzen, wird bei einigen Sendern die Meldung „Scrambled Signal“ (Gestörtes Signal) angezeigt.
- Die Pairing-Informationen mit Telefonnummer, Kennung der „CI“- oder „CI+“-Karte, Hostkennung und anderen Angaben werden nach ungefähr 2 bis 3 Minuten angezeigt. Wenn eine Fehlermeldung angezeigt wird, wenden Sie sich bitte an Ihren Dienstanbieter.
- Wenn die Senderinformationskonfiguration abgeschlossen ist, wird die Meldung „Udating Completed“ (Aktualisierung abgeschlossen) angezeigt. Dies bedeutet, dass die Senderliste aktualisiert wurde.

HINWEIS

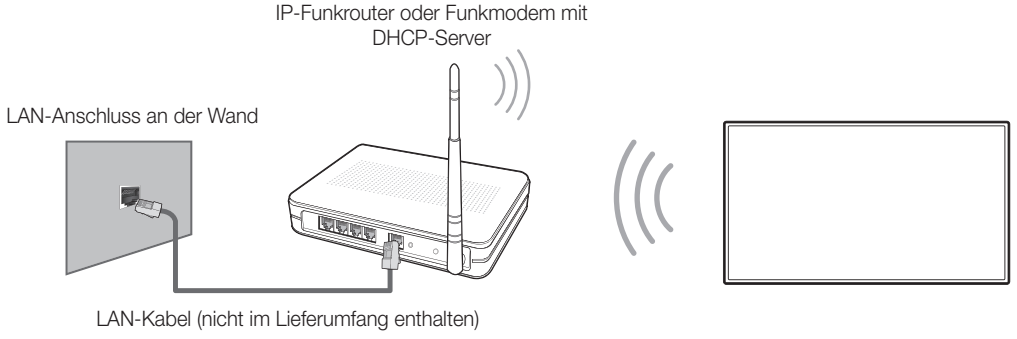
- Sie können die „CI“- oder „CI+“-Karte bei einem der örtlichen Kabelnetzbetreiber erwerben.
- Ziehen Sie die „CI“- oder „CI+“-Karte vorsichtig mit der Hand heraus. Sie könnte beim Herunterfallen beschädigt werden.
- Die Richtung, in der Sie die „CI“- oder „CI+“-Karte einsetzen müssen, ist auf der Karte markiert.
- Die Position des COMMON INTERFACE-Steckplatzes ist modellabhängig.
- „CI“- oder „CI+“-Karten werden in manchen Ländern und Regionen nicht unterstützt. Fragen Sie deshalb diesbezüglich Ihren offiziellen Händler.
- Wenden Sie sich bei Problemen an den Dienstanbieter.
- Setzen Sie eine „CI“- oder „CI+“-Karte ein, die für die aktuellen Antenneneinstellungen geeignet ist. Andernfalls ist das Bild gestört oder es fällt aus.

Verbinden mit einem Netzwerk

Durch Anschließen des Fernsehgeräts an ein Netzwerk erhalten Sie Zugriff auf Software-Updates sowie auf Online-Dienste wie Smart Hub.

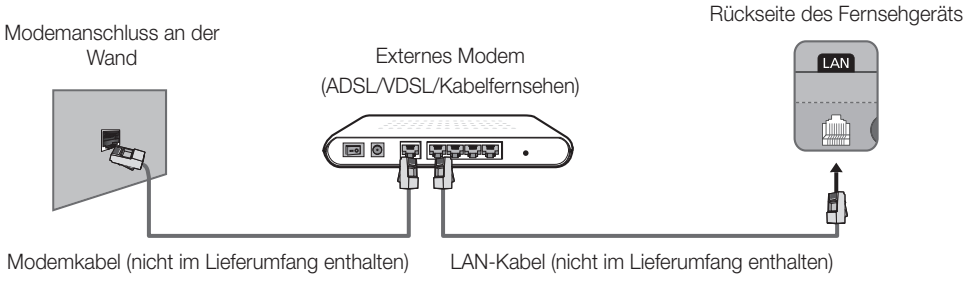
Netzwerkverbindung - Drahtlos

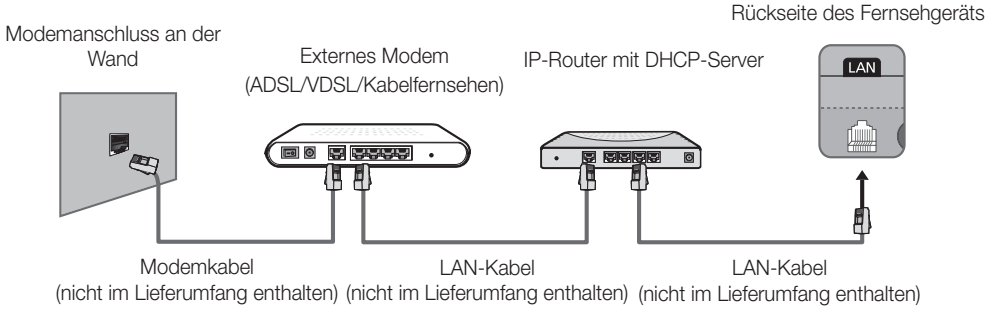
Verbinden Sie den Fernseher über einen Standardrouter oder ein Modem mit dem Internet.

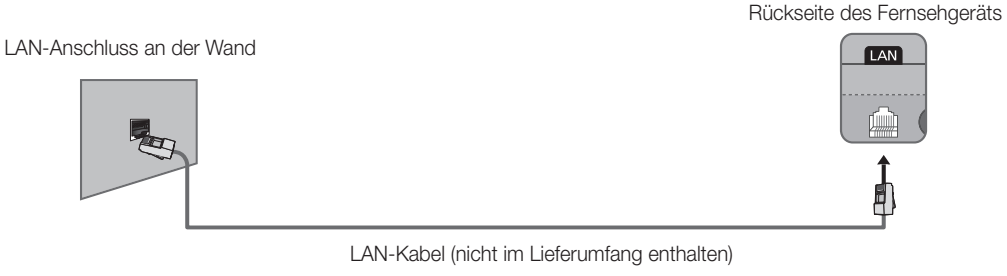


Netzwerkverbindung – Kabel

Je nach Konfiguration Ihres Netzwerks können Sie Ihr Fernsehgerät auf drei Arten über ein Kabel mit Ihrem Netzwerk verbinden. Diese sind im Folgenden abgebildet:





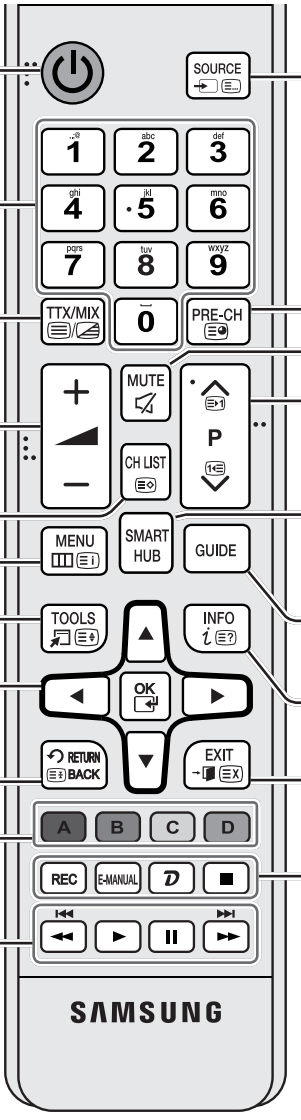


- Eine Netzwerkgeschwindigkeit von weniger als oder gleich 10 Mbit/s wird vom Fernsehgerät nicht unterstützt.
- Verwenden Sie ein CAT7-Kabel für den Anschluss.

Fernbedienung

Im Folgenden erfahren Sie mehr über die Funktionen, die mit den Tasten Ihrer Fernbedienung aufgerufen werden können. Beispiel: **SOURCE**, **MUTE**, **– +**, **P**, **MENU**, **TOOLS**, **INFO**, **CH LIST**, **RETURN**, **GUIDE** und **EXIT**.

- Die Tasten **Power**, **Channel**, und **Volume** der Fernbedienung sind mit Braille-Punkten versehen und können auch von Personen mit Sehbehinderung verwendet werden.
- Ihr Fernsehgerät wird mit einer Samsung Smart Control ausgeliefert. Weitere Informationen zur Samsung Smart Control finden Sie im e-Manual.



Ein- bzw. Ausschalten des Fernsehgeräts.

Hiermit können Sie die verfügbaren Videosignalquellen anzeigen und auswählen.

Direkter Zugriff auf die Sender.

Alternativ Auswählen von „Teletext ein“, „Doppel“, „Mix“ oder „Aus“

Zurück zum vorherigen Sender.

Vorübergehendes Ausschalten des Tons.

Einstellen der Lautstärke.

Wechseln des Senders.

Hiermit öffnen Sie die Smart Hub-Anwendungen. Weitere Informationen erhalten Sie im Kapitel **Smart-Funktionen** > **Smart Hub** des elektronischen Handbuchs.

Anzeigen der Senderlisten.

Öffnen des Bildschirmmenüs.

Schnellauswahl häufig verwendeter Funktionen.

Anzeigen des elektronischen Programmführers (**EPG**).

Bewegen des Cursors, Auswählen von Optionen im Bildschirmmenü und Ändern der angezeigten Menüwerte.

Anzeigen von Informationen auf dem Bildschirm.

Zurück zum vorherigen Menü.

Schließen des Menüs.

Verwenden Sie diese Tasten entsprechend den Anweisungen auf dem Fernsehbildschirm.

REC: Nimmt auf, was Sie gerade sehen.

E-MANUAL: Anzeigen des **e-Manual**.

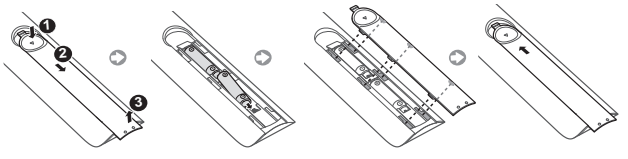
Verwenden Sie diese Tasten innerhalb einer bestimmten Funktion. Verwenden Sie diese Tasten entsprechend den Anweisungen auf dem Fernsehbildschirm.

: Verwenden Sie diese Taste für eine Datensendung.

■: Stopp.

Einsetzen von Batterien (Batteriegröße: AAA)

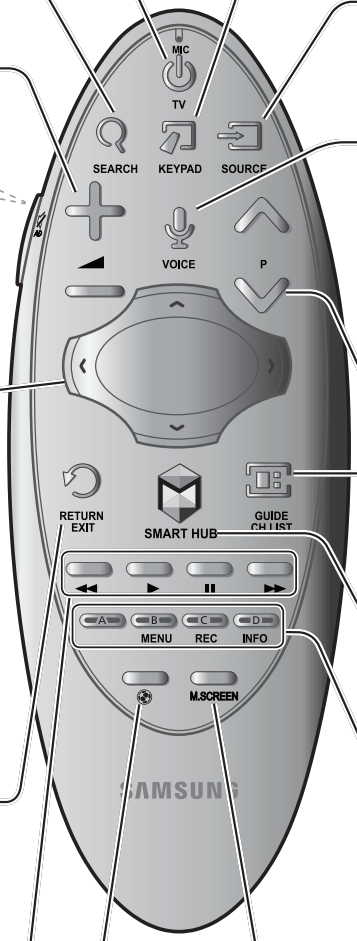
Setzen Sie die Batterien entsprechend den Symbolen im Batteriefach mit der richtigen Polung ein.



- Setzen Sie die Fernbedienung bis zu einer Entfernung von maximal 7 m zum Fernsehgerät ein.
- Helles Licht kann die Leistung der Fernbedienung verschlechtern. Vermeiden Sie die Verwendung der Fernbedienung in der Nähe von Leuchtstoffröhren oder Neonschildern.
- Form und Farbe können je nach Modell unterschiedlich sein.

Samsung Smart Control

- Form und Farbe können je nach Modell unterschiedlich sein.



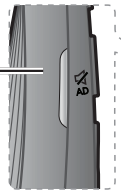
Hiermit schalten Sie das Fernsehgerät ein bzw. aus.

Drücken Sie diese Taste, um das Suchfenster zu öffnen.

Einstellen der Lautstärke.

: Hiermit schalten Sie den Ton ein oder aus.

AD: Halten Sie diese Taste gedrückt, um den Bereich **Schnelltasten für Barrierefreiheit** aufzurufen. Wählen Sie die gewünschten Optionen zum Aktivieren bzw. Deaktivieren aus.



- Touchpad: Legen Sie einen Finger auf das Touchpad, und bewegen Sie die Samsung Smart Control. Der Zeiger auf dem Bildschirm bewegt sich in die Richtung, die durch die Bewegung der Samsung Smart Control vorgegeben wird. Drücken Sie auf das Touchpad, um das markierte Element auszuführen.
- ∧ ∨ < >: Bewegen des Zeigers oder Fokus.

RETURN: Zurück zum vorherigen Menü. Außerdem können Sie mit Hilfe dieser Taste während des Fernsehens zum vorherigen Sender zurückkehren.

EXIT: Halten Sie diese Taste gedrückt, um alle laufenden Anwendungen zu beenden.

Verwenden Sie diese Tasten innerhalb einer bestimmten Funktion. Verwenden Sie diese Tasten entsprechend den Anweisungen auf dem Fernsehbildschirm.

Aktivieren Sie den **Fußballmodus** für eine optimale Benutzererfahrung bei Sportveranstaltungen.

Mit Hilfe der virtuellen Fernbedienung auf dem Bildschirm können Sie einfach und problemlos Zahlen eingeben, Inhalte verwalten und Funktionen steuern.

Hiermit wechseln Sie die Signalquelle.

Hiermit starten Sie die Spracherkennung. Wenn auf dem Bildschirm das Mikrofonsymbol erscheint, sprechen Sie den Sprachbefehl in das Mikrofon.

- Sprechen Sie die Sprachbefehle in einem Abstand von 10 bis 15 cm mit angemessener Lautstärke in das Mikrofon.

Hiermit wechseln Sie den Sender.

GUIDE: Hiermit rufen Sie den Programmführer für den digitalen Sender auf.

CH.LIST: Halten Sie diese Taste gedrückt, um die **CH.LIST**.

Hiermit starten Sie Smart Hub. Wenn Sie während einer aktiven Anwendung die Taste **SMART HUB** drücken, wird die Anwendung beendet.

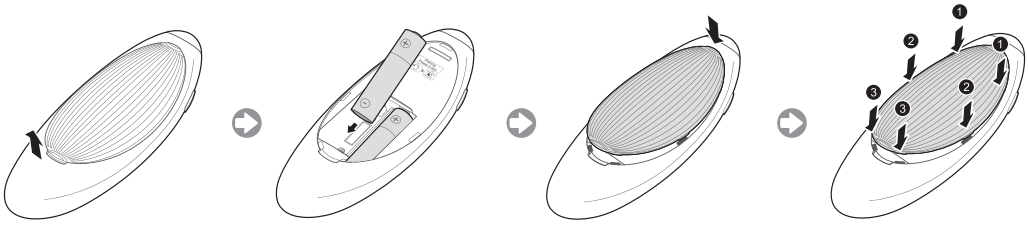
Farbtaste: Mit diesen Farbtasten können Sie Zusatzoptionen zu der aktuell verwendeten Funktion aufrufen.

- **MENU**: Halten Sie diese Taste gedrückt, um ein Menü auf dem Bildschirm zu öffnen.
- **REC**: Halten Sie diese Taste gedrückt, um die Sendung aufzunehmen.
- **INFO**: Halten Sie diese Taste gedrückt, um Informationen zum aktuell angezeigten Digitalsender oder der aktuell abgespielten Mediendatei anzuzeigen.

M.SCREEN: Sie können den Fernsehbildschirm teilen und verschiedene Funktionen nutzen, wie z. B. Fernsehen, Surfen im Internet, Anschauen von Videos usw. Weitere Informationen finden Sie im **e-Manual**.

Einsetzen der Batterien in die Samsung Smart Control

Bevor Sie die Samsung Smart Control verwenden können, müssen Sie zunächst die Batterien wie unten abgebildet einsetzen.

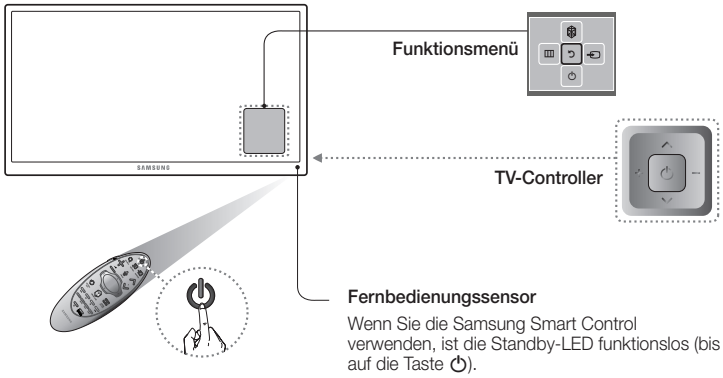


1. Ziehen Sie vorsichtig an der Kerbe der Batterieabdeckung, und entfernen Sie die Abdeckung, nachdem Sie sich gelöst hat.
2. Legen Sie 2 AA-Alkaline-Batterien ein, und achten Sie dabei auf die richtige Polung (positiver und negativer Pol der Batterien).
3. Schieben Sie den oberen Teil der Abdeckung in die dafür vorgesehenen Aussparungen an der Fernbedienung.
4. Drücken Sie die Stifte zu beiden Seiten der Batteriefachabdeckung in der abgebildeten Reihenfolge nach unten, sodass die Abdeckung vollständig und hörbar in die Fernbedienung einrastet.

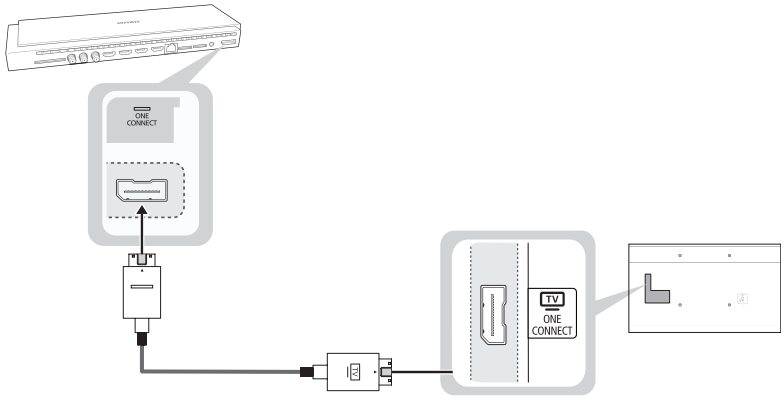
Einschalten des Fernsehgeräts

Mit Hilfe der Taste ⏻ auf der Fernbedienung oder am Gerät selbst können Sie den Fernseher einschalten.

- Form und Farbe des Geräts können je nach Modell unterschiedlich sein.
- Mit Hilfe des TV-Steuerknopfs, einer kleinen Joystick-ähnlichen Taste rechts auf der Rückseite des Fernsehgeräts, können Sie den Fernseher ohne Fernbedienung bedienen.


Funktionsmenü
TV-Controller
Fernbedienungssensor
Wenn Sie die Samsung Smart Control verwenden, ist die Standby-LED funktionslos (bis auf die Taste ⏻).

Aktualisieren des Fernsehgeräts mit einem UHD Evolution Kit (separat erhältlich)



Durch Anschluss des UHD Evolution Kit (separat erhältlich) an ein Fernsehgerät von Samsung können Sie die neusten Funktionen und Inhalte nutzen, ohne sich ein vollkommen neues Fernsehgerät kaufen zu müssen. Entdecken Sie mit dem UHD Evolution Kit die neusten Funktionen und Dienste von Samsung Electronics.

- Das UHD Evolution Kit ist separat erhältlich. Der Kauf des UHD Evolution Kit ermöglicht Ihnen eine Aktualisierung der Software auf die Version des Jahres, in dem Ihr UHD Evolution Kit erschienen ist. Die Verfügbarkeit eines UHD Evolution Kit ist jedoch abhängig vom jeweiligen Gerät.

Anfangseinstellung

Wenn Sie das Gerät erstmals einschalten, wird das Dialogfenster für die Anfangseinstellungen geöffnet. Befolgen Sie die Anweisungen auf dem Bildschirm, um die Anfangseinstellung mit der Auswahl der Menüsprache, dem Sendersuchlauf, der Verbindung zum Netzwerk und anderen Einstellungen abzuschließen. Bei jedem Schritt können Sie entweder eine Auswahl treffen oder den Schritt überspringen. Sie können diesen Vorgang mit dem Menü **System** > **Einstell.** zu einem späteren Zeitpunkt manuell ausführen.

- **HDMI1** wechselt automatisch zu **Sendertyp**, wenn Sie vor Beginn der Installation ein Gerät an **Set-Top-Box** anschließen.
- Wenn Sie die Option **Set-Top-Box** nicht verwenden möchten, wählen Sie stattdessen **TV-Empf.** aus.

Ändern des Kennworts

System > **PIN ändern**

Ändern des Kennworts für das Fernsehgerät

1. Führen Sie die Funktion **PIN ändern** aus, und geben Sie dann im Kennwortfeld das aktuelle Kennwort ein. Das Standardkennwort lautet „1-1-1-1“.
2. Geben Sie ein neues Kennwort ein und bestätigen Sie es durch eine erneute Eingabe. Das Kennwort wurde geändert.

- Wenn Sie den PIN-Code vergessen haben, drücken Sie die Tasten auf der Fernbedienung in der angegebenen Reihenfolge, um die PIN auf „1-1-1-1“ zurückzusetzen:

  Für die Standardfernbedienung: Im Standby-Modus: **MUTE** → 8 → 2 → 4 → **POWER** (Ein)

  Für die Samsung Smart Control: Wenn das Fernsehgerät eingeschaltet wird: **MUTE** → Lauter → **RETURN** → Leiser → **RETURN** → Lauter → **RETURN**

Hiermit wählen Sie die Videosignalquelle aus.

Sie können mit der Taste **SOURCE** ein angeschlossenes externes Gerät auswählen.

Wenn Sie beispielsweise zu einer Spielekonsole wechseln möchten, die über den zweiten HDMI-Anschluss angeschlossen ist, drücken Sie die Taste **SOURCE**. Wählen Sie in der **Quelle** den Eintrag **HDMI2** aus, um das Eingangssignal auf HDMI umzustellen. Die Bezeichnungen der Anschlüsse können je nach Modell unterschiedlich sein.

Im Fenster **Quelle** sind folgende Optionen verfügbar

TOOLS Taste

Wählen Sie einen Anschluss, der mit einem externen Gerät verbunden ist, und halten Sie die Eingabetaste gedrückt. Dann stehen folgende Funktionen zur Verfügung:

- Die verfügbaren Optionen können je nach Anschluss unterschiedlich sein.

Name bearb.

Hiermit geben Sie einen Namen für ein an das Fernsehgerät angeschlossenes Gerät ein, um die externen Geräte in der Liste schnell und einfach identifizieren zu können.

Zum Beispiel können Sie einen über ein HDMI/DVI-Kabel an den Fernseher angeschlossenen Computer als **DVI PC** benennen.

Alternativ können Sie einen über ein HDMI/DVI-Kabel an den Fernseher angeschlossenen Computer einfach als **PC** benennen.

Auch können Sie ein über ein HDMI/DVI-Kabel an den Fernseher angeschlossenes AV-Gerät als **DVI-Geräte** benennen.

Information

Hiermit zeigen Sie detaillierte Informationen zu den angeschlossenen Geräten an.

Anynet+ (HDMI-CEC)

Hiermit zeigen Sie eine Liste der Geräte an, die an das Fernsehgerät angeschlossen und mit Anynet+ (HDMI-CEC) kompatibel sind.

- Diese Funktion ist nur verfügbar, wenn **Anynet+ (HDMI-CEC)** auf **Ein** eingestellt ist.

USB entfernen

Hiermit können Sie ein an den Fernseher angeschlossenes USB-Gerät sicher entfernen. Diese Funktion ist nur verfügbar, wenn ein USB-Gerät ausgewählt wurde.

Verwenden von Samsung Smart Control

Samsung Smart Control vereinfacht die Bedienung des Fernsehgeräts erheblich. Durch Drücken der Taste **KEYPAD** erscheint eine virtuelle Fernbedienung auf dem Bildschirm, über die Sie einfach und problemlos Zahlen eingeben, Inhalte verwalten und Funktionen aktivieren können.

- Der empfohlene Einsatzbereich für die Samsung Smart Control beträgt maximal 6 m. Der Betriebsbereich ist abhängig von den Umgebungsbedingungen für die Drahtloskommunikation.

Pairing-Verfahren mit der Samsung Smart Control

Um das Fernsehgerät mit der Samsung Smart Control bedienen zu können, müssen Sie die Samsung Smart Control zunächst über Bluetooth mit dem Fernseher verbinden. Verbinden Sie die Samsung Smart Control mit dem Fernsehgerät.

- Samsung Smart Control kann nur mit einem einzigen Fernsehgerät gekoppelt werden.

Richten Sie die Samsung Smart Control auf den Fernbedienungsempfänger am Fernsehgerät, und drücken Sie die Taste **TV**, um das Fernsehgerät einzuschalten.

- Der Fernbedienungsempfänger des Fernsehgeräts befindet sich je nach Modell an unterschiedlichen Stellen.

Wiederherstellen der Verbindung zur Samsung Smart Control



Wenn die Samsung Smart Control nicht mehr funktioniert oder ungewöhnlich reagiert, tauschen Sie die Batterie aus, da das Problem möglicherweise durch eine zu geringe Batterieladung hervorgerufen wird.

Wenn das Problem weiterhin besteht, muss das Pairing-Verfahren der Samsung Smart Control mit dem Fernsehgerät erneut durchgeführt werden.

1. Halten Sie die Tasten **RETURN** und **GUIDE** gleichzeitig mindestens 3 Sekunden lang gedrückt.
   - Die Samsung Smart Control muss aus einer Entfernung von etwa 30 bis 40 cm auf den Fernbedienungsempfänger am Fernsehgerät gerichtet werden.
2. Das Verbindungssymbol wird auf dem Bildschirm angezeigt. Anschließend wird automatisch eine Verbindung zwischen Samsung Smart Control und dem Fernsehgerät hergestellt.

Wenn Sie dieses Alarm-Symbol auf dem Bildschirm sehen...



<Alarmsymbol bei schwacher Batterieladung>

Das folgende Alarmsymbol weist darauf hin, dass die Batterieladung der Samsung Smart Control schwach ist. Wenn dieses Alarmsymbol angezeigt wird, ersetzen Sie die Batterien. Samsung empfiehlt für eine längere Lebensdauer des Geräts die Verwendung von Alkali-Batterien.

Bedienen des Fernsehgeräts durch Bewegen der Samsung Smart Control

Die Samsung Smart Control ist mit einem Bewegungssensor (Gyrosensor) ausgestattet, der die einfache Bedienung des Fernsehgeräts durch Bewegen der Samsung Smart Control ermöglicht.

Wenn Sie einen Finger auf das Touchpad legen, erscheint auf dem Bildschirm ein Zeiger. Bewegen Sie die Samsung Smart Control. Der Zeiger bewegt sich in gleicher Weise wie die Samsung Smart Control. In Fenstern mit Bildlauf können Sie zudem nach oben oder unten blättern.

- Wenn Sie den Finger vom Touchpad nehmen, verschwindet der Zeiger auf dem Bildschirm.

Bedienen des Fernsehgeräts mit dem Touchpad

- Navigieren Sie zum Menü **Unterstützung**, und wählen Sie die Option **Smart Control-Anleitung** aus, um weitere Informationen und Anweisungen für die Verwendung des Touchpads zu erhalten.

Verschieben des Fokus/Zeigers

Drücken Sie die Richtungstasten (Auf, Ab, Links und Rechts), um den Zeiger oder Fokus in die entsprechende Richtung zu bewegen.

Menüzugriff & Optionsauswahl

Drücken Sie auf das Touchpad. Hiermit können Sie auf ein Fernsehmenü zugreifen oder ein Element auswählen.

Anzeigen des Kontextmenüs in Smart Hub

Halten Sie im Fenster Smart Hub den Finger auf dem Touchpad gedrückt. Das Menü „Optionen“ für das ausgewählte Element wird angezeigt.

- Der Inhalt des Menüs „Optionen“ hängt vom Kontext ab.

Navigieren zum Smart Hub-Bereich

Ziehen Sie Ihren Finger bei geöffnetem Smart Hub-Fenster auf dem Touchpad nach links oder rechts. Dadurch werden die Bereiche in Smart Hub nach links bzw. rechts verschoben.

Blättern im Web Browser

Ziehen Sie im geöffneten Webbrowser Ihren Finger auf dem Touchpad nach oben/unten. Auf diese Weise führen Sie im Browserfenster einen Bildlauf durch.

Anzeigen der Fernbedienung auf dem Bildschirm (virtuelle Fernbedienung)

Drücken Sie die Taste **KEYPAD**, um auf dem Bildschirm die virtuelle Fernbedienung anzuzeigen. Sie können mit der virtuellen Fernbedienung ganz einfach Ziffern eingeben, Steuerbefehle geben und Tasten des Fernsehgeräts verwenden.

- Die Tasten auf der virtuellen Fernbedienung können je nach aktuellem Betriebsstatus des Fernsehgerät unterschiedlich sein.

Bedienen externer Geräte mit der Fernbedienung des Fernsehgeräts (Setup der Universalfernbedienung)

System > **Setup der Universalfernbedienung**

- Verfügbar je nach Modell und Region.

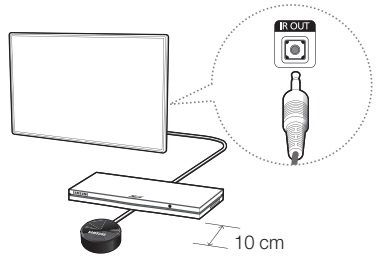
Mit der Universalfernbedienung können Sie die an Ihr Fernsehgerät angeschlossenen Kabelreceiver, Blu-ray-Player, Heimkinosysteme und anderen externen Geräte mit Hilfe der Fernbedienung des Fernsehgeräts steuern. Um die Fernbedienung des Fernsehgeräts als Universalfernbedienung zu verwenden, müssen Sie zuerst das IR-Verlängerungskabel (im Lieferumfang enthalten) anschließen.

- Mit Hilfe der Funktion Anynet+ (HDMI-CEC) können Sie zudem einige externe Samsung-Geräte ohne zusätzliche Konfiguration über die Fernbedienung des Fernsehgeräts steuern. Weitere Informationen finden Sie im **e-Manual**.
- Manche der an den Fernseher angeschlossenen externe Geräte unterstützen die Universalfernbedienung möglicherweise nicht.

Einrichten der Universalfernbedienung

Schließen Sie das IR-Verlängerungskabel an den IR-Ausgang des Fernsehers an (siehe Abbildung), und stellen Sie das Ende mit dem Sender in einer Entfernung von höchstens 10 cm vom Fernbedienungsempfänger des externen Geräts auf. Zwischen dem Sender am IR-Verlängerungskabel und dem Empfänger des externen Geräts dürfen sich jedoch keine Hindernisse befinden. Hindernisse stören die Übertragung des Fernbedienungssignals.

- Bei Verwendung eines externen Geräts, das bei integrierten Universalfernbedienung der Samsung Smart Control registriert ist, können Sie das externe Gerät ohne Anschluss eines IR-Verlängerungskabels verwenden. Wenn Sie jedoch ein externes Gerät mit der **Sprachsteuerung** bedienen möchten, müssen Sie auf jeden Fall ein IR-Verlängerungskabel anschließen.



Bedienen externer Geräte mit der Fernbedienung des Fernsehgeräts

1. Schalten Sie das externe Gerät ein, das für die Universalfernbedienung eingerichtet werden soll, und öffnen Sie das Menü **Quelle**.
2. Wählen Sie am oberen Bildschirmrand **Setup der Universalfernbedienung**. Hiermit starten Sie den Prozess zum Einrichten der Universalfernbedienung.
3. Befolgen Sie die Anweisungen auf dem Bildschirm, und registrieren Sie das externe Gerät.

Anzeigen weiterer Fernsehfunktionen

Dieses **e-Manual** enthält detailliertere Informationen zu den Funktionen des Fernsehgeräts. Schlagen Sie im integrierten **e-Manual** (**Unterstützung** > **e-Manual**).

Starten des e-Manual

Das integrierte e-Manual enthält Informationen.

- Sie können ein Exemplar des e-Manual von der Samsung-Website herunterladen und auf Ihrem Computer lesen oder drucken.
- Fettgedruckte Wörter in weiß stehen für Menüelemente und Wörter in gelb für Tasten auf der Fernbedienung. Der Menüpfad wird mit Pfeilen dargestellt. (Beispiel: **Bild** > **Bildmodus**)

1. Wählen Sie **e-Manual** aus. Das e-Manual wird geladen.
2. Wählen Sie eine der am Bildschirmrand angezeigten Kategorien aus. Sobald Sie eine Auswahl getroffen haben, wird der Inhalt der entsprechenden Kategorie angezeigt.
3. Wählen Sie ein Element aus der Liste aus. Hiermit öffnen Sie das e-Manual auf der entsprechenden Seite.

Wenn eine Beschreibung nicht auf einen Bildschirm passt...

können Sie die Seiten folgendermaßen umblättern.

- Verschieben Sie den Fokus auf die Seite, sodass ^ / v auf dem Bildschirm angezeigt wird. Drücken Sie eine der Tasten ^, v.

Weitere Funktionen im e-Manual

Laden von Seiten mit Hilfe von Stichwörtern

Wählen Sie am Bildschirmrand **Suchen**, um das Suchfenster zu öffnen. Geben Sie einen Suchbegriff ein, und wählen Sie dann **Fertig**. Wählen Sie einen Treffer aus der Liste mit den Suchergebnissen, um die entsprechende Seite zu laden.

Laden von Seiten aus dem Index heraus

Wählen Sie am Rand des Fensters **Index**, um das Indexfenster zu öffnen. Wählen Sie ein Stichwort aus der Liste, um zur entsprechenden Seite zu navigieren.

Verwenden von Verlauf, um zuvor geladene Seiten anzuzeigen

Wählen Sie am Rand des Fensters **Geöffnete Seite**. Eine Liste der zuvor gelesenen Seiten wird angezeigt. Wählen Sie eine Seite aus. Das e-Manual wechselt zur gewählten Seite.

Zugriff auf das Menü aus dem e-Manual (Jetzt test.)

Wählen Sie in der Beschreibung einer Funktion (**Jetzt test.**), um direkt zu dem entsprechenden Menü zu wechseln und die Funktion sofort auszuprobieren.

Wenn Sie im **e-Manual** einen Eintrag zu einer bestimmten Funktion des Bildschirmmenüs lesen möchten,

Verwenden von Samsung Smart Control: Drücken Sie auf die Taste **KEYPAD** und wählen Sie **e-Manual** aus.

Verwenden der Fernbedienung: Drücken Sie die Taste **E-MANUAL**.

- Bestimmte Menüoptionen können nicht verwendet werden.

Laden von Referenzseiten

Wählen Sie am Rand der Seite mit der Beschreibung einer Funktion (**Verknüpfung**), um die entsprechende Referenzseite anzuzeigen.

Aktualisieren des e-Manual auf die neuste Version

Sie können das e-Manual in der gleichen Weise wie Apps aktualisieren.

1. Wählen Sie im Fenster **SAMSUNG APPS** die Option **e-Manual** aus.
2. Halten Sie die Eingabetaste gedrückt. Das Menü „Optionen“ wird angezeigt.
3. Wählen Sie im Menü „Optionen“ den Eintrag **Apps aktualisieren** aus. Ein Popup-Fenster wird angezeigt.
   - **Apps aktualisieren** wird nur dann angezeigt, wenn ein Update erforderlich ist.
4. Wählen Sie zuerst im Popup-Fenster **e-Manual** aus und dann **Aktual.**. Sie können das **e-Manual** auf die neuste Version aktualisieren.

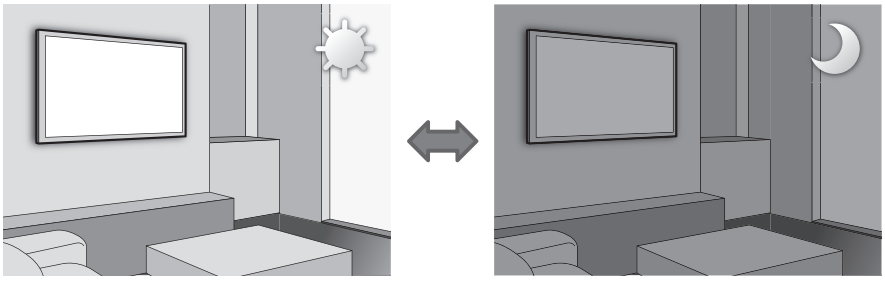
Fehlerbehebung

Bei Fragen zum Fernsehgerät schauen Sie zuerst in der Fehlerbehebungsliste nach. Wenn keiner dieser Tipps zur Fehlerbehebung weiterhilft, wechseln Sie zur Website „www.samsung.com“, und klicken Sie dort auf „Support“ oder wenden Sie sich an das in der Liste auf der letzten Seite angegebene Callcenter.

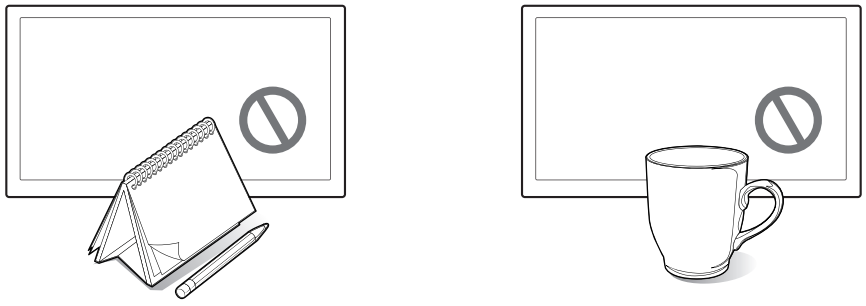
Probleme	Lösungen und Erklärungen
Der Fernseher kann nicht eingeschaltet werden.	Vergewissern Sie sich, dass das Netzkabel sicher mit der Wandsteckdose und dem Fernsehgerät verbunden ist. Vergewissern Sie sich, dass die Netzsteckdose Strom liefert. Drücken Sie die Taste ⏻ am Fernsehgerät, um sicherzustellen, dass das Problem nicht auf dem entfernten Server zu suchen ist. Wenn das Fernsehgerät eingeschaltet wird, lesen Sie den Abschnitt „Die Fernbedienung funktioniert nicht“ weiter unten.
Kein Bild/Video.	Überprüfen Sie die Kabelverbindungen. Unterbrechen Sie kurzzeitig alle Kabelverbindungen zwischen dem Fernsehgerät und den externen Geräten. Stellen Sie die Videoausgänge Ihrer externen Geräte (Kabel-/Satreceiver, DVD-, Blu-ray-Player usw.) so ein, dass sie zu den Eingangsanschlüssen des Fernsehgeräts passen. Beispiel: Wenn der HDMI-Ausgang des externen Geräts verwendet wird, schließen Sie es an den HDMI-Eingang Ihres Fernsehers an. Stellen Sie sicher, dass die angeschlossenen Geräte eingeschaltet sind. Achten Sie darauf, dass Sie die richtige Eingangsquelle eingestellt haben. Ziehen Sie kurzzeitig das Netzkabel des angeschlossenen Geräts, um es neu zu starten.
Die Fernbedienung funktioniert nicht.	Tauschen Sie die Batterien der Fernbedienung aus. Achten Sie beim Einsetzen der Batterien auf die richtige Polung (+/-). Reinigen Sie das Sendefeld der Fernbedienung. Versuchen Sie, die Fernbedienung aus einer Entfernung von 1,5 bis 1,8 m aus direkt auf das Fernsehgerät zu richten.
Die Fernbedienung des Kabel-/ Satellitenreceivers schaltet das Fernsehgerät nicht ein/aus und regelt auch nicht die Lautstärke.	Programmieren Sie die Fernbedienung des Kabel-/Satellitenreceivers so, dass sie das Fernsehgerät anspricht. Den Code für SAMSUNG TV finden Sie in der Bedienungsanleitung für Ihren Kabel-/Satellitenreceiver.

- Der TFT-LED-Bildschirm enthält Unterpixel. Hierfür ist eine ausgefeilte Fertigungstechnologie erforderlich ist. Allerdings können einige wenige zu helle oder zu dunkle Pixel zu sehen sein. Diese Pixelfehler haben keinen Einfluss auf die Geräteleistung.
- Damit Ihr Fernsehgerät optimal funktioniert, aktualisieren Sie die Firmware des Geräts mit der auf der Samsung-Website zur Verfügung gestellten Version und mit Hilfe eines USB-Geräts (Samsung.com > Support > Downloads) auf die neueste Version.
- Manche der obigen Abbildungen und Funktionen stehen nur bei bestimmten Modellen zur Verfügung.

Hinweise zum Öko-Sensor und zur Bildschirmhelligkeit



Der Öko-Sensor misst die Lichtverhältnisse im Zimmer und optimiert automatisch die Helligkeit des Fernsehbildschirms, um den Energieverbrauch zu senken. Dies führt dazu, dass der Fernsehbildschirm automatisch heller oder dunkler wird. Um diese Funktion zu deaktivieren, wechseln Sie zu **System** > **Öko-Lösung** > **Öko-Sensor**.



Verdecken Sie den Sensor nicht mit Materialien oder Gegenständen. Dies kann die Bildhelligkeit verringern.

1. **Öko-Sensor**: Diese Energiesparfunktion passt die Bildschirmhelligkeit des Fernsehgeräts automatisch an die vom Lichtsensor ermittelten Lichtverhältnisse an.
2. Um den **Öko-Sensor** zu aktivieren oder zu deaktivieren, wechseln Sie zu **System** > **Öko-Lösung** > **Öko-Sensor** und wählen Sie **Ein** oder **Aus**.
3. Bitte beachten Sie Folgendes: Wenn der Bildschirm beim Fernsehen in dunkler Umgebung zu dunkel ist, kann dies auf den **Öko-Sensor** zurückzuführen sein.

Was ist Fernunterstützung?

Der Samsung Remote Support-Service bietet Ihnen individuelle Unterstützung durch einen Samsung-Techniker, der (aus der Ferne):

- **Diagnosen** Ihres Fernsehgeräts durchführt
- **Passen Sie** Ihre Fernseheinstellungen an
- **Ihr Fernsehgerät auf die Standardwerte zurücksetzt**
- Empfohlene Firmware-Updates **für Sie installiert**

Wie funktioniert das?

Einen Samsung-Techniker aus der Ferne helfen zu lassen, ist wirklich ziemlich einfach.



1. **Wenden Sie sich an das Samsung-Callcenter** und bitten Sie um Fernunterstützung.



2. **Öffnen Sie das Menü**auf Ihrem Fernseher und wechseln Sie zum **Supportbereich**.



3. Wählen Sie „Fernverwaltung“ und **nennen Sie Ihrem Gesprächspartner ihr Pin.**



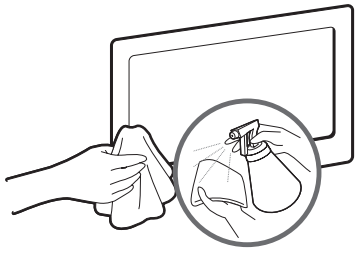
4. Ihr Gesprächspartner wird **dann auf Ihr Fernsehgerät zugreifen.**. Das war's!

Lagerung und Wartung

- Wenn am Fernsehbildschirm ein Aufkleber angebracht wurde, können einige wenige Reste zurückbleiben, nachdem Sie den Aufkleber entfernt haben. Bitte entfernen Sie diese Rückstände, ehe Sie das Fernsehgerät als Display verwenden.
- Beim Reinigen können Kratzer auf dem Gehäuse und dem Bildschirm des Geräts entstehen. Wischen Sie das Gehäuse und den Bildschirm vorsichtig mit einem weichen Tuch ab, um Kratzer zu vermeiden.



Sprühen Sie kein Wasser direkt auf das Gerät. Wenn Flüssigkeit in das Gerät eindringt, kann dies zum Ausfall des Geräts und zu Feuer oder Stromschlägen führen.



Reinigen Sie das Gerät mit einem weichen Tuch, das Sie vorher mit einer kleinen Menge Wasser anfeuchten. Verwenden Sie keine entzündlichen Flüssigkeiten (z. B. Benzol, Verdünner) oder Reinigungsmittel.

Technische Daten des Fernsehgeräts

Anzeigeauflösung	3840 x 2160	
Bildschirmwölbung	4200R	
Umgebungsbedingungen Betriebstemperatur Luftfeuchtigkeit (bei Betrieb) Temperatur (Lagerung) Luftfeuchtigkeit (Lagerung)	 10° C bis 40° C (50°F bis 104°F) 10% bis 80%, nicht kondensierend -20° C bis 45° C (-4 °F bis 113 °F) 5 % bis 95 %, nicht kondensierend	
Drehbarer Fuß (Links / Rechts)	0°	
Audio (Ausgang)	60 W [vorne TW(10 W+10 W) + vorne mittig (10 W+10 W) + Woofer (10 W+10 W)]	
Modellbezeichnung	UE55HU8200	UE65HU8200
Bildschirmgröße (Diagonale)	55 Zoll	65 Zoll
Abmessungen (B × H × T) Gehäuse Mit Fuß	 1232,6 x 715,0 x 93,4 mm 1232,6 x 761,7 x 286,0 mm	 1450,7 x 840,0 x 111,5 mm 1450,7 x 888,0 x 306,0 mm
Gewicht Ohne Fuß Mit Fuß	 19,9 kg 23,2 kg	 26,4 kg 30,1 kg

- Änderungen der technischen Daten und des Gerätedesigns vorbehalten.
- Die technischen Daten zur benötigten Netzspannung und Informationen zum Energieverbrauch finden Sie auf dem Etikett am Gerät.
- Der typische Stromverbrauch wird gemäß IEC 62087 Ed.2 gemessen.

Standby-Modus

Wenn Sie das Fernsehgerät längere Zeit nicht verwenden, ziehen Sie den Netzstecker aus der Steckdose, um den Stromverbrauch zu senken.

Lizenzen

The terms HDMI and HDMI High-Definition Multimedia Interface, and the HDMI Logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of HDMI Licensing LLC in the United States and other countries.

Warnung bei Standbildern

Vermeiden Sie die Anzeige von Standbildern (wie z. B. JPEG-Bilddateien) oder Standbildelementen (wie z. B. Senderlogos, Laufschriften mit Aktieninformationen oder Nachrichten am unteren Bildschirmrand usw.) sowie die Anzeige von Programmen im Panorama- oder 4:3-Format auf dem Bildschirm. Durch lang anhaltende Anzeige von Standbildern kann es zum Einbrennen von Bildern auf dem LED-Bildschirm kommen, wodurch die Bildqualität beeinträchtigt wird. Um diese Gefahr zu vermindern, befolgen Sie bitte die nachfolgenden Empfehlungen:

- Vermeiden Sie es, für lange Zeit denselben Fernsehsender anzuzeigen.
- Versuchen Sie immer, Bilder als Vollbild anzuzeigen. Verwenden Sie das Bildformat-Menü des Fernsehers, um bestmögliche Übereinstimmung zu erzielen.
- Durch Reduzieren von Helligkeit und Kontrast tragen Sie dazu bei, das Entstehen von Nachbildern zu vermeiden.
- Verwenden Sie alle Funktionen des Fernsehgeräts, mit denen Nachbilder und Einbrennen reduziert werden. Weitere Informationen finden Sie im e-Manual.

Empfehlung - Nur EU

Hiermit erklärt Samsung Electronics, dass dieses Fernsehgerät mit allen wesentlichen Anforderungen und sonstigen relevanten Bestimmungen der Richtlinie 1999/5/EG konform ist.

Die offizielle Konformitätserklärung finden Sie unter http://www.samsung.com. Wechseln Sie dort zu Support > Produktsuche, und geben Sie den Modellnamen ein.

Dieses Gerät ist ausschließlich für die Verwendung in geschlossenen Räumen geeignet.

Dieses Gerät kann in allen Ländern in der EU verwendet werden.

Ordnungsgemäße Entsorgung dieses Geräts (Elektro- & Elektronik-Altgeräte)
(Anwendbar in Ländern mit Systemen zur getrennten Sammlung von Wertstoffen).

Diese Kennzeichnung auf dem Gerät, dem Zubehör oder der Dokumentation bedeutet, dass das Gerät sowie das elektronische Zubehör (z. B. Ladegerät, Headset, USB-Kabel) am Ende ihrer Lebensdauer nicht im normalen Hausmüll entsorgt werden dürfen. Entsorgen Sie diese Geräte bitte getrennt von anderen Abfällen, um der Umwelt bzw. der menschlichen Gesundheit nicht durch unkontrollierte Müllbeseitigung zu schaden. Recyceln Sie das Gerät, um die nachhaltige Wiederverwertung von stofflichen Ressourcen zu fördern.

Private Nutzer sollten den Händler, bei dem das Produkt gekauft wurde, oder die zuständigen Behörden kontaktieren, um in Erfahrung zu bringen, wie sie das Gerät auf umweltfreundliche Weise recyceln können.

Gewerbliche Nutzer wenden sich an ihren Lieferanten und überprüfen die Konditionen ihres Kaufvertrags. Dieses Gerät und seine elektronischen Zubehörteile dürfen nicht zusammen mit anderem Gewerbemüll entsorgt werden.

Ordnungsgemäße Entsorgung der Batterien dieses Produkts
(Anwendbar in Ländern mit Systemen zur getrennten Sammlung von Wertstoffen).

Diese Kennzeichnung auf der Batterie, dem Handbuch oder der Verpackung bedeutet, dass die Batterien am Ende ihrer Lebensdauer nicht im normalen Hausmüll entsorgt werden dürfen. Die Kennzeichnung mit den chemischen Symbolen für Hg, Cd oder Pb bedeutet, dass die Batterie Quecksilber, Cadmium oder Blei in Mengen enthält, die die Grenzwerte der EU-Direktive 2006/66 übersteigen. Wenn Batterien nicht ordnungsgemäß entsorgt werden, können diese Substanzen die Gesundheit von Menschen oder die Umwelt gefährden.

Zum Schutz der natürlichen Ressourcen und zur Förderung der Wiederverwertung von Materialien trennen Sie die Batterien von anderem Müll, und führen Sie sie Ihrem örtlichen Recyclingsystem zu.

This page is intentionally left blank.

E-MANUAL

Thank you for purchasing this Samsung product.
To receive more complete service, please register your product at

www.samsung.com/register

Model_____ Serial No._____

Contents

Quick Guide

Using the Smart TV

Using Voice Control

Using Motion Control

Using the Samsung Smart Control

Using the Football Mode

Using the Multi-Link Screen

Editing channels

Connecting Antenna and External devices

Connecting - Aerial

Video Device Connection

14 Connecting - HDMI

15 Connecting - Component

16 Connecting - External Input

17 Connecting - SCART

TV Audio through the External Speakers

18 Connecting - HDMI (ARC)

19 Connecting - Digital Audio (Optical)

20 Connecting - Headphone

21 Connecting - Audio Output

Connecting to a Computer

23 Connecting - HDMI Port

24 Connecting - HDMI (DVI) Port

25 Connecting - Samsung Link

25 Connecting - Home Network (DLNA)

Connecting with a Mobile Device

27 Connecting - MHL-to-HDMI Cable

28 Mobile Device Screen on TV (Screen Mirroring)

29 Connecting Mobile Devices without a Wireless Router (Wi-Fi Direct)

29 Connecting via Smart View 2.0

30 Connecting - Samsung Link

30 Connecting via Home Network (DLNA)

31 Name of TV on Network

Input Signal Selection

Using Remote and Peripheral Devices

Inserting Batteries into Samsung Smart Control

32 When you see this alarm icon on the screen...

Pairing Samsung Smart Control

33 Reconnecting Samsung Smart Control

Using Samsung Smart Control

34 Button Functions

36 Using the TV by Moving the Samsung Smart Control

37 Using the TV with the Touchpad

39 Displaying the Remote Control on the Screen (virtual remote control)

Controlling External Devices with the TV Remote (Universal Remote Setup)

41 Setting Up the Universal Remote Control

42 Controlling External Devices with the TV Remote

43 Universal Remote Features

Controlling the TV with a Keyboard

44 Connecting a Keyboard

45 Using the Keyboard

Controlling the TV with a Mouse

46 Connecting a Mouse

46 Using the Mouse

Entering Text Using QWERTY

48 Using Additional Functions

Internet Connection

Establishing a Wired Internet Connection

49 Connecting a LAN Cable

50 Connecting to a Wired Internet Network Automatically

50 Connecting to a Wired Internet Network Manually

Establishing a Wireless Internet Connection

52 Connecting to a Wireless Internet Network Automatically

53 Connecting to a Wireless Internet Network Manually

54 Connecting to a Wireless Internet Network with WPS

Troubleshooting Internet Connectivity Issues

55 Troubleshooting Wired Internet Connectivity Issues

56 Troubleshooting Wireless Internet Connectivity Issues

Mobile Network

57 Supported Telecom and Model Name

Checking the Internet Connection Status

Smart Features

Multiple Functions on a Single Screen

59 Launching Multi-Link Screen

59 Using Multi-Link Screen

59 Selecting a Feature

59 Changing the Channel/Volume

60 Pairing Bluetooth Headphones

60 Selecting the Audio-Source Screen

Smart Hub

61 Testing Smart Hub connections

62 Opening the Home Screen

63 Moving to the Panel Screen

63 Using the Smart Hub Tutorial

63 Resetting Smart Hub

Using Smart Hub with Samsung Account

64 Creating a Samsung Account

66 Signing into Samsung Account

67 Linking My Samsung and App Accounts

68 Changing and Adding Information to Samsung Account

68 Deleting All Samsung Accounts from the TV

Using the Games Panel

69 Using Pop-Up Menu Functions

70 Installing and Running a Game

71 Managing Downloaded or Purchased Games

Using SAMSUNG APPS Panel

73 Using Pop-Up Menu Functions

74 Installing an App

75 Default Apps

75 Using Web Browser

78 Rearranging Apps on the SAMSUNG APPS Screen

79 Removing an App from the TV

79 Rating/Reviewing an App

80 Updating an App

80 SAMSUNG APPS Features

Using On TV Panel

84 Using Pop-Up Menu Functions

84 Viewing Detailed Programme Information

85 Configuring On TV Settings

Using FILMS AND TV SHOWS Panel

87 Using Pop-Up Menu Functions

88 Watching a Movie/TV Programme

88 Restricting Purchased Content Viewing

88 Preventing Children from Watching Adult UHD Content

89 Rating and Sharing a Purchased Content

Playing Photos, Videos, and Music (MULTIMEDIA)

90 Playing Media Content from a USB Device

91 Playing Multimedia Content Saved in a Computer/Mobile Device

93 Playing Media Content from a Storage Service

94 Buttons and Functions Available while Viewing Photos

95 Buttons and Functions Available while Watching Video

97 Buttons and Functions Available while Playing Music

98 Functions on the Media Content List Screen

TV Control using your Voice

99 Enabling Voice Control

101 Using the Voice Interaction function Interactively

TV Control using Motions

102 Testing Ambient Illumination Using the TV Camera
103 Activating Motion Control
107 Motion Control Screen Layout

Signing in with Face Recognition
110 Registering Your Face to Your Samsung Account
111 Changing Login Method to Face Recognition
111 Signing into Samsung Account with Your Face

TV Viewing and Recording Features

Digital Broadcast Information at a Glance
112 Using the Guide
113 Checking the Current Programme Info
113 Change the Broadcast Signal
113 Digital Signal Info and Strength

Recording Programmes
114 Creating a USB Recording Device
116 Recording Programmes
117 Buttons and Functions Available While Recording a Programme
118 Managing the Schedule Recording List
119 Viewing Recorded Programmes
122 Managing Recorded Files

Setting Up a Schedule Viewing
123 Setting Up Schedule Viewing
124 Managing the Schedule Viewing List

Using Timeshift

Using the Channel List

Registering, Removing, and Editing Channels
127 Registering and Removing Channels
127 Editing Registered Channels
128 Enabling/Disabling Password Protection on Channels
128 Locking/ Unlocking Channels
128 Edit Channel Number

Creating a Personal Favourites List
129 Registering a Channel as Favourites
130 Viewing Favourites List Channels Only
130 Editing a Favourites List

Adding Realism to Sports
133 Enabling Football Mode
133 Extracting Highlights Automatically
134 Functions Available in Football Mode
135 Viewing a Sports Event Recorded in Football Mode

TV-Viewing Support Features
136 Showing Subtitles
136 Subtitle Options
136 Changing Teletext Language
137 Digital Text
137 PIP Broadcast Viewing
138 Scanning for Available Channels
138 Aerial Connection Type
139 Selecting the Broadcast Audio Options
139 Audio Description
139 Genre Selection
139 Adult genre enabling

Using the Channel Settings
140 Country (Area)
140 Manual Tuning
141 Fine-Tuning the Screen
142 Transfer Channel List
142 Delete CAM Operator Profile
142 Satellite System
144 Common Interface

Picture and Sound Settings

Changing the Picture Mode and Adjusting the Picture Quality
145 Choosing the Right Picture Mode for the Viewing Environment
146 Adjusting the Picture Quality for Each Picture Mode
147 Fine-Tuning Each Picture Mode (Advanced Settings)
148 Adjusting the Picture for Easier Viewing (Picture Options)

Viewing in 3D
151 Starting 3D
152 Changing the 3D Mode
153 Adjusting the 3D Effect

Picture Support Functions

154 PIP Broadcast Viewing

155 Changing the Picture Size and Position

156 Listening to Audio Only with the Screen Turned Off (Picture Off)

156 Resetting the Picture Mode Settings

Changing the Sound Mode and Using Sound Effects

157 Choosing the Right Sound Mode for the Environment

158 Using Sound Effects

Sound Support Functions

159 Selecting Speakers

159 Designating the TV's Installation Type

159 Listening to TV Sound through Samsung Bluetooth or Wi-Fi Audio

160 Listening to TV Sound through Samsung Multiroom Link compatible Speakers

161 Enabling the Sound (Additional Settings)

162 Listening to 3D Audio in 3D Mode

162 Resetting All Sound Settings

General

Setting the Time and Using the Timer

163 Setting the Current Time

164 Using the Timers

Using the Screen Burn Protection and Energy Saving Features

166 Preventing Screen Burn

166 Using Energy Saving Features

Using Anynet+ (HDMI-CEC)

167 Setting Up Anynet+ (HDMI-CEC)

168 Using Anynet+ (HDMI-CEC)

Using the e-Manual

169 Launching the e-Manual

169 Additional e-Manual Features

170 Updating the e-Manual to the Latest Version

Updating the Software

171 Updating Software over the Internet

171 Updating Software using a USB connection

172 Enabling Automatic Software Updates

172 Software Update via satellite channel

Protecting the TV from Hacking and malicious code

172 Checking the TV and Connected Storage Media

173 Automatically Scanning when the TV is Powered On

173 Automatically Adding malicious code to the Blocked List

Using Other Functions

174 Enabling Voice Guide for the Visually Impaired

175 Enabling the High Contrast

175 Adjusting the Menu Transparency

176 Expanding the Smart Hub's Focus Area

176 Changing the Menu Language

176 Checking Notifications

176 Setting Up a Password

177 Programme Rating Lock

177 Enabling Game Mode

177 Enjoying Rich Colours and Superior Picture Quality (BD Wise)

178 Enabling/Disabling Sound Feedback

178 Locking/Unlocking the Panel Keys

178 Showing/Hiding the Samsung Logo while Booting

178 Enabling the TV to Boot Faster

178 Anti Flicker

178 Enabling/Disabling the Front Indicators

179 UHD Evolution Kit Backup

179 Update Recorded Programmes

180 Registering the TV as a DivX-Certified Device (Watching Paid DivX Movies)

181 Restoring the TV to the Factory Settings

181 Turning the TV into a Display Model (for retail stores)

Data Service

182 Auto Run Data Service

182 Using Data Service

HbbTV

Connecting to a TV Viewing Card slot

184 To connect the CI CARD, follow these steps:

185 To connect the CI CARD Adapter, follow these steps:

Teletext Feature

Troubleshooting

Getting Support

189 Support through Remote Management

191 Finding the Information You Need for Service

There is a problem with the screen

191 Testing the Picture

I can't hear the sound clearly

194 Testing the Sound

I can't see 3D images clearly.

195 Testing 3D Picture Quality

There is a problem with the broadcast.

The computer won't connect.

I can't connect to the Internet.

Data Service

The Schedule Recording/Timeshift function isn't working.

Anynet+ (HDMI-CEC) isn't working.

I am having trouble launching/using apps.

My file won't play.

I want to reset the TV.

Other Issues

Notes and Precautions

Before Using the Recording and Timeshift Functions

203 Before Using the Recording and Schedule Recording Functions

204 Before the Using Timeshift Function

S-Recommendation Disclaimer

205 S Recommendation with Voice Interaction

205 S Recommendation

Before Using 3D Viewing Mode

206 3D Precautions

209 Supported Resolutions for each 3D Mode

Supported Resolutions for UHD

211 HDMI Connector except for the MHL-to-HDMI Connector

Read Before Using Voice, Motion, or Face Recognition

212 Precautions for Voice, Motion and Face Recognition

214 Requirements for Using Voice, Motion, or Face Recognition

Read Before Using SAMSUNG APPS

Web Browser Restrictions

Photo, Video, and Music File Limitations

219 Storage Device File Transfers

220 Supported External Subtitles

220 Supported Internal Subtitles

221 Supported Image Formats and Resolutions

221 Supported Music Formats and Codecs

222 Supported Video Codecs

Restrictions

224 Restrictions to PIP (Picture-in-Picture)

224 Flexible CI

Read After Installing the TV

225 Picture Sizes and Input Signals

225 Installing an Anti-Theft Kensington Lock

226 Read Before Setting Up a Wireless Internet Connection

Computer Connection Precautions

227 IBM

227 MAC

228 VESA DMT

Supported Video Resolutions

229 CEA-861

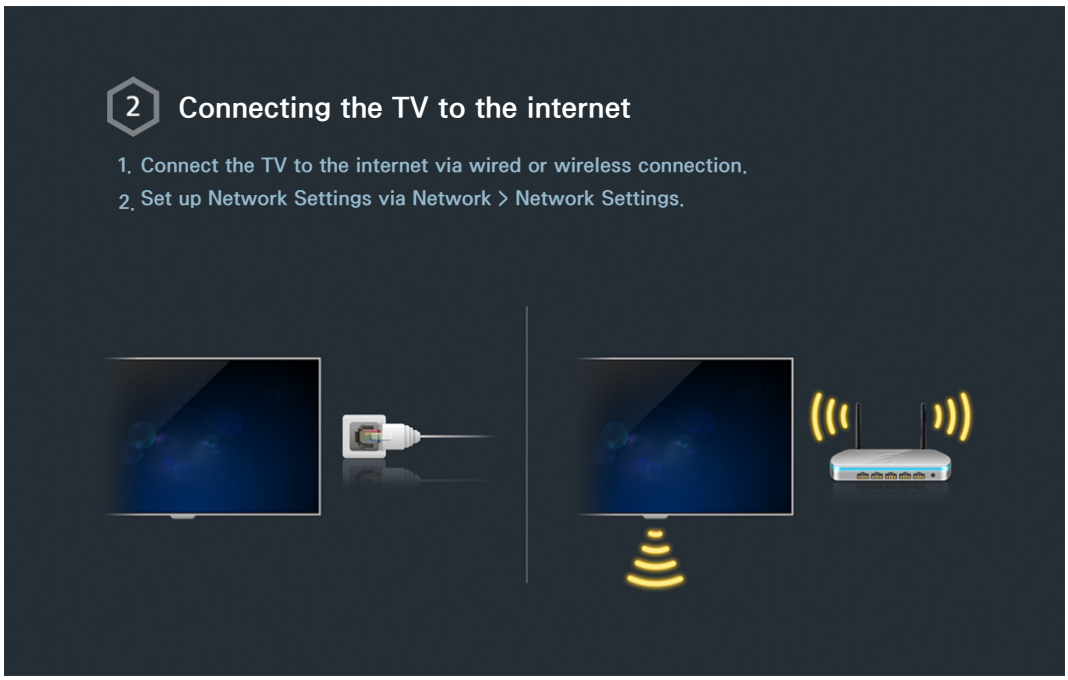
230 HDMI

Licence

Glossary

Using the Smart TV

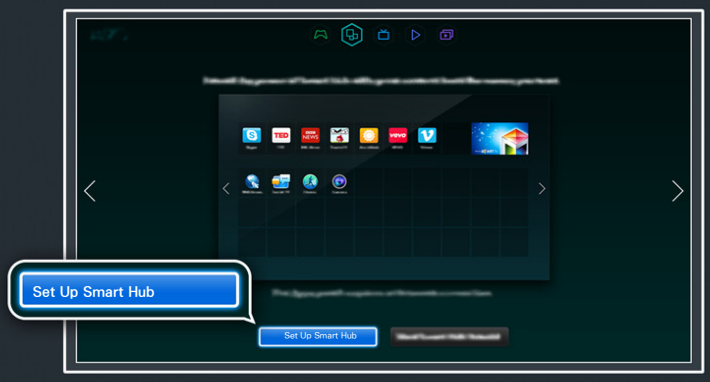

1
Samsung Smart TV
Smart TV can download applications and explore the internet. Connect to the internet to make full use of the TV.


2
Connecting the TV to the internet
1. Connect the TV to the internet via wired or wireless connection.
2. Set up Network Settings via Network > Network Settings.

3 Setting up Smart Hub

Smart TV services are available on the 5 Smart Hub panels. Before using the Smart Hub, set up the area, and service provider.

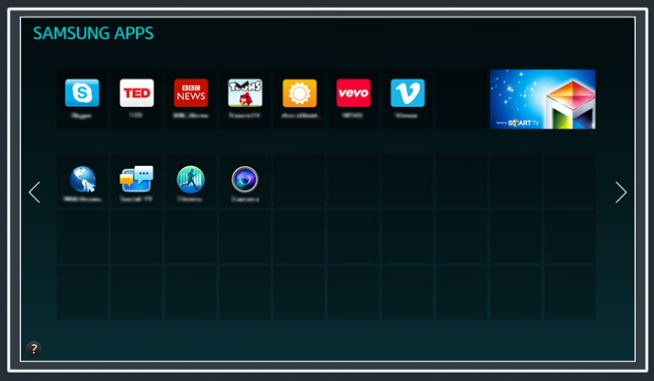
You can enjoy various services that Samsung has got to offer by following the directions on the screen.

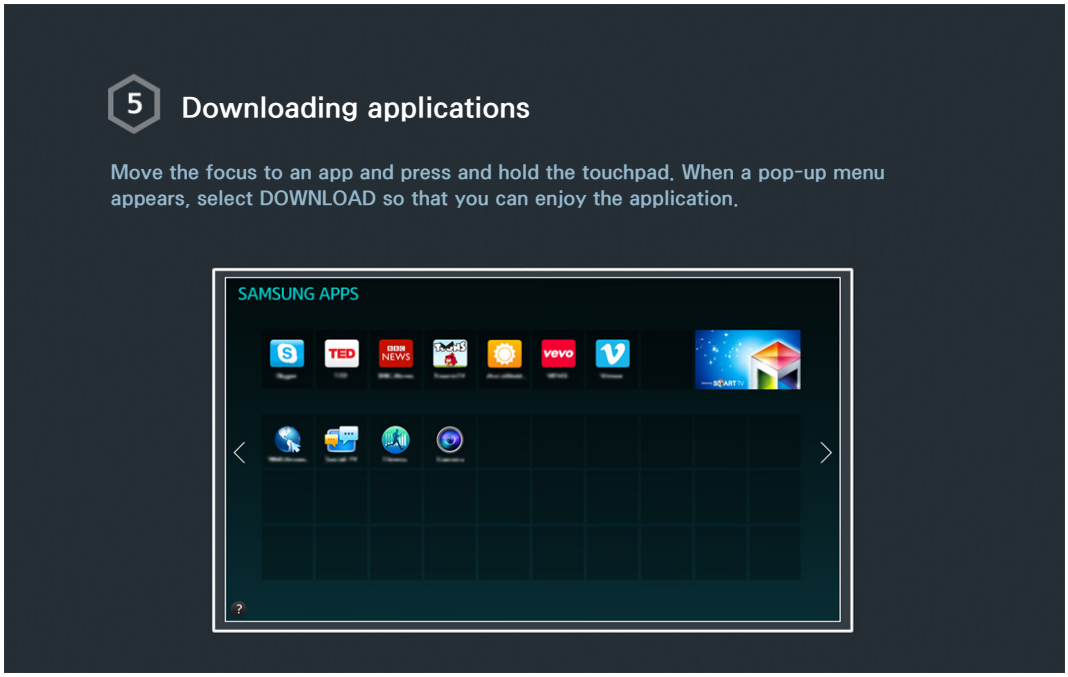


4 Using Smart Hub

Smart Hub is the heart of this Samsung Smart TV. It is divided into 5 panels which are shown at the top of the Smart Hub screen. You can access On TV, FILMS AND TV SHOWS, Games, MULTIMEDIA, and SAMSUNG APPS.

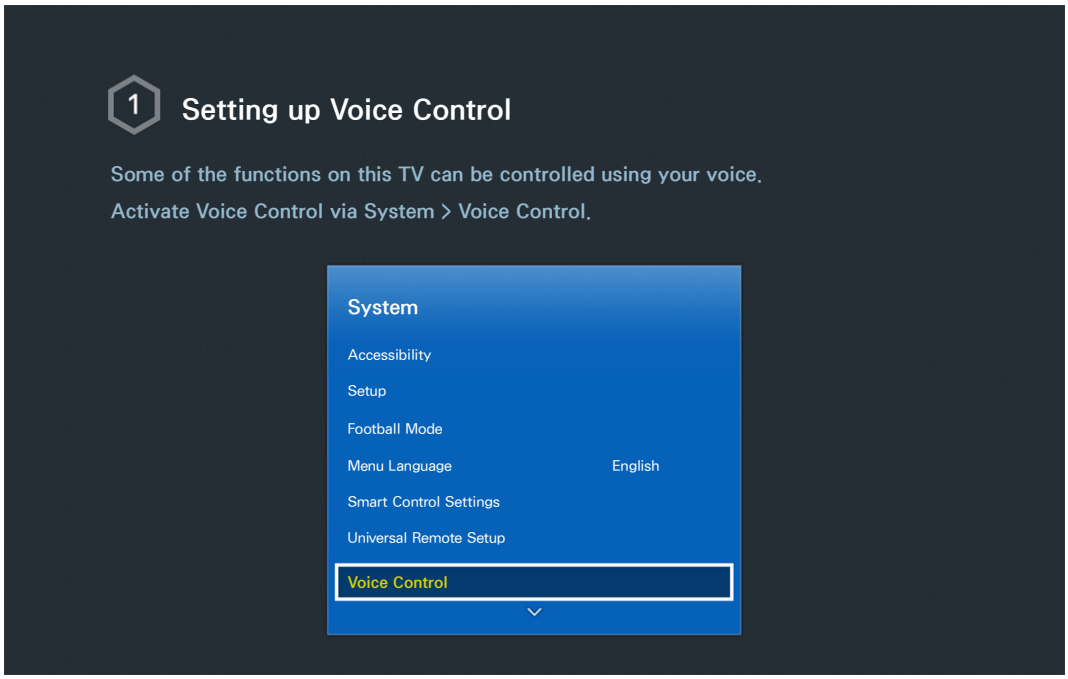
Go to Smart Hub > Apps and download applications from the Samsung Smart TV.

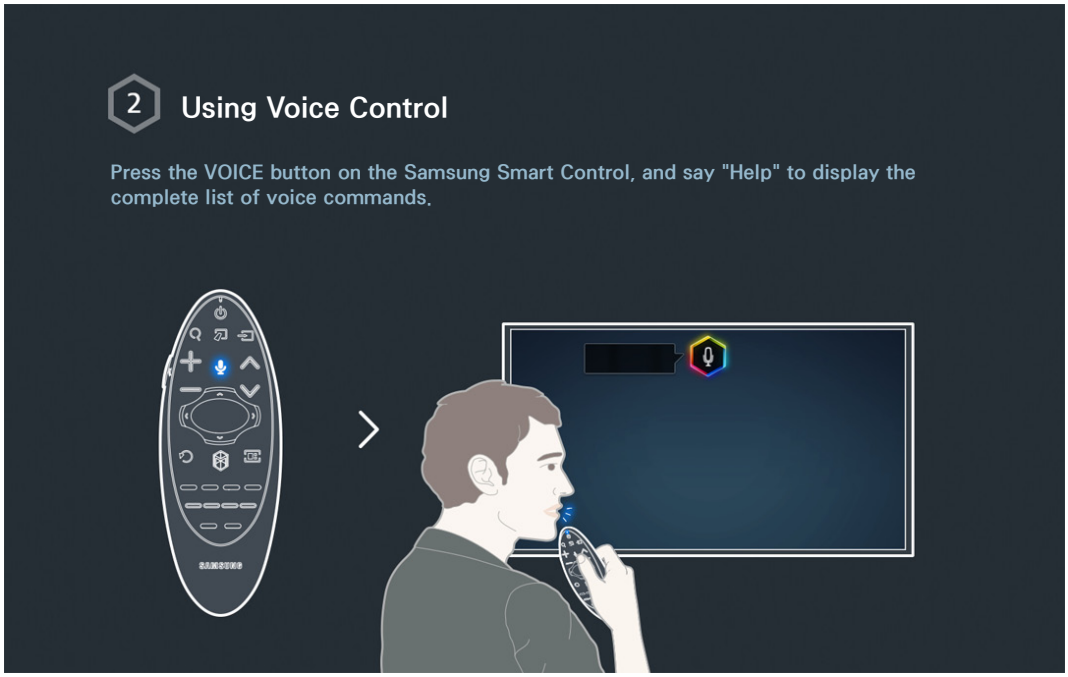



5
Downloading applications
Move the focus to an app and press and hold the touchpad. When a pop-up menu appears, select DOWNLOAD so that you can enjoy the application.
SAMSUNG APPS

For more information, refer to "Smart Hub".

Using Voice Control

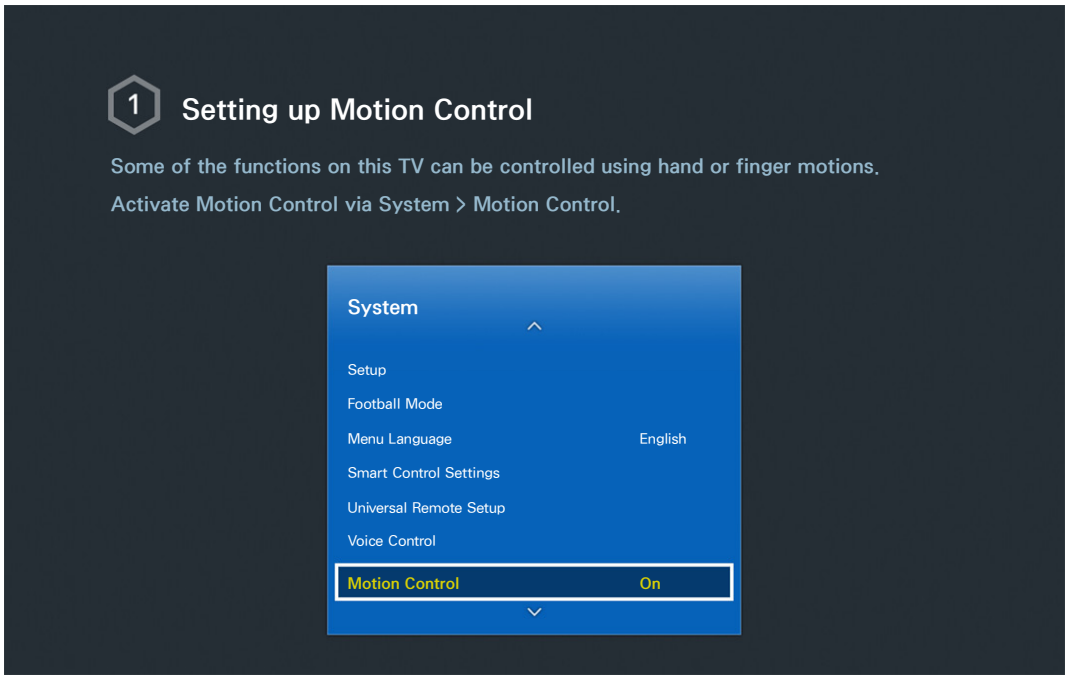


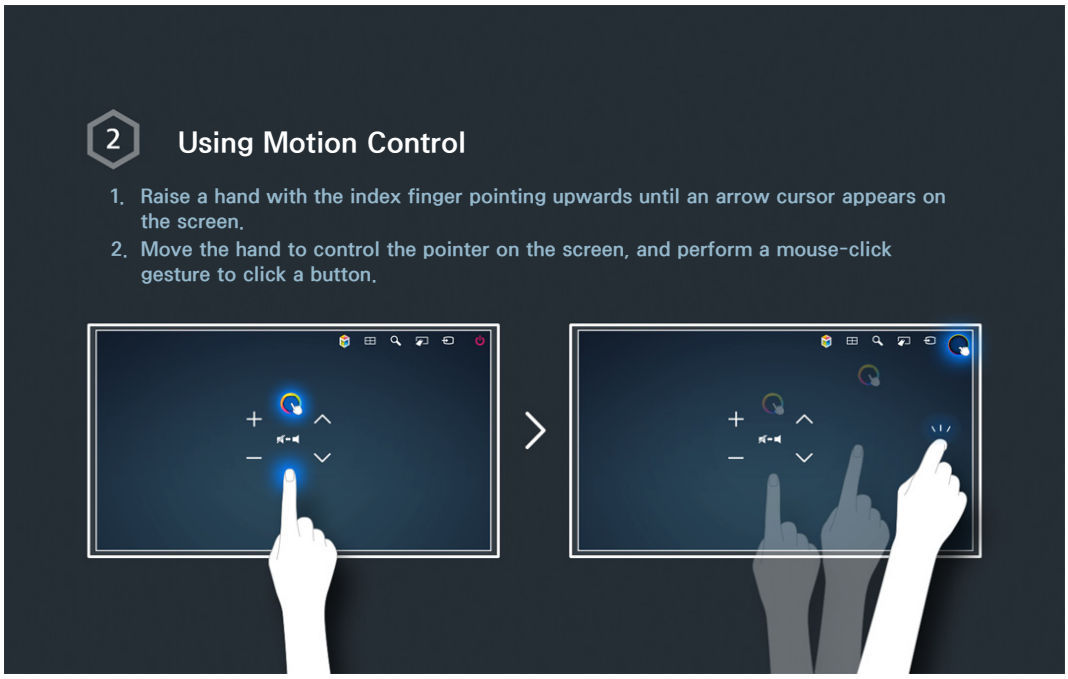

2
Using Voice Control
Press the VOICE button on the Samsung Smart Control, and say "Help" to display the complete list of voice commands.

For more information, refer to "TV Control using your Voice".

Using Motion Control

Availability depends on the specific model and area.




2
Using Motion Control
1. Raise a hand with the index finger pointing upwards until an arrow cursor appears on the screen.
2. Move the hand to control the pointer on the screen, and perform a mouse-click gesture to click a button.

A TV camera (sold separately) needs to be connected in order to use Motion Control.

For more information, refer to "TV Control using Motions".

Using the Samsung Smart Control

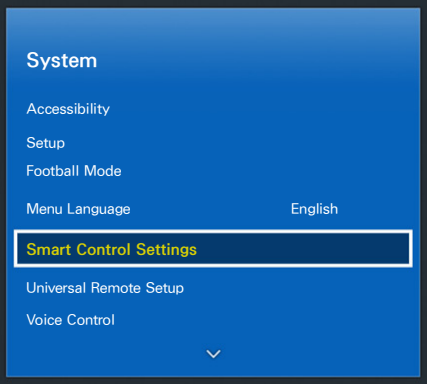
1 Samsung Smart Control

Use the Samsung Smart Control to access various functions via the SEARCH, KEYPAD, SOURCE, and VOICE buttons. In addition, you can move the pointer by pressing and holding the touchpad lightly.

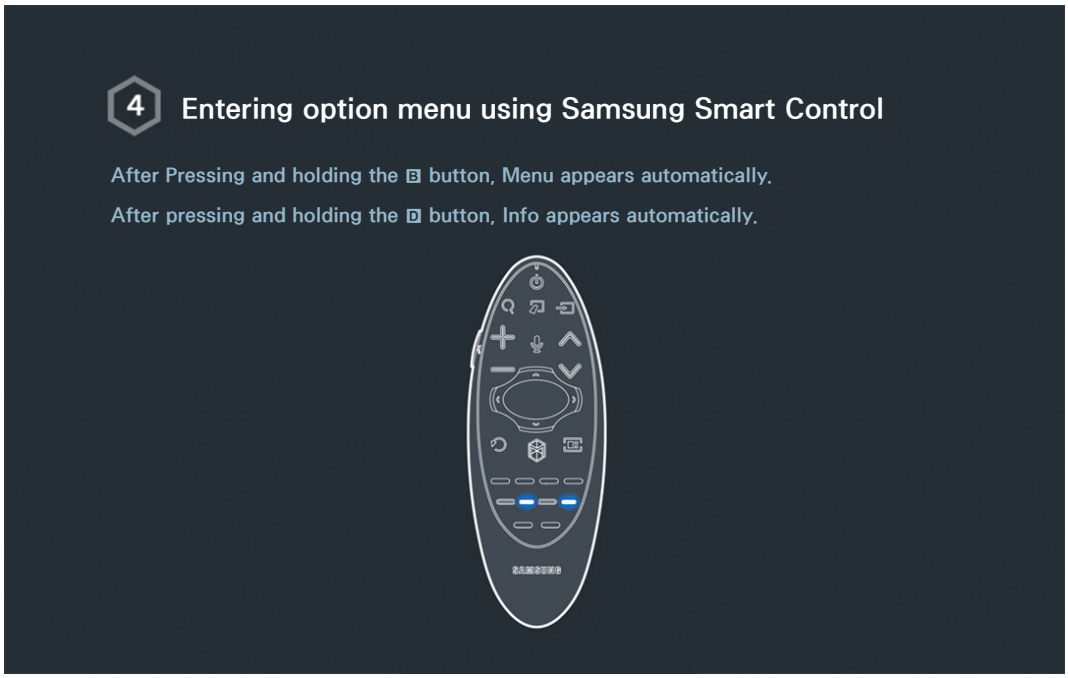


2 Setting the Samsung Smart Control

Set up the Samsung Smart Control based on your preferences. Setting include the touch sensitivity and onscreen remote size.
Set the Smart Control Settings via System > Smart Control Settings.



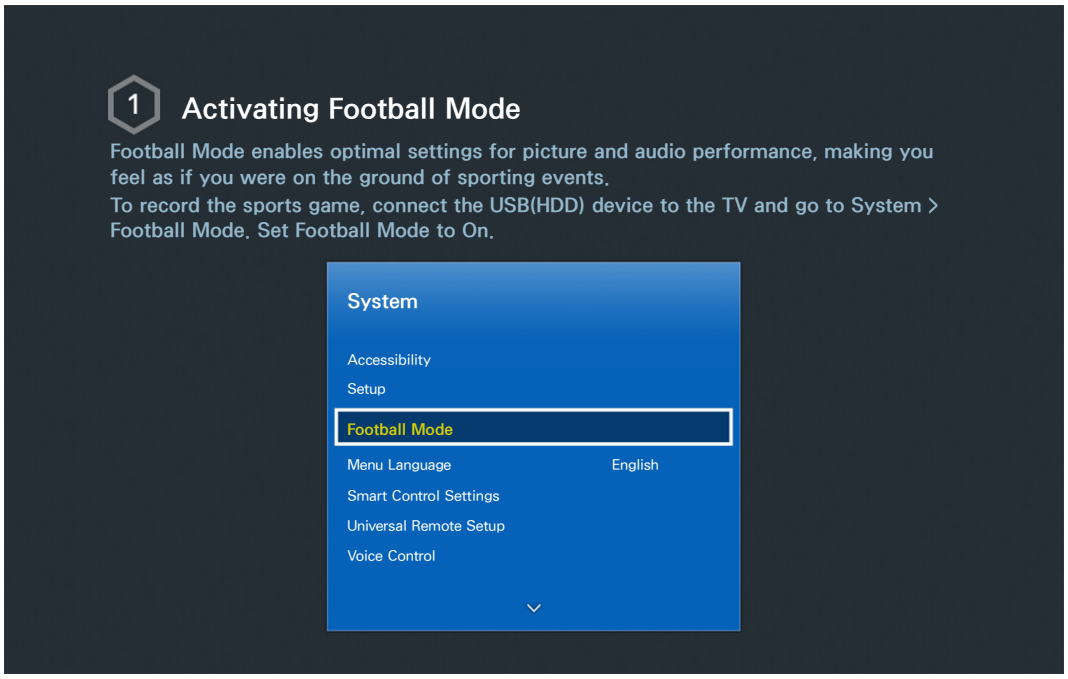

3
Using the Samsung Smart Control
Use the buttons to perform actions.
Move the Samsung Smart Control while touching the touchpad to move the focus.


4
Entering option menu using Samsung Smart Control
After Pressing and holding the B button, Menu appears automatically.
After pressing and holding the D button, Info appears automatically.

For more information, refer to "Using Samsung Smart Control".

Using the Football Mode

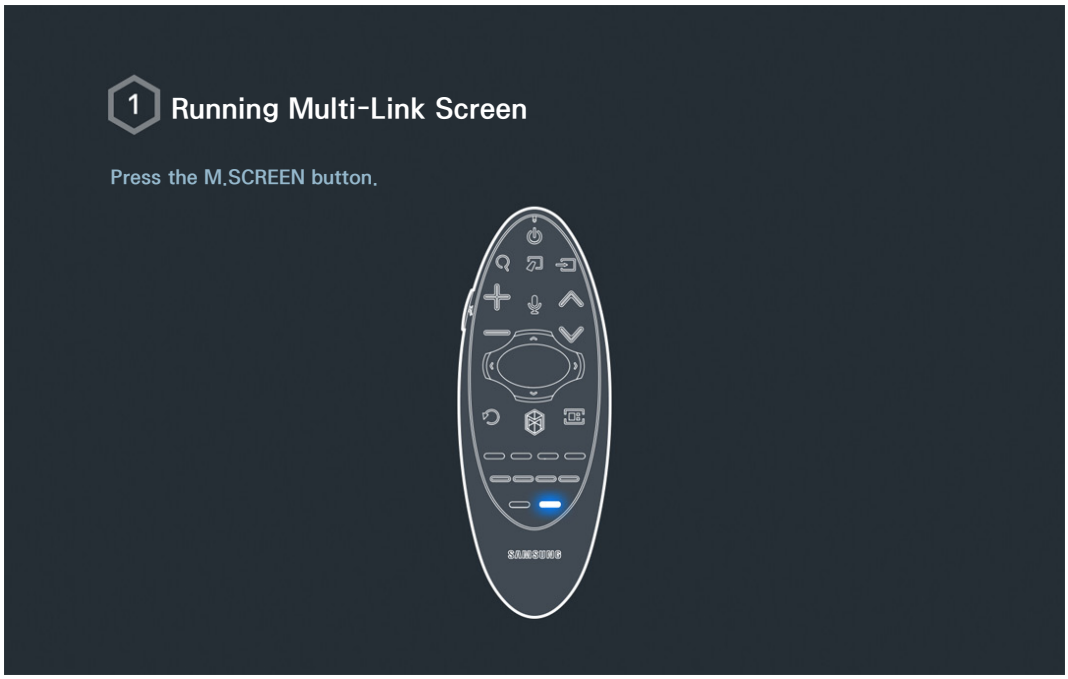
Availability depends on the specific model and area.

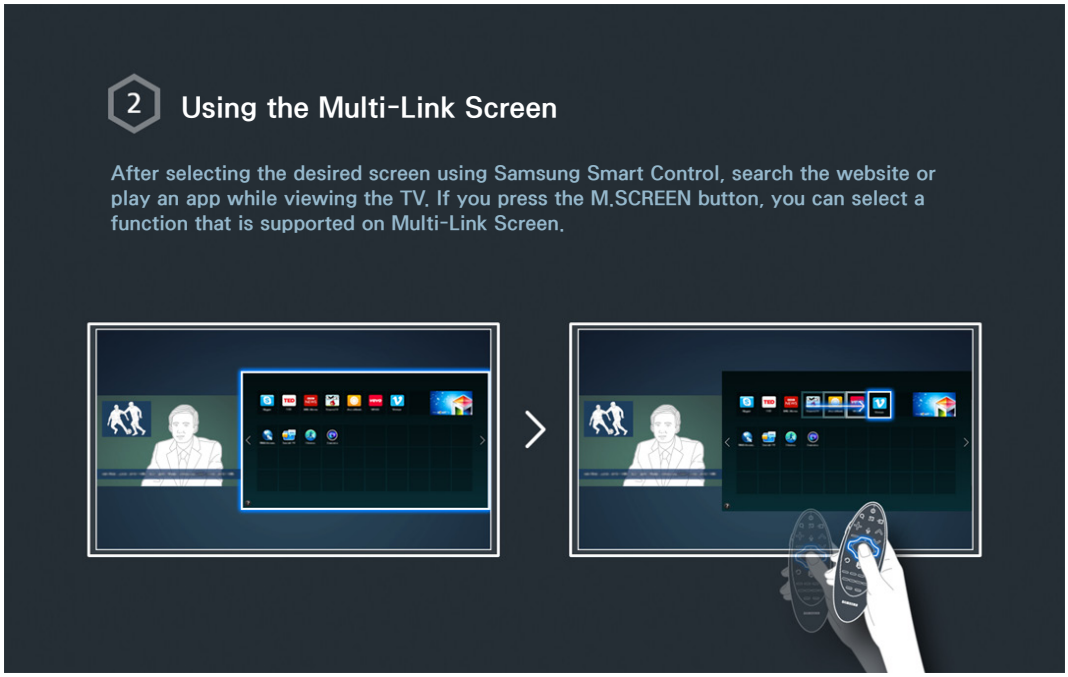

1
Activating Football Mode
Football Mode enables optimal settings for picture and audio performance, making you feel as if you were on the ground of sporting events.
To record the sports game, connect the USB(HDD) device to the TV and go to System > Football Mode. Set Football Mode to On.
System
Accessibility
Setup
Football Mode
Menu Language
English
Smart Control Settings
Universal Remote Setup
Voice Control


2
Using Football Mode
Press enter while watching a sports game and then press the desired button on the screen. Record, use social media, zoom, and save and view highlights.

For more information, refer to "Adding Realism to Sports".

Using the Multi-Link Screen



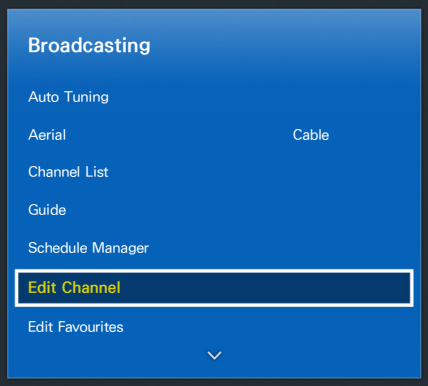

2 Using the Multi-Link Screen
After selecting the desired screen using Samsung Smart Control, search the website or play an app while viewing the TV. If you press the M.SCREEN button, you can select a function that is supported on Multi-Link Screen.

For more information, refer to "Multiple Functions on a Single Screen".

Editing channels

1 Running Editing Channel

Run Edit Channel and go to Broadcasting > Edit Channel.



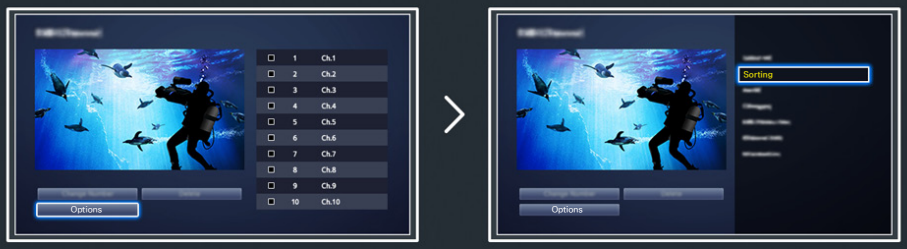
2 Changing the channel number or name

Select Change Number, and then change the channel's order in the list.
To remove channels from the list, select the channels using the Samsung Smart Control's touchpad or directional buttons and then delete them.



3 Sorting the channel list

1. Select a digital channel in the list and then select Options > Sorting.
2. Select a desired method for sorting the list.



Connecting - Aerial

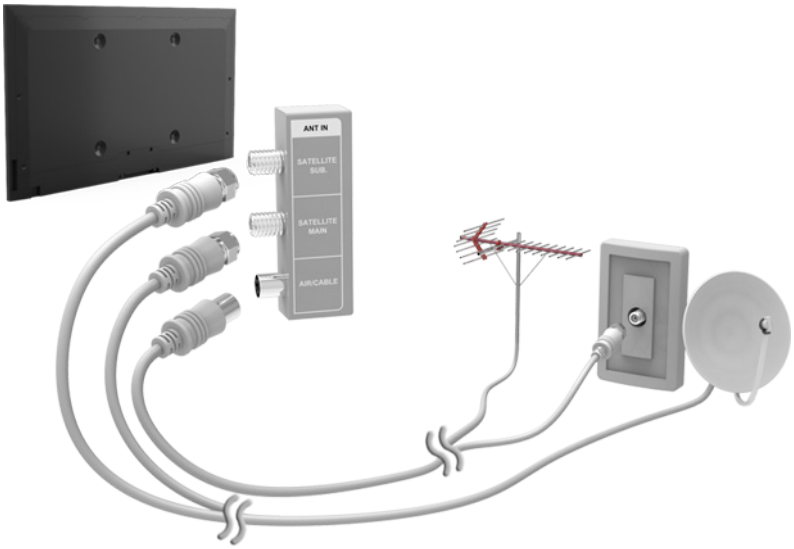
Availability depends on the specific model and area.

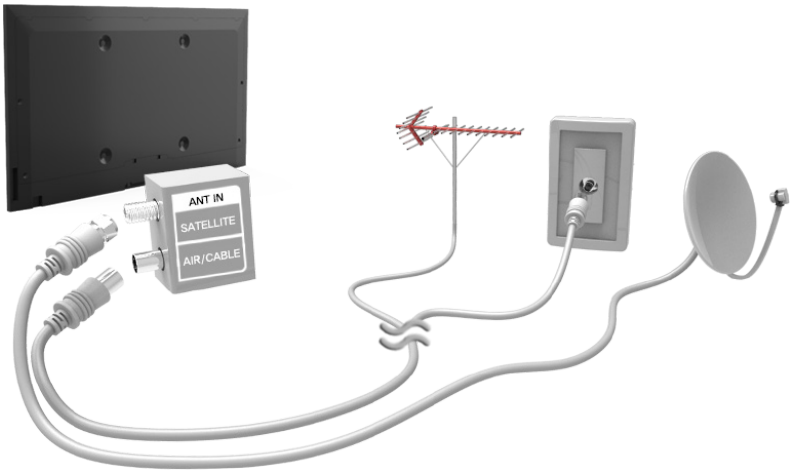
Before connecting any external devices and cables to the TV, first verify the model number. A sticker containing the model number is attached to the back of the TV. The connection method varies depending on the model.

An aerial must be connected to the TV in order to receive broadcast signals.

An aerial connection is not necessary when a cable box or satellite receiver is used.

Connect the correct aerial cable according to your viewing environment to the TV's aerial connector, as shown in the diagram.





It is best to connect the both connectors using a Multi-Switch or Diseqc. Switch, etc and to set **Aerial Connection Type** to **Dual**.

Video Device Connection

Availability depends on the specific model and area.

Your TV has a variety of connectors for video input from external devices such as cable boxes, satellite receivers, Blu-ray players, DVD players, camcorders, and gaming consoles. Below is a list of featured connectors shown in descending order of picture quality.

- HDMI
- Component
- External Input

Connect a video device to the TV via an HDMI connector for the best picture quality. If the device does not have an HDMI connector, try a component connector to get the next best picture quality.

The number of connectors and their names and locations may vary depending on the model.

Refer to the external device's operating manual when connecting it to the TV. The number of external device connectors and their names and locations may vary depending on the manufacturer.

Connecting - HDMI

Before connecting any external device or cable to the TV, first verify the TV's model number. A sticker containing the model number is attached to the back of the TV. The connection method varies depending on the model.

The following types of HDMI cables are recommended:

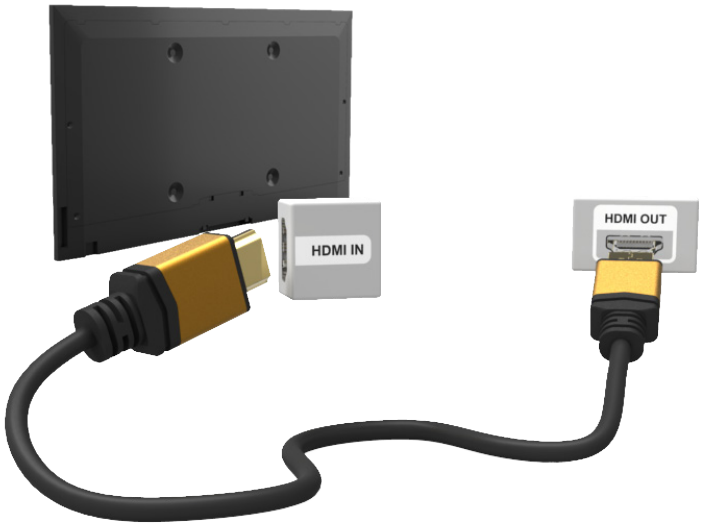
- High-Speed HDMI Cable
- High-Speed HDMI Cable with Ethernet

HDMI cables have certain requirements:

- Use an HDMI cable with a thickness of 14 mm or less.
- Using a non-certified HDMI cable may result in a blank screen or a connection error.
- Some HDMI cables and devices may not be compatible with the TV due to different HDMI specifications.
- This TV does not support HDMI Ethernet Channel. Ethernet is a LAN (Local Area Network) built with coaxial cables standardised by the IEEE.
- Try a cable shorter than 3M to get the next best UHD viewing quality.
- HDCP 2.2 can only use the HDMI(MHL) port. HDCP is short for 'High-bandwidth Digital Content Protection' and is for video copyright protection.

Refer to the diagram and connect the HDMI cable to the video device's HDMI output connector and the TV's HDMI input connector.

- The number of connectors and their names and locations may vary depending on the model.



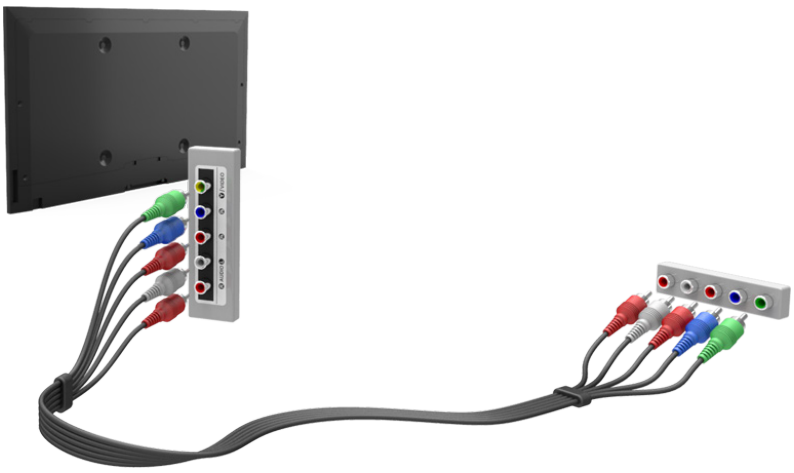
Once the connection has been made, you will be able to select the connected external device using the SOURCE button.

Connecting - Component

Before connecting any external devices and cables to the TV, first verify the model number of the TV you purchased. A sticker containing the model number is attached to the back of the TV. The connection method varies depending on the model.

Refer to the diagram and connect the Component cable to the TV's component input connectors and the device's component output connectors.

Make sure the cable colours match the connector colours.



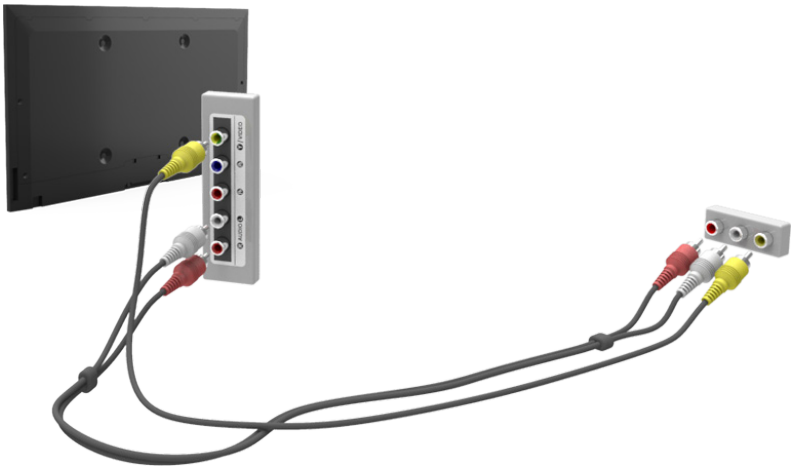
Once the connection has been made, you will be able to select the connected external device using the SOURCE button.

Connecting - External Input

Before connecting any external device or cable to the TV, first verify the TV's model number. A sticker containing the model number is attached to the back of the TV. The connection method varies depending on the model.

Refer to the diagram and connect the AV cable to the TV's AV input connectors and the device's AV output connectors.

If you are using the TV's AV input connectors, connect the video cable to the Y connector. Some models feature a video connector as well. In this case, connect the cable to the video connector.



Once the connection has been made, you will be able to select the connected external device using the SOURCE button.

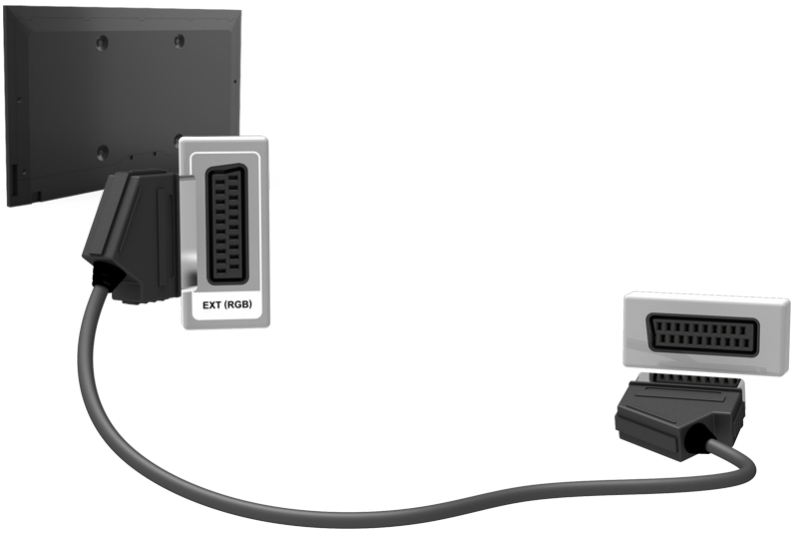
Connecting - SCART

Availability depends on the specific model and area.

Before connecting any external devices and cables to the TV, first verify the model number of the TV you purchased. A sticker containing the model number is attached to the back of the TV. The connection method varies depending on the model.

Connect the TV's SCART input connector to the device's SCART output connector using a SCART cable. An extra audio connection is not needed because SCART also carries audio.

SCART can only carry standard-definition video.



TV Audio through the External Speakers

Your TV has a variety of connectors for audio input from devices such as Blu-ray players and DVD players and for audio output to such devices as amplifiers. The connectors are listed below.

- ARC (Audio Return Channel)
- Digital Audio (Optical)

There are several issues to bear in mind when using audio input:

- For better audio quality, it is a good idea to use an AV receiver.
- The number of connectors and their names and locations may vary depending on the model.
- Refer to the external device's operating manual when connecting it to the TV. The number of external device connectors and their names and locations may vary depending on the manufacturer.

Connecting - HDMI (ARC)

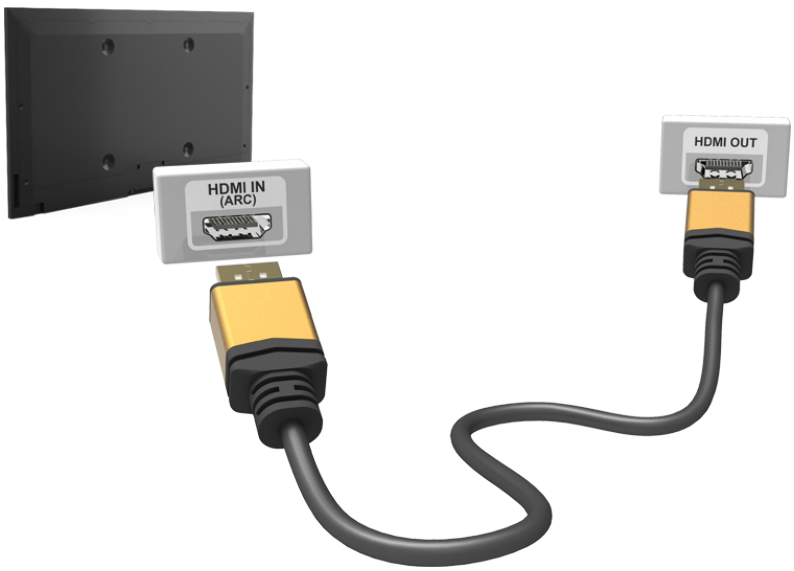
Some models may not support ARC.

Before connecting any external devices and cables to the TV, first verify the model number of the TV you purchased. A sticker showing the model number is attached to the back of the TV. The connection method varies depending on the model.

ARC (Audio Return Channel) enables digital sound output using just an HDMI cable. However, ARC is only available through the HDMI (ARC) port and only when the TV is connected to an ARC-enabled AV receiver.

The number of connectors and their names and locations may vary depending on the model.

Connect an HDMI cable to the TV's HDMI (ARC) connector and the device's HDMI output connector.



Connecting - Digital Audio (Optical)

Availability depends on the specific model and area.

Before connecting any external device or cable to the TV, first verify the TV's model number. A sticker showing the model number is attached to the back of the TV. The connection method varies depending on the model.

Connecting an AV receiver to the TV via a digital audio (optical) connector lets you listen to digital audio.

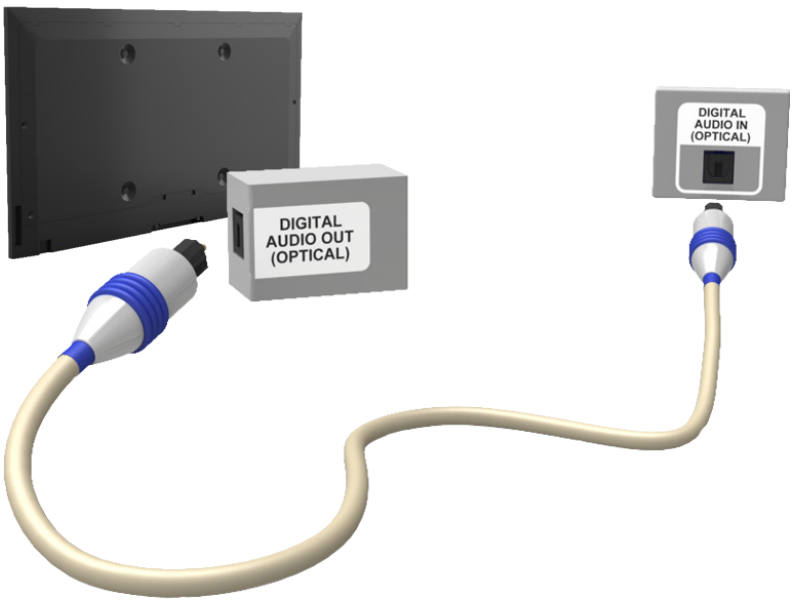
Connecting a device using an optical cable does not automatically turn off the TV speakers. To turn off the TV's speakers, set **TV Sound Output** (**Sound** > **Speaker Settings** > **TV Sound Output**) to something other than TV Speaker.

Adjust the audio device's volume using its remote control.

An unusual noise coming from the audio device while you are using it may indicate a problem with the audio device itself. If this occurs, ask for assistance from the audio device manufacturer.

Digital audio is only available with 5.1-channel broadcasts.

Refer to the diagram and connect the optical cable to the TV's digital audio output connector and the device's digital audio input connector.



Connecting - Headphone

Availability depends on the specific model and area.

Before connecting any external device or cable to the TV, first verify the TV's model number. A sticker containing the model number is attached to the back of the TV. The connection method varies depending on the model.

Refer to the diagram and connect the headphones to the headphone output connector. Only use headphones with a 3-conductor TRS type jack. The headphone volume and the TV volume are adjusted independently of each other. While the headphone is connected, the TV speakers are muted and certain **Sound** options are deactivated.

The connectors may not be supported depending on the model.



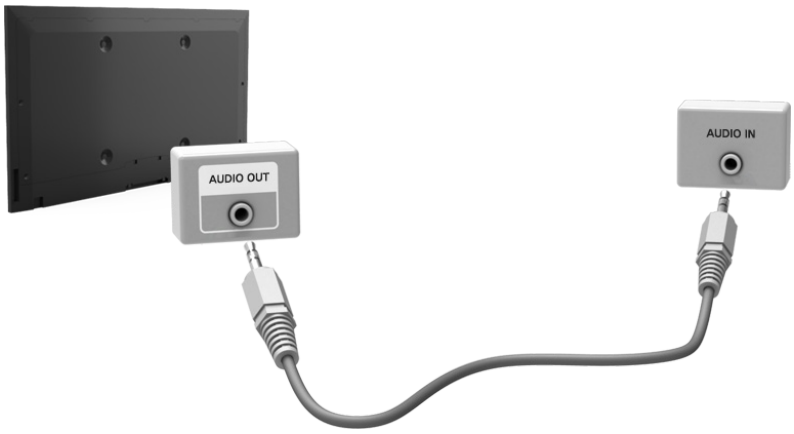
Connecting - Audio Output

Availability depends on the specific model and area.

Before connecting any external device or cable to the TV, first verify the TV's model number. A sticker containing the model number is attached to the back of the TV. The connection method varies depending on the model.

The connectors names and locations may vary depending on the model.

Refer to the diagram and connect the audio cable to the TV's audio output connector and the device's audio input connector.



Connecting to a Computer

You can directly connect a computer to the TV or to the network to view the computer screen or content on the TV. Connect the computer to the TV as follows.

- **Connecting via HDMI Port**

  You can connect the computer to the TV using the HDMI cable to display the computer screen on the TV.

- **Connecting with the HDMI (DVI) Port**

  You can connect a computer to the TV by connecting the computer's DVI port to the TV's HDMI port with the DVI to HDMI cable to display the computer screen on the TV.

- **Connecting via Samsung Link**

  Quickly access the photo, video and music files saved on a computer on which Samsung Link software is installed, even if you do not connect the TV directly to the computer.

- **Connecting via Home Network (DLNA)**

  Quickly access the photo, video and music files saved on a computer by connecting the TV and the computer to the same router or AP.

Connecting - HDMI Port

Before connecting any external device or cable to the TV, first verify the TV's model number. A sticker showing the model number is attached to the back of the TV. The connection method varies depending on the model.

For HDMI connection, one of the following HDMI cable types is recommended:

- High-Speed HDMI Cable
- High-Speed HDMI Cable with Ethernet

Use an HDMI cable with a thickness of 14 mm or less. Using a non-certified HDMI cable may result in a blank screen or a connection error.

Some HDMI cables and devices may not be compatible with the TV due to different HDMI specifications.

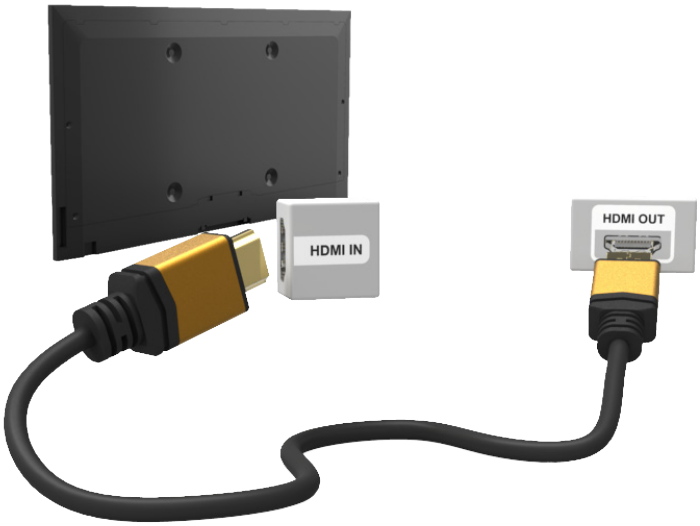
This TV does not support HDMI Ethernet Channel. Ethernet is a LAN (Local Area Network) built on coaxial cables standardised by the IEEE.

Some computers do not support HDMI interface, depending on its graphics adapter specifications. In this case, use a DVI-to-HDMI cable to connect the computer to the TV.

Try a cable shorter than 3M to get the next best UHD viewing quality.

HDCP 2.2 can only use the HDMI(MHL) port. HDCP is short for 'High-bandwidth Digital Content Protection' and is for video copyright protection.

Refer to the diagram and connect the HDMI cable to the external video device's HDMI output connector and the TV's HDMI input connector.



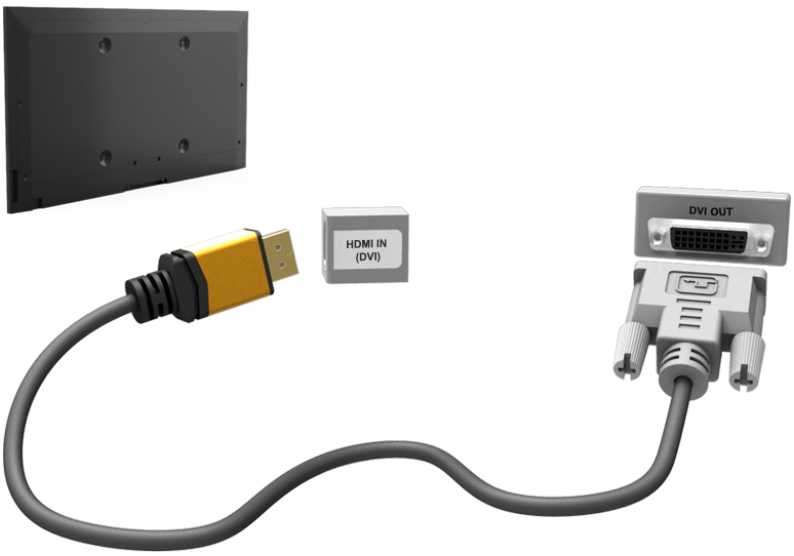
Once the connection has been made, you will be able to select the connected external device using the SOURCE button.

Connecting - HDMI (DVI) Port

If the graphics adapter of your computer does not support HDMI interface, connect the computer to the TV with the DVI (Digital Visual Interactive) to HDMI cable. However, DVI-to-HDMI connection is supported by the HDMI port for DVI only and does not support audio signal transmission. To listen to the computer sound, connect the external speaker to the computer's audio output connector.

For information on resolutions supported by the TV, refer to "Computer Connection Precautions".

Refer to the diagram and connect the DVI-to-HDMI cable to the TV's HDMI (DVI) port and the computer's DVI output port.



Once the connection has been made, you will be able to select the connected external device using the SOURCE button.

Connecting - Samsung Link

Quickly access photo, video and music files saved on a computer with Samsung Link software installed. Also, use Samsung Link to play and view the content of a computer that has been registered to Samsung Link under your Samsung account, even if the computer and the TV are not connected to the same router or AP.

1. Visit the Samsung content and service portal (http://link.samsung.com) on a computer and sign into your Samsung account.

   To install Samsung Link desktop software, you will need to first sign into your Samsung account. If you don't have a Samsung account, create one first.

2. Install Samsung Link desktop software. When the installation is complete, the computer will be registered to Samsung Link.
3. Specify the folder you wish to link to the TV. You can view and play photo, video and music files contained in the specified folder on the TV screen.

   For more information on using Samsung Link desktop software, refer to the software's Help section.

Connecting - Home Network (DLNA)

Quickly access and view/play photo, video and music files from a computer on the TV screen.

1. Connect the TV and the computer to the same router or AP. A home network will be configured once the two connections are established.

   Home Network (DLNA) enables content-sharing between the TV, computers and mobile devices connected to the same wired or wireless router.

2. From the computer, select [Control Panel] > [Network and Internet] > [Network and Sharing Centre] > [Change advanced sharing settings] and select [Choose media streaming options...] to activate media streaming.
3. From the list, set TV to [Allowed].
4. Launch Windows Media Player from the computer, select [Settings] > [Library Management] and then add the location where the photo, video and music files are saved to view/play the files on the TV screen.

   It will be possible to view/play on the screen files moved to Windows Media Player's default folder.

   As long as File Sharing is activated, unauthorised access may be allowed. Disable File Sharing if data access is not required.

Connecting with a Mobile Device

Connect mobile device such as a smartphone or tablet to the TV directly or indirectly over a shared network and display the mobile device screen or content on the TV screen. Connect the mobile device to the TV as follows.

- **Connecting with MHL-to-HDMI Cable**

  Connect the mobile device's USB port to the TV's HDMI port with the MHL-to-HDMI cable to view the mobile device screen on the TV.

- **Mobile Device Screen on TV (Screen Mirroring)**

  Wirelessly connect the TV to the mobile device with the mirroring function to view the mobile device's screen on the TV.

  This option is available only with mobile devices that support mirroring.

- **Connecting Mobile Devices without a Wireless Router (Wi-Fi Direct)**

  Wi-Fi Direct enables you to connect the TV to a mobile device without a router or AP. Quickly access and play photo, video and music files from a connected mobile device on the TV screen.

  This option is available only with mobile devices that support Wi-Fi Direct.

- **Connecting via Samsung Link**

  Samsung Link enables you to play photo, video and music files from a Samsung Link-enabled mobile device without having to manually connect the device to the TV.

- **Connecting via Home Network (DLNA)**

  View/play on the TV photo, video and music files from a mobile device connected to the same router or AP as the TV.

- **Connecting via Smart View 2.0**

  Install and run the Smart View 2.0 app on your mobile device, and connect it to the TV in the same network. However, Smart View 2.0 does not work when this function is in use.

  - When you are playing UHD-level video saved on a USB device
  - When viewing the digital channel with UHD-level resolution

Connecting - MHL-to-HDMI Cable

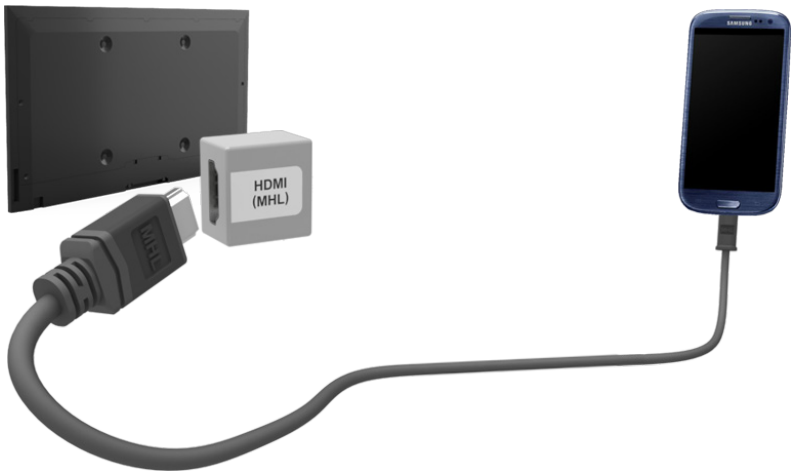
Before connecting any external device or cable to the TV, first verify the TV's model number. A sticker showing the model number is attached to the back of the TV. The connection method varies depending on the model.

Your TV supports MHL (Mobile High-definition Link) via an MHL cable. MHL enables viewing and playing video, image, and audio files from mobile devices on the TV. However, MHL is only available through the TV's HDMI (MHL) port and only when used in conjunction with an MHL-enabled mobile device.

For information on configuring MHL on your mobile device, refer to the device's User Manual.

- Connecting an MHL-to-HDMI cable automatically switches **Picture Size** to **Screen Fit**. This setting will not change automatically if you are using an HDMI adapter. In this case, change the setting manually in the menu.
- If you are using an HDMI cable, the TV recognises the signal as an HDMI signal and may respond differently than it would to an MHL-to-HDMI cable connection.
- HDCP 2.2 can only use the HDMI(MHL) port. HDCP is short for 'High-bandwidth Digital Content Protection' and is for video copyright protection.

Refer to the diagram and connect an MHL-to-HDMI cable to the TV's HDMI (MHL) port and the mobile device's USB port.



Once the connection has been made, you will be able to select the connected external device using the SOURCE button.

Mobile Device Screen on TV (Screen Mirroring)

Network > **Screen Mirroring** Try Now

Wirelessly connect a mirroring-enabled mobile device to the TV and play the video and audio files stored on the device on the TV. Mirroring refers to the function that plays the video and audio files located on a mobile device on a TV and on the mobile device simultaneously.

- To use the Screen Mirroring function, the mobile device must support a mirroring function such as AllShare Cast and Miracast. To check whether your mobile device supports the mirroring function, please visit the mobile device manufacturer's website.
- The video or audio may intermittently stop depending on network conditions.

Connecting via a mobile device

1. On the mobile device, run **Screen Mirroring**. The mobile device searches for available devices to connect to.
2. From the search result list, select TV. The TV displays a pop-up window.
3. In the pop-up window, select **Allow** to connect the mobile device.
   - All previously allowed mobile devices will automatically connect without needing approval.
   - If you select **Deny**, the device won't appear and can't be activated in this way. Navigate to **Network** > **Screen Mirroring** > **Device Manager** to allow the previously denied mobile device.

Not searching for the TV on mobile devices...

1. Navigate to **Network** > **Screen Mirroring** to run **Screen Mirroring**. Also, you can select **Screen Mirroring** on a list by pressing **SOURCE**.
2. Run mirroring on the mobile device. Display a list while automatically searching for mobile devices.
3. Select the TV and it connects automatically.
   - When the mobile devices cannot connect, try turning the TV off and on.

Allow/Reject the connection via mobile devices

- This is only available for watching when mobile devices allow the connection.

1. Navigate to **Network** > **Screen Mirroring** > **Device Manager** to activate Device Manager. This displays a list of required mobile devices connection.
2. You can allow access or deny connections with mobile devices.

Connecting Mobile Devices without a Wireless Router (Wi-Fi Direct)

Network > **Wi-Fi Direct** Try Now

Wi-Fi Direct lets you connect mobile devices directly to your TV using wireless technology. After connecting a device to the TV using Wi-Fi Direct, it will be possible to view/play video, photo, and music files from the device on the TV.

The mobile device must support Wi-Fi Direct. Make sure the mobile device you intend to use supports Wi-Fi Direct.

The video or audio may intermittently stop depending on network conditions.

1. Enable Wi-Fi Direct on the mobile device and then launch **Wi-Fi Direct**. The TV automatically scans for and displays a list of available devices. The TV's name also appears on the mobile device.
2. Select the device from the list to initiate a connection. If a connection request is made by the TV, a permission message appears on the mobile device and vice versa.
3. Allow the connection. This completes the connection process.

Connecting via Smart View 2.0

By installing and running the Smart View 2.0 app on the mobile device, you can view the device screen on the TV, or play the device's multimedia content (videos, photos, and music) on the TV.

However, Smart View 2.0 does not work when this function is in use.

- When you are playing UHD-level video saved on a USB device
- When viewing the digital channel with UHD-level resolution

Go to Google Play, and search for and install Smart View 2.0 on your mobile device. Smart View 2.0 is a cross-platform multi-screen app that enables you to load the TV screen on a mobile device, share multimedia contents between two devices, and control the TV remotely. For more information, refer to the Smart View 2.0 manual.

Connecting - Samsung Link

Samsung Link enables you to view/play photo, video and music files from a Samsung Link-enabled mobile device with ease. Also, use Samsung Link to play and view the content of a mobile device that has been registered to Samsung Link under your Samsung account, even if the mobile device and the TV are not connected to the same router or AP.

1. Run the Samsung Link app on the mobile device and then sign in with your Samsung account.

   To use Samsung Link, you have to sign in with a Samsung account. If you don't have a Samsung account, create one first.

2. Quickly access and play photo, video and music files from the mobile device running Samsung Link app under your Samsung account.

   For more information on using the Samsung Link app, refer to the Help section of the manual.

Connecting via Home Network (DLNA)

View/play photo, video and music files from a mobile device on the TV.

1. Connect both the TV and the mobile device to the same router or AP. A home network will be configured once the connections are established.

   Home Network (DLNA) enables content-sharing between the TV, computers and mobile devices connected to the same wired or wireless router.

2. Enable File Sharing on the mobile device. The mobile device's shared content can be viewed/played on the TV.

   As long as File Sharing is activated, unauthorised access may be allowed. Disable File Sharing if data access is not required.

Name of TV on Network

Network > **Device Name** Try Now

Choose or enter a TV name to be displayed on the network.

1. Select **Device Name** from the **Network** menu. A list will appear.
2. Choose a name from the list. Alternatively, select **User Input** to enter a name manually. You can view the specified TV name on the network.

Input Signal Selection

You can select a connected external device using the SOURCE button.

For example, to switch to a gaming console connected to the second HDMI connector, press SOURCE. From the **Source** list, select **HDMI2** to change the input signal to HDMI mode. Connector names may vary depending on the model.

The following options are available in the **Source** screen:

- TOOLS Button

  Select a port connected to an external device, and press and hold the Enter button. The following functions are available:

  Available options for each connector may vary.

  – **Edit Name**: Rename devices connected to the TV for easier identification of external sources. For example, you can designate a computer connected to the TV via an HDMI-DVI cable as **DVI PC**. Alternatively, simply designate a computer connected to the TV via an HDMI cable as **PC**. You can also designate an AV device connected to the TV via an HDMI-DVI cable as **DVI Devices**.

  – **Information**: View detailed information about the connected devices.

  – **Anynet+ (HDMI-CEC)**: Displays a list of Anynet+ (HDMI-CEC)-compliant devices that are connected to the TV.

  This option is only available with **Anynet+ (HDMI-CEC)** set to **On**.

  – **Device Format**: Formats USB recording devices connected to the TV.

  This option is only available when a USB device has been selected.

  – **Disconnect USB Device**: Used to safely remove a USB device connected to the TV.

  This option is only available when a USB device has been selected.

- **Universal remote setup**

  Select **Universal remote setup** on the screen to configure the universal remote function. By configuring a universal remote control, you can control cable boxes, Blu-ray players, home theatres, and other external devices using a single remote control.

  Availability depends on the specific model and area.

Inserting Batteries into Samsung Smart Control

To use Samsung Smart Control, first refer to the figure below and insert batteries into the unit.



1. Gently pull on the battery cover's notch and then remove the cover completely once it comes loose.
2. Insert 2 AA alkaline batteries, making sure to align the positive and negative polarities correctly.
3. Place the battery cover on the remote control and insert the top part of the cover into the remote control.
4. Press the catches on both sides of the battery cover in the order shown so that the cover is completely attached to the remote control.

When you see this alarm icon on the screen...

Following alarm icon indicates Samsung Smart Control's batteries are low. If the alarm icon pops up, replace the batteries. Samsung recommends using alkaline batteries for a longer operating life.



<Low Battery Alarm Icon>

Pairing Samsung Smart Control

To control the TV with Samsung Smart Control, you need to pair Samsung Smart Control to the TV via Bluetooth. Pair Samsung Smart Control to the TV.

Samsung Smart Control can only be paired to a single TV.

Point Samsung Smart Control at the remote control sensor of the TV and press the TV button to turn the TV on.

Remote control receiver's location may vary depending on the model.

Reconnecting Samsung Smart Control

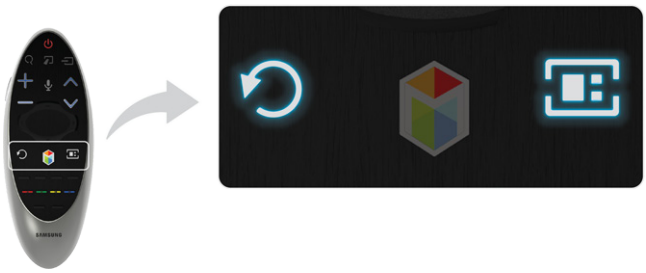
If the Samsung Smart Control stops operating or works abnormally, replace the batteries as this may be due to insufficient battery power.

If the problem persists, the Samsung Smart Control restore pairing with the TV.

1. Press both the RETURN button and the GUIDE button simultaneously for more than 3 seconds.

   You must place the Samsung Smart Control approximately 30cm ~ 40cm away from the TV and ensure it is pointing towards the remote control receiver.

2. Connection image is appeared on the screen. And then, Samsung Smart Control is connecting to TV automatically.



Using Samsung Smart Control

Samsung Smart Control makes it even easier and more convenient to use the TV. Pressing the **KEYPAD** button displays a virtual remote control that allows you to easily enter digits, control content, and activate functions on the screen.

We recommend using Samsung Smart Control at a distance of less than 6m. A usable distance may differ depending on the wireless environmental conditions.

Button Functions



Colours and shape may vary depending on the model.

Button	Description
TV	Turns the TV on/off.
SEARCH	Press this button to use the search window.
KEYPAD	With the virtual remote control on the screen, you can easily enter digits, control content, and use functions.
SOURCE	Changes the source.
+ ◢ −	Changes the volume.
VOICE	Starts voice recognition. When the microphone icon appears on the screen, say a voice command into the microphone. Say "Help" to learn about basic usage and voice commands. Say a voice command 10cm to 15cm from the microphone and at an appropriate volume.
(Mute) / AD	Turns the sound on/off.
∧ P ∨	Changes the channel.
∧, ∨, <, >	Moves the pointer or focus.
Touchpad	Place a finger on the touch pad and move the Samsung Smart Control. The pointer on the screen moves in the direction and as much as the Samsung Smart Control is moved. Press the touchpad to run the focused item.
◂◂, ▸, ▮▮, ▸▸	Controls for when viewing/playing a video, photo or music file or watching a recorded programme. You can also use the buttons to control content from an external device.
A, B, C, D	Use these colour buttons to access additional options specific to the feature in use.
RETURN / EXIT	Returns to the previous menu. Additionally, when you press this button while watching TV, you can return to the previous channel.
SMART HUB	Launches the Home Screen. From the Home Screen, you can search through favourite apps, channels or sources and quickly access previously run or frequently used functions. Also, when you move to the panel screen, you can use various service provided each service panel.
GUIDE / CH.LIST	Displays the digital channel broadcasting schedule.
INFO	Shows the information about the current digital broadcast programme or content.
⚽	Enable Football Mode for an optimal sports viewing experience.
M.SCREEN	You can split the TV screen and use various functions such as watching TV, surfing the web, watching video, and so on.

Additional Functions

Press and hold the following buttons for 1 second to use additional functions.

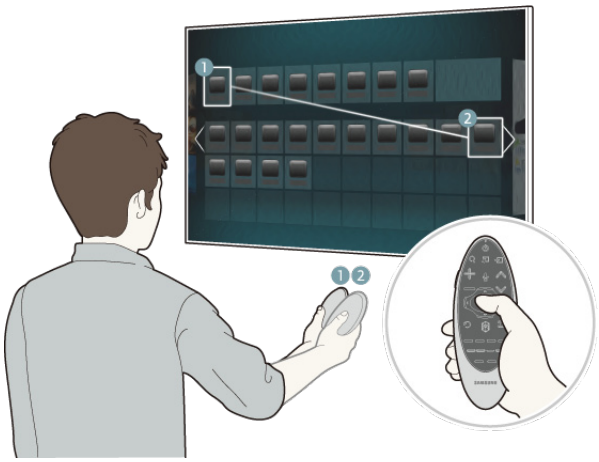
Button	Description
GUIDE / CH.LIST	Press and hold to launch the CH.LIST.
RETURN / EXIT	Press and hold this button to exit all currently running applications
/ AD	Press and hold this button to bring up the Accessibility Shortcuts panel. Select the options to turn them on or off.
B	Displays a menu on the screen.
C	Press and hold to record the broadcast. Availability depends on the specific model and area.
D	Press and hold to view information about the current digital channel or media file.

Using the TV by Moving the Samsung Smart Control

The Samsung Smart Control has a motion sensor (gyro sensor) that allows you to easily control the TV by holding and moving the Samsung Smart Control.

After placing a finger on the touchpad, a pointer appears on the screen. Hold and move the Samsung Smart Control. The pointer moves the same way the Samsung Smart Control is moved. It's also possible to scroll up and down on scrollable screens.

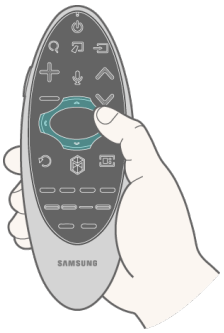
- If you remove the finger from touchpad, the screen pointer disappears.
- Navigate to **System** > **Smart Control Settings**, and select **Motion Sensitivity** to adjust the pointer speed.
- If the **Voice Guide** is set to On, the Samsung Smart Control's motion sensor(gyro sensor) does not work. To use the Samsung Smart Control's motion sensor, set the **Voice Guide** to **Off**.



Using the TV with the Touchpad

Navigate to the **Support** menu and select the **Smart Control Tutorial** option to learn how to use the touchpad, following the on screen instructions. Try Now

Moving the Focus/Pointer



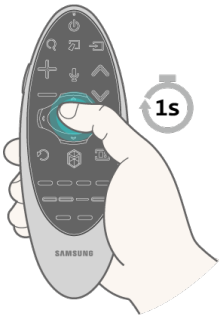
Press the directional buttons (up, down, left, and right) to move the pointer or focus in the direction.

Menu Access & Item Selection



Press the touchpad. This lets you access a TV menu or select an item.

Displaying the Context-sensitive Menu on Smart Hub



Press and hold on the touch pad from the Smart Hub screen. The Options menu available to the selected item appears.

The Options menu depends on the context.

Moving to the Smart Hub panel

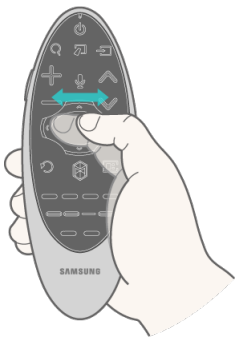


On the Smart Hub screen, drag left or right on the touchpad. This will move the Smart Hub panels left or right.

Scrolling on the Web Browser



<Scrolling up/down>



<Scrolling left/right>

Drag up/down or left/right on the touchpad in the web browser screen. This scrolls through the web screen.

Displaying the Remote Control on the Screen (virtual remote control)

Press the KEYPAD button to display the virtual remote control on the screen. You can easily enter digits, control content, and use TV buttons with the virtual remote control.

The virtual remote control buttons may vary depending on the TV's current status.



Button	Description
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 TTX/MIX 0 Pre-CH	• You can directly enter the channel number to switch to that channel. Select Pre-CH to return to the previous channel. • TTX/MIX: Alternately selects Teletext ON Double, Mix or OFF.
● ▶ ❚❚ ■ ◀◀ ▶▶ |◀◀ ▶▶|	Controls the item when you are playing a video, photo or music file or watching a recorded programme. You can also use the buttons to control the content on an external device.
TOOLS	Use frequently used functions while watching TV. In addition, you can use additional functions that may vary depending on the currently running function.
INFO	Shows the information about the current digital broadcast programme or content.
MENU	Displays the menu on the screen.
Speaker Settings	Select the speakers which you want to use to listen to the TV's sound. To set this option, external speakers must be connected to the TV.
PIP	Display the video from an external device or computer on the main screen and the TV as a picture-in-picture.
3D	Turn the 3D effect on or off. Availability depends on the specific model and area.
Multi-Link Screen	You can split the TV screen and use various functions such as watching TV, surfing the web, watching video, and so on.
AD/SUBT	Displays the Accessibility Shortcuts. Select the options to turn them on or off.

Button	Description
P.SIZE	Change the picture size.
SLEEP	This function automatically shuts off the TV after a preset period of time. Availability depends on the specific model and area.
DUAL	When you press the Dual I II button the first time, the current dual mode is displayed on the screen. Press the Dual I II button again to change the dual mode.
Web Browser	Launch the Web Browser.
e-Manual	Launch the e-Manual.
Sign In	Log in or out of your Samsung account.
	Move to the right / Move to the left: You can move the virtual remote control on the screen. Large size / Standard size: You can resize the virtual remote control on the screen. Alternatively, navigate to the System > Smart Control Settings menu and select and set the Onscreen Remote Size option. Touch Sensitivity: You can change the touchpad sensitivity. Alternatively, navigate to the System > Smart Control Settings menu and select and set the Touch Sensitivity option. Motion Sensitivity: Put a finger on the touchpad and move it to adjust the speed of the pointer on the screen. Navigate to System > Smart Control Settings, and select Motion Sensitivity to enable this option. Universal Remote Setup: Moves to the Universal Remote Setup screen. Cancel: Close the pop-up menu.

Controlling External Devices with the TV Remote (Universal Remote Setup)

System > Universal Remote Setup Try Now

Availability depends on the specific model and area.

The universal remote control feature lets you control cable boxes, Blu-ray players, home theatres, and other external devices connected to the TV using the TV's remote control. In order to use the TV's remote control as a universal remote, you must first connect the IR extender cable (included).

You can also use the Anynet+ (HDMI-CEC) function to operate some external Samsung devices with your TV's remote control without any additional setup. Refer to the "Using Anynet+ (HDMI-CEC)" section for more information.

Certain external devices connected to the TV may not support the universal remote feature.

Setting Up the Universal Remote Control

Before connecting any external devices and cables to the TV, first verify the model number of the purchased TV. A sticker containing the model number is attached to the back of the TV. The connection method varies depending on the model.

To use the TV remote as a universal remote, connect the IR extender cable (included) to the TV and position it within 10 cm of the external device's remote control receiver.

The colour and design of the IR extender cable may vary depending on the model.

When you connect the cable, you have to match the cable's colour and socket's colour.

Connect the IR extender cable to the TV's IR output connector as shown in the diagram and place the transmitter end within 10 cm of the external device's receiver pointing in the direction of the remote receiver. However, there must be no obstacles between the IR extender cable and the external device. The presence of obstacles interferes with the transmission of the remote control signal.

When you use an external device registered with the Universal Remote Control on the Samsung Smart Control, you can use the external device without connecting an IR extender cable. However, if you want to use an external device using **Motion Control** or **Voice Control**, be sure to connect an IR extender cable.



Controlling External Devices with the TV Remote

External Device Registration

1. Turn on the external device to set up the universal remote function for, and bring up the **Source** screen.
2. Select **Universal remote setup** from the top of the screen. This initiates the universal remote setup process.
3. Follow the on-screen instructions and register the external device.

Using the TV Remote

Registering an external device to the TV remote also registers the connector through which the device is connected. Accordingly, simply selecting the external device using the SOURCE button makes it possible to control the device using the TV's remote.

Universal Remote Features

1. Press SOURCE to go to the Source screeen.
2. Select Universal remote setup from the top of the screen. This initiates the universal remote setup process.
3. Select an external registered device on the Universal remote setup screen. The following options are available:

- **Use External Speakers**

  Listen to the audio from the external device through the connected home theater.

  This is available only on the set-top box or Blu-ray player.

- **Link Set-top Box**

  Listen to the audio from the set-top box through the home theater that is connected to the TV.

  This is available only on the home theater system.

- **Link Blu-ray Player**

  Listen to the audio from the Blu-ray player through the home theater that is connected to the TV.

  This is available only on the home theater system.

- **Source Setup**

  Change the TV's input source to your selected external device.

- **Sync with TV power**

  Configure the set-top box to turn off when the TV is turned off.

  This is available only on the set-top box.

- **Rename**

  Rename the registered external device (up to 15 characters long).

- **Delete**

  Remove the registered external device.

Controlling the TV with a Keyboard

System > Device Manager > Keyboard Settings Try Now

You can use a keyboard to control the TV.

Certain models do not support USB HID class keyboards.

Connecting a Keyboard

Connecting a USB Keyboard

Plug the keyboard cable into the TV's USB port. A connection message appears on the screen.

Connecting a Bluetooth Keyboard

Availability depends on the specific model and area.

1. Place the Bluetooth keyboard into the standby status.

   Refer to the keyboard manual for information on putting the keyboard into the standby status.

2. Select System > Device Manager > Keyboard Settings > Add Bluetooth Keyboard. The Add Bluetooth Keyboard screen will appear and automatically scan for available keyboards.

   If your keyboard was not detected, position the keyboard close to the TV and then select Refresh. This initiates a scan for available keyboards again.

3. Select the Bluetooth keyboard from the scan list and then select Pair and connect. A number appears on the screen.

4. Enter the number on the Bluetooth keyboard.

   Select Yes to change the keyboard's options or No to leave them as they are.

Using the Keyboard

Use the following remote features with the USB or Bluetooth keyboard connected to the TV.

- Arrow Keys (moving the focus), Windows Key (MENU Button), Menu List Key (TOOLS Button), Enter Key (Select/run item), ESC (RETURN Button), Number Keys (Number Buttons)
- F1 (A), F2 (B), F3 (C), F4 (D), F5 (), F6 (SOURCE Button), F7 (CH.LIST Button), F8 (MUTE Button), F9/F10 (Volume Buttons), F11 / F12 (Channel Buttons)
- Page Up/Page Down: Scroll web browser pages up/down.
- **Holding down the Enter key**: On the Smart Hub screen, navigate to an item and hold down the Enter key to display the Options menu.

  The Options menu depends on the context.

Changing Keyboards Try Now

Availability depends on the specific model and area.

Select **System** > **Device Manager** > **Keyboard Settings** > **Select Keyboard**. Designate which keyboard to use.

Only one keyboard can be used at a time.

Input Languages, Keyboard Type, and Switch Language Key Try Now

Select **System** > **Device Manager** > **Keyboard Settings** > **Keyboard Options**. The following options are available:

- **Keyboard Language**

  If the keyboard supports multiple languages, choose which language you want to use from the list.

- **Keyboard type**

  Specify the type of language selected under **Keyboard Language**.

  The **Keyboard type** list varies depending on which language was selected under **Keyboard Language**.

- **Switch Input Language**

  If the keyboard supports multiple languages, choose from the list which key to use to switch between languages.

Controlling the TV with a Mouse

System > Device Manager > Mouse Settings Try Now

This TV can be operated with ease using a mouse instead of a remote control.

Certain models do not support USB HID class mice.

Connecting a Mouse

Connecting a USB Mouse

Plug the mouse cable into the TV's USB port. A connection message appears on the screen.

Connecting a Bluetooth Mouse

Availability depends on the specific model and area.

1. Place the Bluetooth mouse in standby status.

   Refer to the mouse manual for information on putting the mouse in standby status.

2. Select System > Device Manager > Mouse Settings > Add Bluetooth Mouse. The Add Bluetooth Mouse screen will appear and automatically scan for available mice.
3. Select the Bluetooth mouse from the scanned list, and then select Pair and connect. This pairs the Bluetooth mouse with the TV.

Using the Mouse

Once a USB or Bluetooth mouse is connected to the TV, a pointer will appear on the TV's screen. You can use this pointer to control the TV as you would a computer.

- **Selecting and Running an Item**

  Left-click on the mouse.

- **Displaying the Volume, Mute, and Channel Buttons**

  Select the volume/channel icon on the screen while watching TV. Use the onscreen buttons to adjust the volume or switch the channel.

  Select the volume/channel icon again to hide the buttons.

- **Showing Tools Buttons**

  Right-clicking shows the Tools buttons on the screen so that you can easily use the TV functions.

  The Tools buttons may vary depending on the function.

- Displaying the Context-sensitive Menu on Smart Hub

  On the Smart Hub screen, navigate to an item, and hold down the left mouse button for 1 second. The Options menu available to the selected item appears.

  The Options menu depends on the context.

- **Scrolling the TV Menu or Screen**

  Move the mouse wheel up or down. This scrolls the TV menu or screen up/down.

- **Exiting the TV Menu or Feature**

  Click on the X button. This closes the menu.

  The X button appears when a mouse is being used. Left-clicking once while using a feature displays the X button.

Changing Mice Try Now

Select **System** > **Device Manager** > **Mouse Settings** > **Select Mouse**. Designate which mouse to use.

Only one mouse may be used at a time.

Changing Mouse Buttons and Pointer Speed Try Now

Select **System** > **Device Manager** > **Mouse Settings** > **Mouse Options**. The following options are available:

- **Primary Button**

  Choose which (left or right) button to use to select and run items.

- **Pointer Speed**

  Adjust the movement speed of the pointer that appears on the screen.

Entering Text Using QWERTY

A QWERTY keypad appears when you need to enter text (entering the network password, logging into your Samsung account, etc.), allowing you to enter text using your remote control.

Using Additional Functions

Select ⚙ on the QWERTY keyboard screen. The following options are available:

- **Recommend text**

  Enable/disable the Recommended Text feature. Enabling the **Recommend text** feature allows you to quickly enter text starting with the characters you typed in by displaying recommended words. To enter the word "Internet," for example, all you have to do is enter "In" and select the word "Internet" from the list of recommended words. The word is memorised so that you can enter the same text again more easily.

- **Reset recommended text data**

  Delete both the recommended words and the memorised words to clear the list.

- **Predict Next Letter**

  Enable/disable the Text Prediction feature. Enabling the Text Prediction feature eliminates the need to find and select individual character keys. To enter the word "Internet," for example, select "I". A predicted word will then appear next to the I key. Simply select the predicted word to enter "Internet".

  ✎ This feature is limited to words that have previously been added to the dictionary

- **Accented Character Preview**

  Enable/disable the Show Accented Letters feature. An accented letter is a letter such as Ё or Й with a diacritical mark above it. Enable the Show Accented Letters feature to enter these kinds of letters.

  ✎ This is available only with a language that uses diacritical letters.

Establishing a Wired Internet Connection

Connecting the TV to the Internet gives you access to online services and SMART features, and lets you update the TV's software quickly and easily through the Internet.

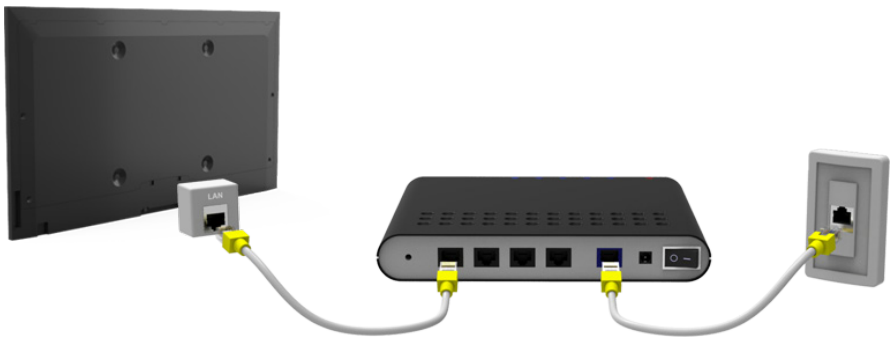
Connecting a LAN Cable

Use a LAN cable.

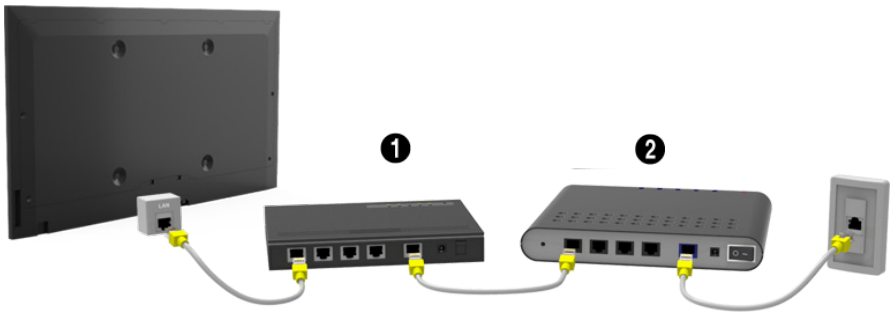
- The TV will not be able to connect to the Internet if the network speed is below 10Mbps.
- Use Cat 7 LAN cables to link your TV to the Internet Access Points.

There are three ways to connect the TV to the Internet. Refer to the diagrams and connect the LAN cable to the LAN connector on the back of the TV.

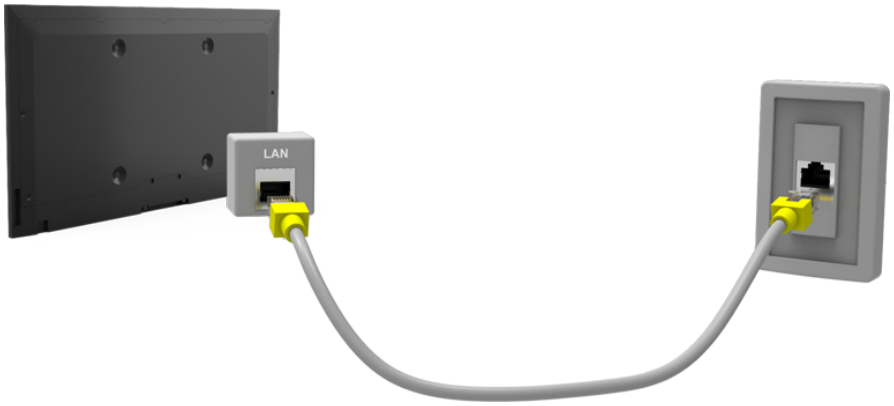
- External Modem



- ① IP Router + ② External Modem



- Wall-mounted LAN Outlet



Connecting to a Wired Internet Network Automatically

Network > **Network Settings** Try Now

Automatically connect to an available network.

1. Set the **Network Type** to **Wired**, and then select **Connect**.
2. The TV attempts to connect to an available network. Once successful, you will see a confirmation message. Select **OK**. If the attempt fails, try again, or connect manually.

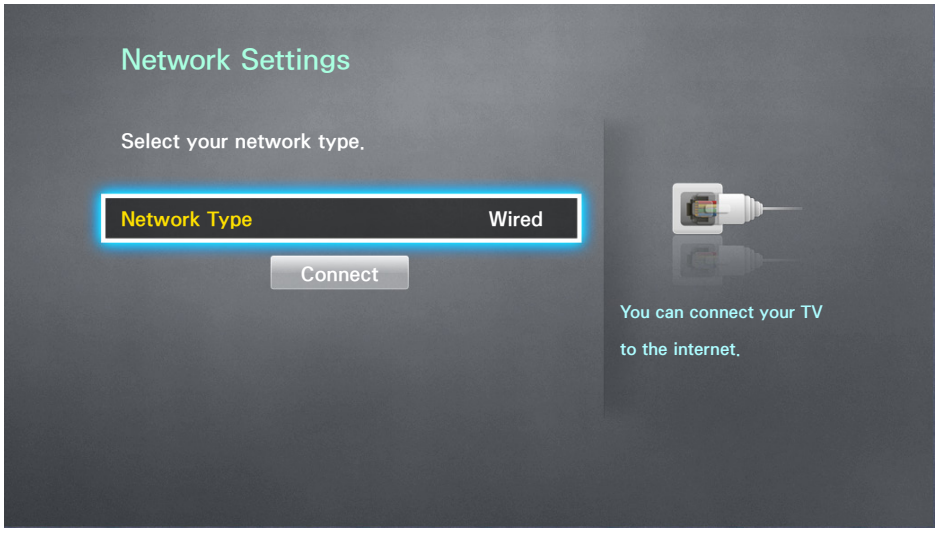
Connecting to a Wired Internet Network Manually

Network > **Network Settings**

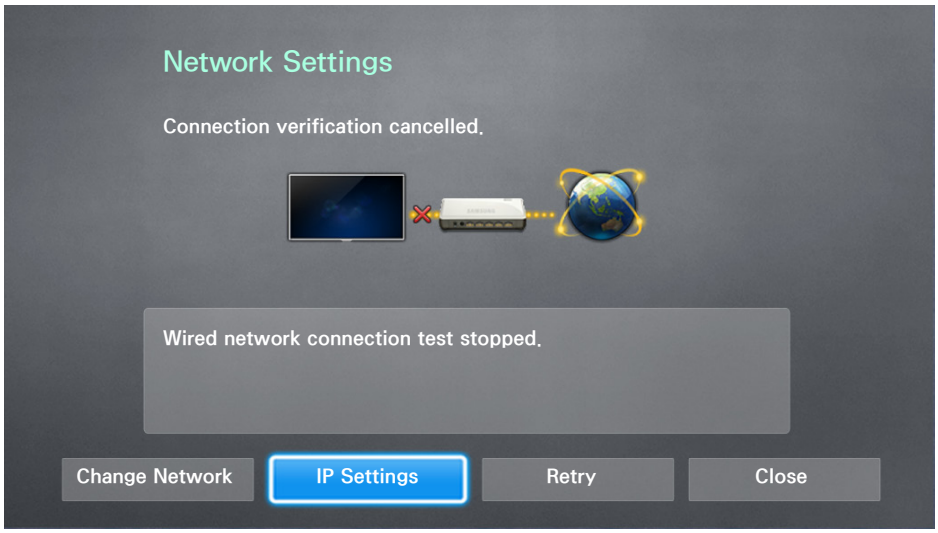
With networks that require a static IP address, you will need to enter the IP address, subnet mask, gateway, and DNS values manually to connect to the network. To get these values, contact your Internet Service Provider (ISP).

Refer to the "Dynamic versus Static IP Addresses" section for more information on dynamic IP and static IP addresses.

1. Set the **Network Type** to **Wired**, and then select **Connect**.



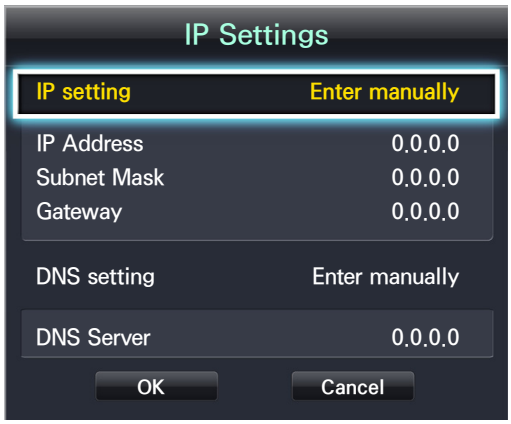
2. Select **Stop** when the TV attempts to connect to the network. Once the network connection has been interrupted, select **IP Settings**.



3. In the **IP Settings** screen, set the **IP setting** to **Enter manually**, enter the **IP Address**, **Subnet Mask**, **Gateway**, and **DNS Server** values, and then select **OK**.

   - Use one of the following methods to enter the numerical values.

     Set the numbers using the ▲ and ▼ buttons.
     Press **KEYPAD** button and enter the numbers directly.



4. The TV attempts to connect to the network again using the specified settings. A confirmation message appears once a connection is established. Select **OK**.

   The network connection speed may differ depending on the DNS server settings.

   For details on the DNS server settings, contact your Internet service provider (ISP).

Establishing a Wireless Internet Connection

Connecting the TV to the Internet gives you access to online services and SMART features, and lets you update the TV's software quickly and easily through the Internet.



Connecting to a Wireless Internet Network Automatically

Network > **Network Settings**

Connect the TV to the Internet via a wireless router. Make sure you have the wireless router's SSID (name) and security key settings before attempting to connect. The security key can be found on the wireless router's configuration screen.

1. On the **Network Settings** screen, set **Network Type** to **Wireless**. The TV automatically displays a list of available wireless networks.
2. Select a network (SSID). If the network you want doesn't appear in the list, select **Add Network**, and enter the network's SSID manually.
3. Enter the security key and select **Done**. If the selected network is not security-enabled, the TV attempts to connect right away.
4. A network connection will be attempted. Once a connection is established, the TV displays a confirmation message. Select **OK**. If the attempt fails, try again, or connect manually.

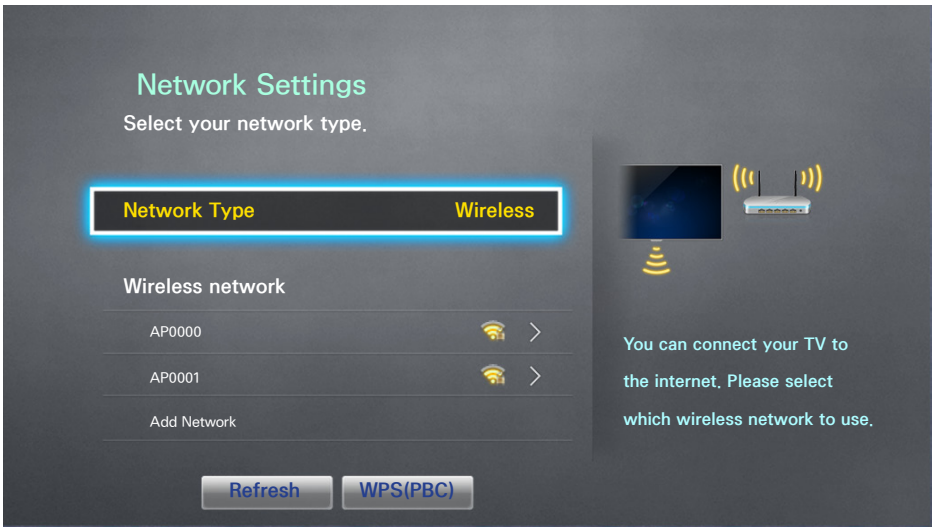
Connecting to a Wireless Internet Network Manually

Network > **Network Settings**

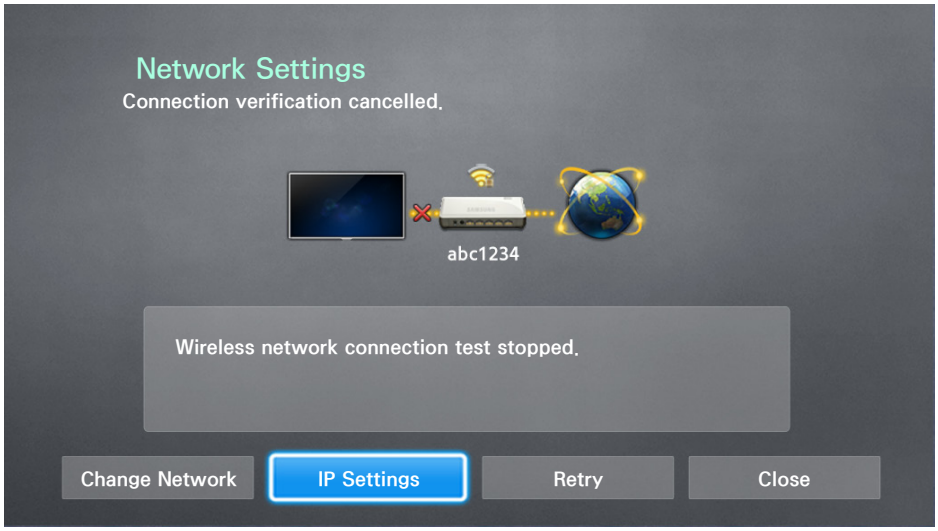
With networks that require a static IP address, you will need to enter the IP address, subnet mask, gateway and DNS values manually to connect to the network. To get the IP address, subnet mask, gateway and DNS values, contact your Internet Service Provider (ISP).

Refer to the "Dynamic versus Static IP Addresses" section for more information on dynamic IP and static IP addresses.

1. Setting the **Network Type** to **Wireless** automatically displays a list of available wireless networks.



2. Select the network (SSID) you want to connect to. If the wireless router doesn't appear in the list, select **Add Network**, and enter the network's SSID manually.
3. Enter the security key and select **OK**. If the selected network is not security-enabled, the TV attempts to connect right away.
4. Select **Stop** when the TV attempts to connect to the network. Once the network connection has been interrupted, select **IP Settings**.

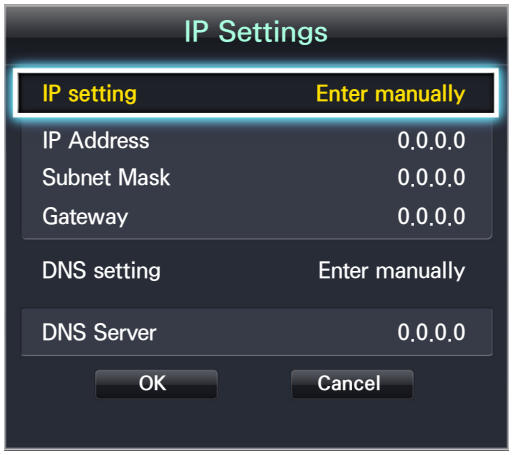


5. In the **IP Settings** screen, set the **IP setting** to **Enter manually**, enter the **IP Address**, **Subnet Mask**, **Gateway**, and **DNS Server** values, and then select **OK**.

   - Use one of the following methods to enter the numerical values.

     Set the numbers using the ▲ and ▼ buttons.

     Press **KEYPAD** button and enter the numbers directly.



6. The TV attempts to connect to the network again using the specified settings. A confirmation message appears once a connection is established. Select **OK**.

   The network connection speed may differ depending on the DNS server settings.

   For details on the DNS server settings, contact the Internet service provider (ISP).

Connecting to a Wireless Internet Network with WPS

Network > **Network Settings**

With wireless routers that support WPS (Wi-Fi Protected Setup) or PBC (Push Button Configuration), it's possible to press a button on the router to connect the TV to the Internet.

This functionality is not available with wireless routers that do not support WPS. Check to see if your wireless router supports WPS.

1. Setting the **Network Type** to **Wireless** automatically displays a list of available wireless networks.
2. Select **WPS(PBC)** and then press the WPS or PBC button located on the wireless router within two minutes.
3. The TV exchanges the network name (SSID) and security key automatically and then attempts to connect to the Internet. A confirmation message appears once a connection is established. Select **OK**.

Troubleshooting Internet Connectivity Issues

If you are not able to connect the TV to the Internet, read the information below.

Troubleshooting Wired Internet Connectivity Issues

No network cable found Try Now Try Now

Make sure the network cable is plugged in. If it is connected, make sure the router is turned on. If it is on, try turning it off and on again.

IP auto setting failed Try Now

Do the following or configure the **IP Settings** manually.

1. Ensure that the DHCP server is enabled on the router and reset the router.
2. If this does not work, contact your Internet Service Provider for more information.

Unable to connect to the network Try Now

Do the following:

1. Check all **IP Settings**.
2. Ensure that the DHCP server is enabled on the router. Then, unplug the router and plug it back in.
3. If this does not work, contact your Internet Service Provider for more information.

Connected to a local network, but not to the Internet Try Now

1. Make sure that the Internet LAN cable is connected to the router's external LAN port.
2. Check the DNS values in the **IP Settings**.
3. If the problem persists, contact your Internet Service Provider.

Network setup is complete, but unable to connect to the Internet Try Now

If the problem persists, contact your Internet Service Provider.

Troubleshooting Wireless Internet Connectivity Issues

Wireless network connection failed, Try Now Try Now

Selected wireless router not found. Go to **Network Settings** and select the correct router.

Unable to connect to a wireless router Try Now Try Now

Check the following:

1. Check if the router is turned on. If it is, turn it off and on again.
2. Enter the correct security key if required.

IP auto setting failed Try Now

Do the following or configure the **IP Settings** manually.

1. Make sure that the DHCP server is enabled on the router. Then, unplug the router and plug it back in.
2. Enter the correct security key if required.
3. If this does not work, contact your Internet Service Provider for more information.

Unable to connect to the network Try Now

Do the following:

1. Check all **IP Settings**.
2. Enter the correct security key if required.
3. If this does not work, contact your Internet Service Provider for more information.

Connected to a local network, but not to the Internet Try Now

1. Make sure that the Internet LAN cable is connected to the router's external LAN port.
2. Check the DNS values in the **IP Settings**.
3. If the problem persists, contact your Internet Service Provider.

Network setup is complete, but unable to connect to the Internet Try Now

If the problem persists, contact your Internet Service Provider.

Mobile Network

Availability depends on the specific model and area.

While connecting to the mobile network, some functions might be unavailable.

Refer to the diagram and insert the Mobile Dongle (sold separately) into the USB port. The Mobile Dongle must be connected to the TV in order to connect to the mobile network. However, the Mobile Dongle is sold separately and is not available from Samsung.

If you have any problems using online services, please contact your Internet service provider.

Auto Ticker is not available when you set up mobile network.

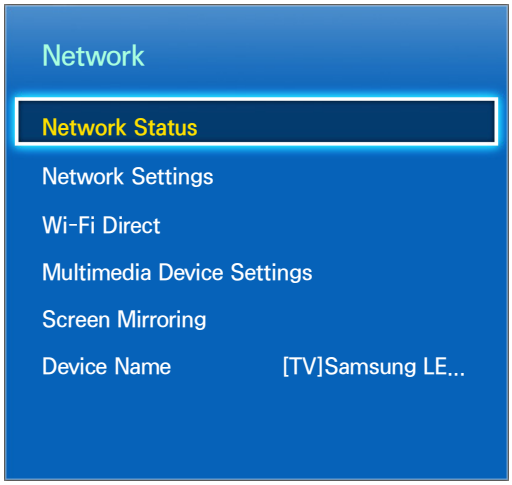


Supported Telecom and Model Name

- Vodacom (Model No: K4605)
- MTN (Model No: E3131S, E3251)
- Safaricom (Model No: E303)

Checking the Internet Connection Status

Network > Network Status Try Now



Actual menu screen may differ depending on the TV model.

View the current network and Internet status.

Multiple Functions on a Single Screen

This allows you to search the Web, use apps, and much more while watching TV.

- Before using **Multi-Link Screen**, make sure the TV is connected to the Internet. Using **Multi-Link Screen** requires an Internet connection.
- Before using Smart Hub with **Multi-Link Screen**, go to the **On TV Settings** (**Smart Hub** > **On TV Settings** > **Set Up Service Provider**) and finish configuring Smart Hub.
- If the Multi-Link Screen launches while the TV did not configure the Smart Hub, a pop-up window appears. To use the Multi-Link Screen, you need to configure the Smart Hub first. On the pop-up window, select the **Set Up Smart Hub** to finish configuring the Smart Hub.

Launching Multi-Link Screen

Picture > **Open Multi-Link Screen**

From the **Picture** menu, select **Open Multi-Link Screen**.

- Press **M.SCREEN** on the Samsung Smart Control to launch **Multi-Link Screen**.

Using Multi-Link Screen

- UHD and FHD contents and channels cannot be viewed simultaneously.
- Launching **Smart Hub** while using **Multi-Link Screen** automatically terminates **Multi-Link Screen**.
- Certain TV features and apps may not be supported by **Multi-Link Screen**. If this is the case, exit from **Multi-Link Screen** and then use the feature.

Selecting a Feature

1. Press the Samsung Smart Control's **M.SCREEN** button while **Multi-Link Screen** is running. The Options menu appears.
2. Select a feature from the Options menu. This initialises the selected feature.

   - Features supported by **Multi-Link Screen** vary depending on the country.

Changing the Channel/Volume

1. Place the pointer or focus over the screen for which you want to change the channel or adjust the volume.
2. Use the channel buttons to change the channel or the volume buttons to adjust the volume. This changes the selected screen's channel/volume.

Pairing Bluetooth Headphones

Pairing Bluetooth Headphones to the TV makes it possible to hear the audio from a different screen through the headphones.

- Compatibility issues may arise. The mobile phone may not work.
- Depending on the device, there may be audio and video sync problems.
- The devices may disconnect depending on the distance between the TV and headphones.
- You can't use Bluetooth headphones, **SoundShare Settings** and **Surround** features simultaneously.
- When Multi-Link Screen is terminated, the Bluetooth headphone is disconnected.

1. Put the Bluetooth Headphones in the pairing-ready status.
   - Refer to the headphones' manual for instructions on enabling the pairing-ready status.
2. Press the Samsung Smart Control's **M.SCREEN** button while **Multi-Link Screen** is running. The Options menu appears.
3. Select **Settings** from the Options menu.
4. Select pair **Connect Bluetooth Headphones** from the **Settings** menu. The TV will display the Bluetoothpairing window and then automatically scan for available headphones.
   - If the scan fails to locate your headphones, try placing the headphones closer to the TV and then select **Refresh**. This will scan for the headphones again.
5. Select your headphones from the list of scanned headphones and then select **Pair and connect**. This pairs the headphones to the TV.
   - The Bluetooth headphone with a history of pairing is easily reconnected to the TV.
   - If there arise the headphone compatibility issues, clear pairing device history from the Bluetooth headphone and search again to reconnect.

Selecting the Audio-Source Screen

It's possible to listen to audio from one screen through the speakers and audio from a different screen through the Bluetooth headphones.

1. Press the Samsung Smart Control's **M.SCREEN** button while **Multi-Link Screen** is running. The Options menu appears.
2. Select **Settings** from the Options.
3. Select **Speaker Settings** from the **Settings** menu.
4. Select a screen for **TV Speaker** and another for **Bluetooth headphone**.
   - The same screen cannot be selected for both **TV Speaker** and **Bluetooth headphone**.
   - **Auto** is only supported by the TV speaker. Bluetooth headphones are not supported.

Smart Hub

Smart Hub > Open Smart Hub Try Now

With Smart Hub, you can surf the web, download apps, and stay in touch with family and friends through social networking services. In addition, you can use photo, video, and music files stored on external storage devices.

- Some Smart Hub services are paid services. To purchase such a service, the service provider account or Samsung Apps TV account (Samsung account) is required.
- Make sure the TV is connected to the Internet. The TV must be connected to the Internet in order to use Smart Hub.
- Some features of Smart Hub require an Internet connection and may not be available depending on the service provider, language, or region.
- To use Smart Hub, you must agree to the end user agreement and privacy policy. Otherwise, you will not be able to access the features and services related to them. You can view the entire content of the **Terms & Policy** by navigating to **Smart Hub** > **Terms & Policy**. If you don't wish to use Smart Hub anymore, you can withdraw the agreement.
- Smart Hub service outages can be caused by disruptions in your Internet service.

Testing Smart Hub connections

Support > Self Diagnosis > Smart Hub Connection Test

If Smart Hub is not functioning, navigate to **Support** > **Self Diagnosis** > **Smart Hub Connection Test**. Diagnose the problem by checking the internet connection, your ISP, the Samsung server and the Samsung Apps panels.

- After completing the test, if Smart Hub continues to have problems, contact your Internet Service Provider or a Samsung Contact Centre.

Opening the Home Screen

Press the button while watching TV to open the **Home Screen**.

On the **Home Screen**, search through favourite apps, channels or sources and access previously run or frequently used functions.

> You can configure the TV to automatically open the **Home Screen** when it turns on. Navigate to **Smart Hub** > **Home Screen Settings**, and set **Auto Start** to **On**.

Setting your favourite item

1. Press the button to open the **Home Screen**, and move to a desired item.
2. Press and hold the touchpad. The Options menu appears.
3. In the Options menu, select **Add to Favourites** to add the selected item to the favourite list, which will move top of the list.

> To delete a favourite item, select it and tap and hold the touchpad to display the context menu. Then, select **Remove from Favourites**.

Deleting browsing history

1. Press the button while watching TV to open the **Home Screen**, and select **Clear All**. You will be asked to confirm your selection.
2. Select **OK** on the screen. Your browsing history is deleted completely.

> However, the Favorites list items will not be deleted.

> You can also delete your browsing history by selecting **Clear All** in the **Smart Hub** > **Home Screen Settings** menu.

Moving to the Panel Screen

Press the button to open the **Home Screen**, and select the Panel icon. On the Panel screen for each service panel, the following are available:

Usability depends on the specific model and local region.

- **Games**

  Navigate to **Smart Hub** > **Games** to confirm the optimising game apps for Smart TV and detailed information on Smart Hub. This makes it easier to download and play games. In addition, you can manage games that you have downloaded or purchased with your Samsung Account.

- **SAMSUNG APPS**

  You can enjoy variety of free and paid news, sports, weather, and gaming apps on the TV as you would on a smart phone or tablet.

- **On TV**

  You can view the current programmes on TV at a glance and view the Programme Recommendations by Channel and Programme Recommendations by Time from the programmes that will be broadcasted. In addition, you can watch recorded videos.

- **FILMS AND TV SHOWS**

  You can directly purchase and view a movie or TV programme through the app provided by Smart Hub without connecting an external video source such as a DVD or Blu-ray player.

- **MULTIMEDIA**

  You can play back photo, video, and music files from an external storage device or watch recorded videos.

Using the Smart Hub Tutorial

Support > **Smart Hub Tutorial**

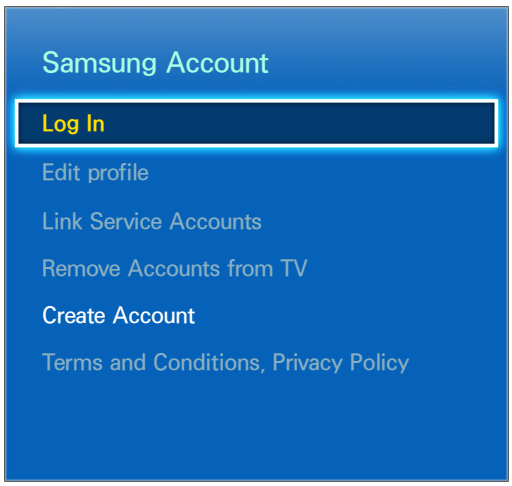
From the **Support** menu, select **Smart Hub Tutorial**. This will familiarise yourself with the basics of Smart Hub and panels.

Resetting Smart Hub

Smart Hub > **Reset Smart Hub** Try Now

Reset all saved information relating to Samsung accounts and linked service accounts, as well as Smart Hub service agreements and applications.

Using Smart Hub with Samsung Account



Actual menu screen may differ depending on the TV model.

Creating a Samsung Account

Smart Hub > Samsung Account Try Now

Some Smart Hub services are paid services. To purchase such a service, the service provider account or Samsung Apps TV account (Samsung account) is required.

You can create a Samsung Account using your email address.

To create a Samsung Account, you must agree to the Samsung Account end user agreement and privacy policy. Otherwise, you cannot create a Samsung Account. You can view the entire content of the agreement by navigating to Smart Hub > Samsung Account > Terms and Conditions, Privacy Policy.

Alternatively, you can create a Samsung Account at http://content.samsung.com. You can use one ID for both the TV and the website.

Creating a Samsung Account using Sign Up Samsung Account Menu

1. Navigate to **Smart Hub** > **Samsung Account** > **Create Account** and select **Create a Samsung account**.
2. Agree to use a Samsung Account and select **Next**.
3. Create a Samsung Account according to the instructions on the **Create Account** screen.

   Once a Samsung Account is created, you will be automatically logged in to **Smart Hub**.

Creating a Samsung Account using a Facebook Account

A Facebook user can easily obtain necessary information from Facebook and create a Samsung Account.

1. Navigate to **Smart Hub** > **Samsung Account** and select **Log In**.
2. Select ⊕ and select the **Create with Facebook**.
3. Enter your Facebook ID and password and select **Sign In**.
4. Agree to use a Samsung Account and select **Next**.
5. Create a Samsung Account according to the instructions on the **Create Account** screen. Once a Samsung Account is created, you will be automatically signed in.

   If you create a Samsung Account using your Facebook account, they are automatically linked.

Signing into Samsung Account

Smart Hub > Samsung Account > Log In

Logging into and Saving a Samsung Account

If you haven't logged into your Samsung Account on the TV, you must save your Samsung Account on the TV.

1. Navigate to Smart Hub > Samsung Account and select Log In.
2. Select ⊕ and select Sign In.
3. Enter your ID and password and then select Sign In.

   Check the Sign me in automatically option if you wish to log into Smart Hub automatically.

   If you forgot your password, select Reset password to receive password reset instructions via email.
4. Select an image to be used as the profile picture. The Samsung Account has been saved on the TV.
5. Select Done to log into your Samsung Account.

Easily Logging Into Your Samsung Account Saved on the TV

1. Navigate to Smart Hub > Samsung Account and select Log In.
2. Choose your Samsung Account and select Sign In.
3. Using the login method configured for the selected Samsung Account, log into your Samsung Account.

Linking My Samsung and App Accounts

Smart Hub > Samsung Account > Link Service Accounts

Linking your Samsung Account to accounts of apps installed on the TV lets you automatically log into your linked app accounts when you log into your **Samsung Account**. For example, you can download the Facebook app and link your Facebook account to your **Samsung Account**. In this case, logging into your **Samsung Account** then automatically logs you into your Facebook account as well.

To use **Link Service Accounts**, you must first log into your Samsung Account.

Linking an App Account

1. Navigate to **Smart Hub** > **Samsung Account** and select **Link Service Accounts**. A list of apps that can be linked to your Samsung Account is shown.
2. Select an app from the list. The Link to other accounts window appears on the screen.
3. Enter the current ID and password of the app to log in. When the login is complete, the app account is linked to the Samsung Account.

Disconnecting a Linked Account

1. Navigate to **Smart Hub** > **Samsung Account**, select **Link Service Accounts**. Select an app to unlink.
2. A confirmation dialog box appears. Select **Yes** to unlink the app.

Changing and Adding Information to Samsung Account

Smart Hub > Samsung Account

Using the **Samsung Account** menu, you can manage your Samsung Account.

To change the account information, you must be logged into your Samsung Account.

1. Navigate to **Smart Hub** > **Samsung Account** and select **Edit profile**.
2. Enter the password and then select **Done**. The edit profile screen appears.

The profile editing screen provides the following features.

- **Changing Profile Image**

  If you select **Edit Profile Picture** on the login screen, you can change the profile image.

- **Registering Your Face to Samsung Account**

  If you select **Register face** on the login screen, you can register your face to your Samsung Account. The registered face is used by the **Sign-in Method**.

  This is available only if the optional TV camera is connected to the TV.

- **Choosing a Samsung Account Login Method for TV**

  Select **Sign-in Method** on the login screen and choose a login method. You can determine how to log into the TV with the saved Samsung Account.

- **Setting Auto Login**

  Check the **Sign me in automatically** option if you wish to log into **Smart Hub** automatically.

- **Entering Basic User Information**

  You can enter your given name, surname, and date of birth.

- **Receiving e-mail about Samsung services**

  You can determine whether to receive e-mail about Samsung services. Containing the latest information.

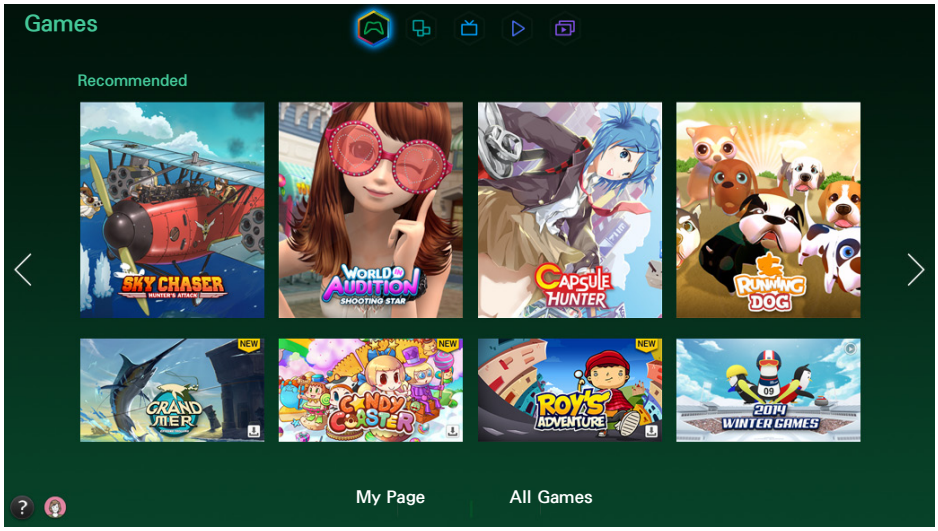
Deleting All Samsung Accounts from the TV

Smart Hub > Samsung Account > Remove Accounts from TV

Navigate to **Smart Hub** > **Samsung Account** and select **Remove Accounts from TV**. The account and password information saved on the TV is deleted, and the account information of any linked apps are also deleted.

To delete your account information, you must be signed in with your Samsung Account.

Using the Games Panel



Actual menu screen may differ depending on the TV model.

This service or some of functions of it may be not available in some countries or region.

Navigate to **Smart Hub** > **Games** to confirm the optimising game apps for Smart TV and detailed information on Smart Hub. This makes it easier to download and play games. In addition, you can manage games that you have downloaded or purchased with your Samsung Account.

Before you use the **Games** panel, check if the TV is connected to the Internet. The TV must be connected to the Internet in order to use the **Games** panel.

To use the **Games** panel, you must log into your Samsung Account.

Using Pop-Up Menu Functions

In the **Games** panel, move the focus to a desired game and press and hold the Enter button. The following functions are available:

- **Installing/Removing a Game**

  Installs or removes the game from the TV.

- **Viewing Detail Information of the Game**

  Displays detailed information of the selected game.

Installing and Running a Game

- When the TV's internal memory is insufficient, you can install a game on a USB device.
- You can play a game installed on a USB device only when the USB device is connected to the TV. If the USB device is disconnected during a game playing, the game is terminated.
- The game installed on the USB device cannot be played on a different TV, or a PC.

Quickly Installing Games

1. Select **All Games** from the **Games** panel, navigate to a game from the list and press and hold the Enter button.
   - On the **All Games** screen, select the button to view the guide about the game controller.
   - On the **All Games** screen, select the button and select a desired sorting criterion. Then, the items in the list are accordingly rearranged.
2. In the pop-up menu, select **Download**.

   The selected game is installed on the TV.

Installing an App in the Detailed Game Information Screen

1. On the **Games** panel screen, select a game you wish to install. If you cannot find a desired game, select **All Games** at the bottom of the screen.
   - On the **All Games** screen, select the button to view the guide about the game controller.
   - On the **All Games** screen, select the button and select a sorting criteria. The games are sorted according to the criteria.
2. On the detailed information page of the selected game, select **Download**.

   When installation is complete, the installation complete window appears.

Launching a Game

To run an installed game, select **Play** on the detailed game information screen.

Managing Downloaded or Purchased Games

In Smart Hub, move to the **Games** panel and select **My Page** at the bottom of the screen.

- On the **My Page** screen, select the button to view the game controller guide.
- On the **My Page** screen, select the button and select a desired sorting criterion. This rearranges the list accordingly.

Updating a Game

Select **Update Games** at top of the **My Page** screen to update games installed on the TV.

- The **Update Games** appears only when there is a game that needs to be updated.
- To update games automatically, select the button at top of the **My Page** and set the **Auto Update games** to **On**. Games will then be updated automatically when an update becomes available.

Removing a Game

1. Press the button at top of the **My Page** screen and select **Delete**.
2. Select all of the games you wish to remove. To select all games, select **Select All**.
3. When the selection is complete, select **Delete**.

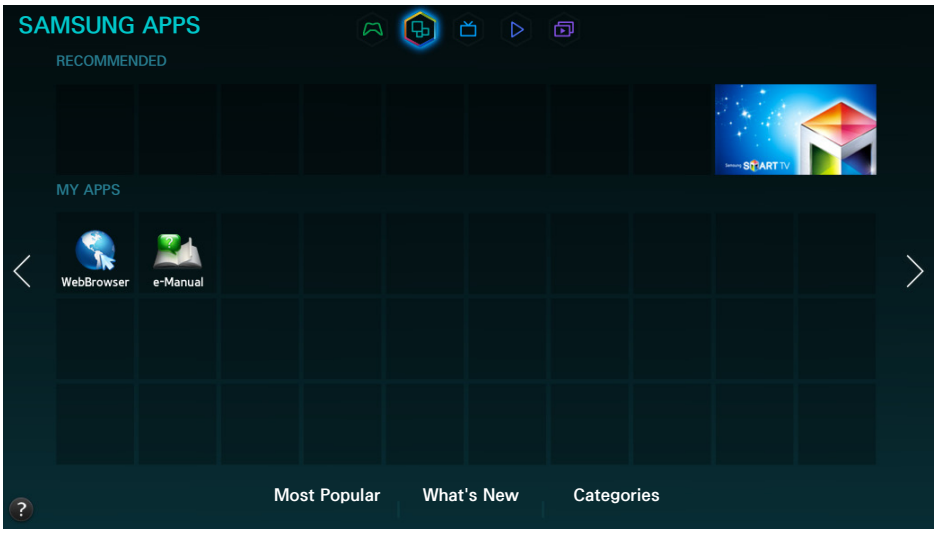
    - Navigate the game you wish to remove and press and hold the Enter button. Then you can easily remove the game.

Rating/Sharing/Reviewing a Game

You can rate or share the game through a social network service or send a review to the developer on the detailed information screen.

- You can rate / share / review a game only when the game has installed on the TV.

Using SAMSUNG APPS Panel



Actual menu screen may differ depending on the TV model.

This service or some of functions of it may be not available in some countries or region.

Smart Hub offers a variety of free news, sports, weather, and gaming content you can install directly on your TV the same way as you would on a smartphone or tablet.

Before you use SAMSUNG APPS, make sure the TV is connected to the Internet. Your TV must be connected to the Internet in order to use SAMSUNG APPS.

Launching Smart Hub for the first time installs the default apps automatically. The default apps may differ depending on the region.

Using Pop-Up Menu Functions

Move the focus to an app and press and hold the Enter button. You can use the following functions:

- **Move**

  Relocates the selected app.

- **Delete**

  Removes the selected app.

- **Delete Multiple**

  Removes multiple apps at once.

- **View Details**

  Move to the detailed information of the selected app.

- **Change view**

  You can change view mode sort by **Custom view** or **Most Played**.

- **Lock/Unlock**

  You can lock or unlock a selected app from the screen.

- **Update Apps**

  You can update the selected app.

Installing an App

- When the TV's internal memory is insufficient, you can install an app on a USB device.
- Only when the USB device is connected are the app icons installed on the USB viewable on the **SAMSUNG APPS** screen. You can use an app installed on a USB device only when the USB device is connected to the TV. If the USB device is disconnected while the app is running, the app is terminated.
- The app installed on the USB device is not available on a different TV, or a PC.

Quick Installation

1. On the **SAMSUNG APPS** screen, select **Most Popular**, **What's New**, or **Categories**.
   - The **Most Popular** and **What's New** show the most popular and newest Samsung Apps. To view the entire app list, select **Categories**. You can view all Samsung Apps classified by genre.
2. Move the focus to an app and press and hold the Enter button. A pop-up menu appears.
3. On the pop-up menu on the screen, select **Download**.
   - While an app is being installed, the progress bar appears at the bottom of the app icon so that you can easily figure out the installation progress.
4. The selected app is installed on the TV.
   - You can view installed apps on the **SAMSUNG APPS** screen.

Installing an App from the Detailed App Information Screen

1. On the **SAMSUNG APPS** screen, select **Most Popular**, **What's New**, or **Categories**.
   - The **Most Popular** and **What's New** show the most popular and the newest Samsung apps. To view the entire app list, select **Categories**. You can view all Samsung Apps by category.
2. Select an app from the list. Detailed information about your selection appears on the screen.
3. Select **Download** on the detailed information screen to install the selected app on the TV.
   - When an app is being installed, a progress bar appears underneath the app icon.
4. When the installation is complete, the **Download** button turns to **Open**.
   - You can view installed apps on the **SAMSUNG APPS** screen.

Launching an App

Select an app on the SAMSUNG APPS screen to launch it.

The icons indicate the following:

- : The app supports motion control.
- : The app supports voice control.
- : The app is installed on a USB device.
- : The app supports a pointer that can move by the Samsung Smart Control.

Default Apps

e-Manual

The embedded e-Manual contains information.

Using Web Browser

Web Browser is an Internet browsing app. Using Web Browser, you can surf the Internet on the TV in the same manner as you would using a PC even while watching a TV programme on PIP.

Use a keyboard and mouse for a more convenient web browsing experience.

The browsing screen may differ from that on a PC.

Browsing Methods

Web Browser provides two browsing methods: Pointer Browsing and Link Browsing. Pointer Browsing enables you to move the pointer for selection while Link Browsing allows using the direction arrows to move the focus.

The default browsing method of Web Browser is Pointer Browsing. To enable Link Browsing, select the Link Browsing icon.

Command and Status Bar at a Glance

Open the Web Browser to display the command and status bar at the top of the screen. The following items are available:

- **Back**

  Move to the previous page.

- **Forward**

  Move to the next page.

- **Bookmarks & History**

  Move to the **Bookmarks & History** screen. On this screen, add the current page to Bookmarks, or move, edit, or delete a bookmarked page. Easily access visited pages by navigating the History screen.

- **Home Page**

  Move to the main screen.

- **Address Bar**

  Check the address of the current page, or enter a web page address to move to the page.

- **Refresh** / **Stop**

  Reload the current page or stop reloading the current page.

- **Add to Bookmark**

  Add the current page to Bookmarks.

- **Search**

  Make a keyword search using the user-specified search engine.

  > To change the search engine, select the icon and then select a search engine in the **Set Search Engine** menu.

- **100% Zoom**

  Zoom in or out of the current web page.

- **PIP**

  Use **Web Browser** while watching a TV programme on the same screen.

- **Link Browsing** / **Pointer Browsing**

  Select one from two browsing methods supported by **Web Browser**.

- **Settings**

  Configure the **Web Browser** settings.

- **Close**

  Exit **Web Browser**.

- **New Tab**

  Open a new tab.

Browsing Preferences

Select the item on the screen. Configure the browsing settings to your needs or convenience.

> Some items may not be available depending on the web page. Unavailable items are grayed out.

- **Approved Sites**

  To prevent children from accessing inappropriate web pages, limit access to pre-registered web pages.

  > You will be asked to enter a password when selecting **Approved Sites**. Enter the password. The default password is 0000.

  Approved Sites feature: Enable/disable the **Approved Sites feature**.

  Reset password for Approved Sites: Change the password.

  Add current site: Add the current web page to **Approved Sites**.

  Manage Approved Sites: Enter the address of the web page that you want to add to **Approved Sites**, or select one from the list and delete it.

  > Enabling the **Approved Sites feature** with no web page listed will restrict access to any web page.

- **Private browsing on** / **Private browsing off**

  Enable/disable the **Private Browsing** feature. Enabling **Private Browsing** will not save the browsing history.

  When enabling **Private Browsing**, the icon appears at the start of the address bar.

- **PIP Settings**

  Configure the PIP settings.

  This is available only if watching TV in PIP mode.

  Position: Select the position of the sub picture.

- **Set Search Engine**

  Set the default search engine from the list.

- **Web Browser Settings**

  Configure the **Web Browser Settings**, such as browsing behaviors or security.

  Set as homepage: Select a web page and set it as the homepage.

  Pop-up Block: Block or unblock pop-up windows.

  Page Block: Block or unblock pages such as commercial pages. Manage a list of pages to block by entering the address of a web page.

  General: Delete browsing history or Internet usage information, or reset **Web Browser**. Set **Security Mode** to **On** to restrict access by malicious codes or phishing sites.

  Encoding: Set the **Auto select** to **On**, or select an encoding method from the list.

  Pointer: Adjust the pointer speed in **Pointer Browsing** mode, or change the link access method.

  Browser Information: Check the current version of **Web Browser**.

- **Help**

  This will familiarise yourself with the basics of **Web Browser**.

Rearranging Apps on the SAMSUNG APPS Screen

1. On the SAMSUNG APPS screen, move to the app you wish to change the order.
2. Press and hold the Enter button. A pop-up menu appears.
3. On the pop-up menu, select **Move**.
4. Move an app to a desired location and select the app again.

Removing an App from the TV

Note that if an app is removed, the data related to the app is also deleted.

Removing an App

1. On the SAMSUNG APPS screen, move to the app you wish to remove.
2. Press and hold the Enter button. A pop-up menu appears.
3. On the pop-up menu on the screen, select Delete. A removal confirmation window appears. Select Yes. The selected app is removed.

Removing Multiple Apps

1. On the SAMSUNG APPS screen, move to the app you wish to remove.
2. Press and hold the Enter button. A pop-up menu appears.
3. On the pop-up menu on the screen, select Delete Multiple. A check box appears on the app icons.
4. Select all the apps you wish to remove and then select Delete. A removal confirmation window appears. Select Yes. Selected apps are removed.

Rating/Reviewing an App

On the detailed app information screen, you can rate the app or send a review to the app developer.

To rate or review an app, you must log into your Samsung Account. You can only rate or review with a TV purchasing apps and games.

Updating an App

1. On the SAMSUNG APPS screen, move to the app you wish to update.
2. Press and hold the Enter button. A pop-up menu appears.
3. On the pop-up menu on the screen, select Update apps. A pop-up window appears.
4. Select all the apps you wish to update and then select Update. All the selected apps are updated to the latest versions.

Setting Auto App Update

Smart Hub > Apps Settings

To update apps automatically, navigate to Smart Hub > Apps Settings and set Auto update to On. The apps installed on the TV are automatically updated as updates become available.

SAMSUNG APPS Features

Smart Hub > Apps Settings Try Now

You can configure the features related to the apps installed on your TV.

Enabling Automatic Tickers

You can configure selected tickers to display automatically when the TV is turned on. Ticker Service enables you to use other services while watching TV. You can receive news, stock, and weather information and more in real-time while watching TV.

To use this feature, make sure that an app supporting the Auto Ticker function is installed on the TV.

1. Navigate to Smart Hub > Apps Settings and select Auto Ticker. A list of installed apps that support Ticker Autorun appears.
2. From the list, select apps you wish to run automatically when the TV is turned on.

Setting Push Notification

Push notification function enables apps installed on the TV to send alerts and messages to the user.

1. Navigate to **Smart Hub** > **Apps Settings** > **Push Notification Settings** and set the **Push Notification** to **On**.
2. Set the **Push Notification** setting of apps you wish to receive push notifications from to **On**. Push notification function of the selected apps is activated.

   The **Push Notification** app list only shows installed apps that support **Push Notification Settings**.

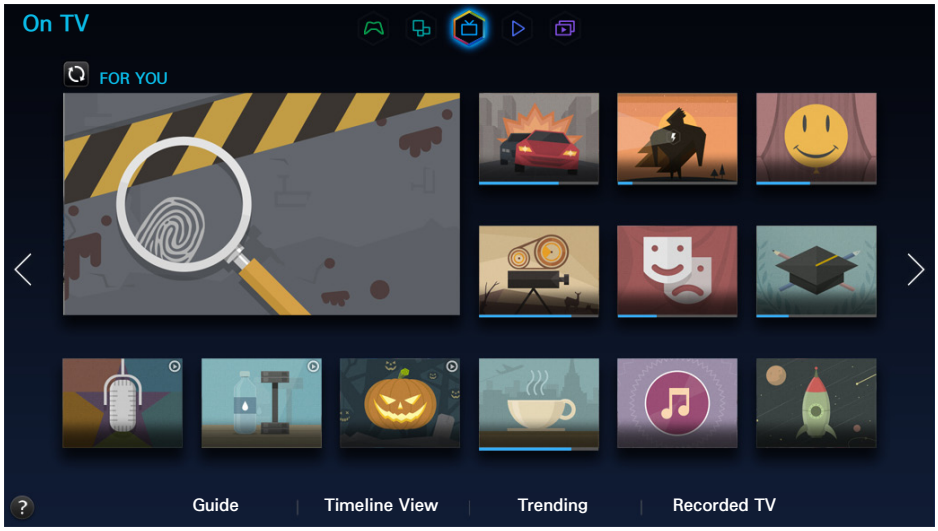
Using an App while Watching TV

If an app linked to a channel is installed on the TV, you can view programme information and use related services offered by the app while watching TV.

Navigate to **Smart Hub** > **Apps Settings** and set **Channel-Bound Apps** to **On**.

This feature is only available with apps supporting **Channel-Bound Apps** installed on the TV.

Using On TV Panel



- Actual menu screen may differ depending on the TV model.
- This service or some of functions of it may be not available in some countries or region.
- Availability of recommended content depends on the specific model and area.

Smart Hub's On TV panel lets you view programme lists for recommended channels while watching TV. You can then switch to a programme in the recommendation list or set up Schedule Viewing/ Schedule Recording for an upcoming programme.

- Before you use On TV, check if the TV is connected to the Internet. The TV must be connected to the Internet in order to use On TV.
- The channels or programmes recommended by On TV may differ from the actual ones depending on the broadcast information provider.

Select a desired programme from the recommendation list. You can watch the selected programme immediately if it is currently on air or move to the detailed programme information screen if it hasn't aired yet.

- Select from the screen to change the recommended content list.
- For a programme being broadcasted, a progress bar appears. For an upcoming programme, the remaining time to broadcast appears.

Move to the navigation bar at the bottom of the screen to access the following options:

- **Viewing the Programme Schedule of Digital Channels**

  Select **Guide** at the bottom of the screen to view the programme schedule of each digital channel at a glance. You can check the programme schedule and even set up a **Schedule Viewing** or **Schedule Recording**.

  The Guide provides information only about digital channels. Analogue channels are not supported.

- **Programme Recommendations by Time**

  Select **Timeline View** at the bottom of the screen to view programme recommendations for different times of the day.

- **Popular Videos**

  Select **Trending** at the bottom of the screen to view the most trendy or popular content in Twitter and set up a **Schedule Viewing** or **Schedule Recording**.

- **Watching a Recorded Programme**

  Select **Recorded TV** at the bottom of the screen to watch a recorded programme.

Using Pop-Up Menu Functions

Move the focus to a desired programme and press and hold the Enter button. The following options are available:

Available functions may differ depending on the selected programme.

- **Recording the Current Programme**

  You can instantly record a programme that is being broadcast on a different channel.

- **Viewing Detailed Information**

  You can move to the detail information screen about the selected programme.

- **Reserving**

  You can set up a Schedule Viewing or Schedule Recording for the programme.

Viewing Detailed Programme Information

1. Move the focus to a desired programme and press and hold the Enter button. The Options menu appears.
2. From the Options menu on the screen, select Detailed Information. The detailed information about the selected programme screen appears.

You can find more information about the selected programme in the detailed information screen and you can easily use the following functions:

- **Moving to a Channel**

  Jump to the selected programme's channel.

- **Record**

  You can record the programme.

  This function is only available for programmes that is being broadcasted.

- **Reserving**

  Set up a Schedule Viewing or Schedule Recording for the programme.

  This function is only available for programmes that is being broadcasted.

- **Viewing Related Content**

  View a list of content related to the programme. If you select an item from the list, the detailed screen of the selected item appears.

- **Rate**

  You can rate the programme.

- **Sharing**

  You can share detailed information about the programme on social networking services.

Configuring On TV Settings

Availability depends on the specific model and area.

Smart Hub > On TV Settings

You can set up the signal reception method, cable company, and other broadcast viewing environment settings for On TV.

Navigate to **Smart Hub** > **On TV Settings**, select **Set Up Service Provider** settings and set up the broadcast viewing environment settings according to the onscreen instructions.

Receiving Recommendation Notice

You can configure the TV to display a notification when a frequently watched programme is broadcast.

Navigate to **Smart Hub** > **On TV Settings** and set **Automatic Notifications** to **On**.

Changing Recommendation Type

You can choose between personally preferred programmes and programmes preferred by the general public as the type of recommendations you wish to receive.

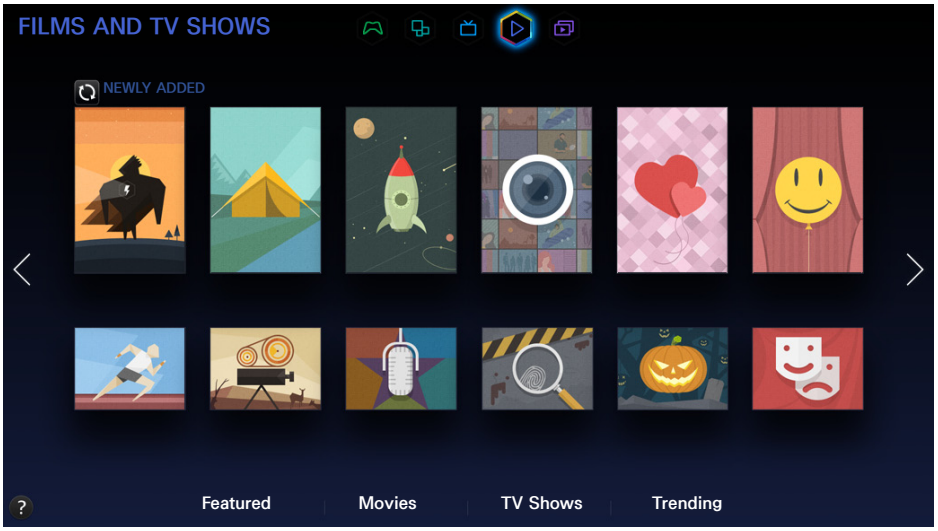
Navigate to **Smart Hub** > **On TV Settings**, select **Recommendation Type** and set it to a desired type.

Removing Adult Content from the Recommended List

You can configure this setting so that recommended programmes that are rated for adults are blocked automatically.

Navigate to **Smart Hub** > **On TV Settings** and set **Block Adult Content** to **On**.

Using FILMS AND TV SHOWS Panel



- Actual menu screen may differ depending on the TV model.
- This service or some of functions of it may be not available in some countries or region.

Use this feature to purchase and view movies and TV programmes recommended by **FILMS AND TV SHOWS** without having to use an external device such as a DVD player or a Blu-ray player. **FILMS AND TV SHOWS** provides an easy access to a collection of movies and TV programmes available in Smart Hub.

- Not all the **FILMS AND TV SHOWS** options may be available depending on the content you are trying to access or your region.
- Before you use **FILMS AND TV SHOWS**, make sure the TV is connected to the Internet. The TV must be connected to the Internet in order to use **FILMS AND TV SHOWS**.
- Select from the screen to change the recommended content list.

Move to the navigation bar at the bottom of the screen to access the following options:

To sort the content items in each menu, select the button at top of the screen and choose a sorting criteria. However, depending on the selected menu, the button may not appear.

Press in each menu's contents list screen to display only movies or TV programmes in the list. The button may not be shown, depending on the selected menu.

- Enjoying Featured Movies and TV Programmes

  Select **Featured** to view movies or TV programmes selected according to various themes such as movies featuring an actor who went to Hollywood, completed TV series, and so on.

- Viewing a Movie

  Select **Movies** to view a movie from among the movies listed by new arrival, popularity, and genre.

- Viewing a TV Programme

  Select **TV Shows** to view a TV show from among the TV shows listed by new arrival, popularity, and genre.

- Viewing Hot Movies and TV Shows at a Glance in Real-time

  Select **Trending** to view movies and TV programmes that are the most trendy or popular.

Using Pop-Up Menu Functions

Move the focus to a desired movie or TV programme and press and hold the Enter button. The following options are available:

Available options may differ depending on the selected programme.

- **Instant Content Playing**

  Select an app for the selected content to play it right away.

  If the selected app is not installed, a pop-up window will appear. From the pop-up window, move to the detailed app information page or install the app.

Watching a Movie/TV Programme

If you are using **FILMS AND TV SHOWS** for the first time or have not logged into your Samsung Account, new and popular movies and TV shows will be shown in the **FILMS AND TV SHOWS** list. To view a customised recommendation list in **FILMS AND TV SHOWS**, first log into your Samsung Account. You can view a list of frequently played content on **FILMS AND TV SHOWS** screen in addition to the default recommended content list.

1. On **FILMS AND TV SHOWS** screen, select a movie or TV programme you wish to watch. Detailed information about your selection appears on the screen.
2. On the detailed information screen, select an app to play the content. This launches the selected app and displays detailed information about the content.

   If the selected app is not installed, a pop-up window will appear. From the pop-up window, move to the detailed app information page or install the app.
3. You can play the content in the detailed information of the content.

   If the selected content is free, you can instantly watch the content. If the content is a paid content, you must first purchase the content in the app (In-App Purchase).

   The purchasing procedures on the app may differ depending on the app. You may need to log into the app or enter payment information.

Restricting Purchased Content Viewing

Smart Hub > **VOD Rating Lock**

You can lock content rated as adult content so that children cannot access the content.

Navigate to **Smart Hub** and set **VOD Rating Lock** to **On**.

To turn on or off the **VOD Rating Lock**, the password is required.

Preventing Children from Watching Adult UHD Content

Smart Hub > **UHD Video Rating Lock**

You can lock UHD content rated as adult so that children cannot access it.

Navigate to **Smart Hub** and set **UHD Video Rating Lock** to **On**.

To turn the **UHD Video Rating Lock** on or off, the security password is required.

Rating and Sharing a Purchased Content

Rating Content

1. Select content in **FILMS AND TV SHOWS**. Detailed information about your selection appears on the screen.
2. Select ★★★★★ button on the detailed information screen. A pop-up window appears.
3. You can rate the item using the ‹ and › buttons in the pop-up window.

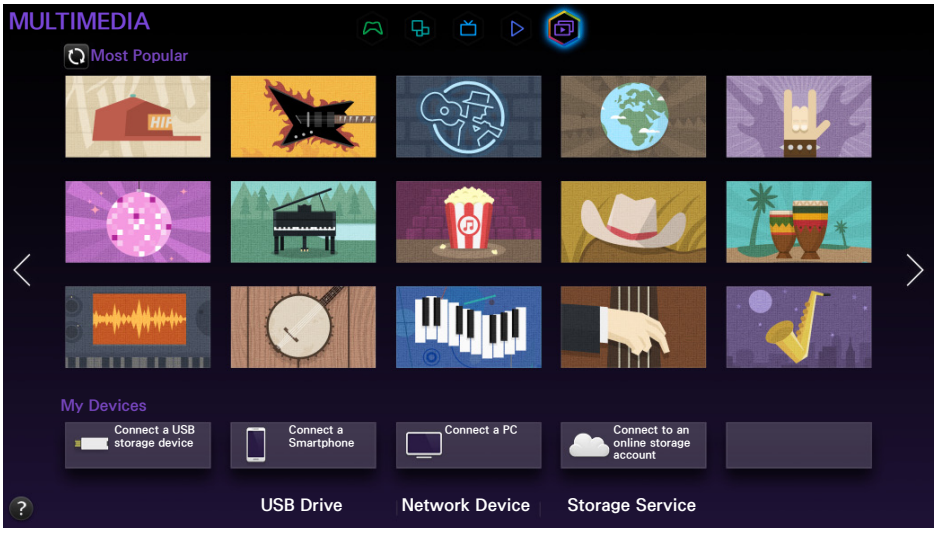
Sharing With SNS

1. Select content in the **FILMS AND TV SHOWS**. Detailed information about your selection appears on the screen.
2. Select either f or t button in the detailed information screen. The login page of the selected SNS appears.

   If you have linked your Samsung Account to the SNS account, you were automatically logged into the SNS account when you logged into your Samsung Account.
3. On the SNS login screen, enter your SNS ID and password to log into the SNS.

   If you have linked your Samsung Account to the SNS account, you can skip this step.
4. In the pop-up window, type the article you wish to post to the SNS and select **Post**. The article is posted to the SNS.

Playing Photos, Videos, and Music (MULTIMEDIA)



- Actual menu screen may differ depending on the TV model.
- This service or some of functions of it may be not available in some countries or region.

You can play media content saved on a USB device, smartphone, camera, computer, or Storage Service on the TV.

- You cannot play media content if the content or the storage device are not supported by the TV. For more information, refer to "Photo, Video, and Music File Limitations".
- Backup important files before connecting a USB device. Samsung shall not be held responsible for damaged or lost files.

Playing Media Content from a USB Device

1. Select **USB Drive** in the **MULTIMEDIA** panel. USB devices connected to the TV are listed.
2. Select the device you wish to access. Folders and files of the selected USB device are listed.
3. Select the media content you wish to play. This plays the selected content.

- Alternatively, move to the media content to play and press the ► button to play the content.
- While video with UHD-level resolution is being played, Smart View 2.0 and Motion Control are not available.
- If you connect a USB device to the TV while watching the TV, a pop-up window appears on the screen so that you can easily navigate the folders and files of the USB device.
- Alternatively, if you select a USB device on the **Source** screen, a pop-up window appears on the screen so that you can easily navigate the folders and files of the USB device.
- When connecting a USB device to the UHD Evolution Kit models, the TV may fail to recognise it, depending on the device. If this happens, directly connect the device to the USB port on the TV's rear.

Safely Removing a USB Device

1. Press the SOURCE button. The Source screen appears.
2. Navigate the USB device you wish to remove, and press and hold the Enter button. An options window appears.
3. Select **Disconnect USB Device** from the list.

Playing Multimedia Content Saved in a Computer/Mobile Device

- To view a guide about the PC connection, select Connecting to PC under Network Device.
- To view a guide about a Smartphone or tablet connection, select **Connect a Smartphone** under **Network Device**.

Allowing Connection with a Computer/Mobile Device

To play multimedia content in a computer or mobile device on the TV, you need to allow the connection with the computer on the TV.

- You can connect to a computer or mobile device on any DLNA DMC device. DLNA DMC function enables users to connect a mobile device to the TV, search for multimedia content and control play operations on the TV.

1. Select **Network Device** in the **MULTIMEDIA** panel. Devices connected to the TV are listed.
2. Select **Options** and then **Multimedia device settings**. Devices connected to the TV are listed.

   - Alternatively, select **Multimedia Device Settings** from the **Network** menu to see the list of the devices connected to the TV. Try Now
3. Allow connection with the desired device you wish to connect to the TV. You can only play media files from devices that have been allowed to connect to the TV.

   - If a computer or mobile device requests the multimedia content play, the connection allowance confirmation window appears on the TV so that you can easily connect the computer or mobile device.

When Connected through Home Network (DLNA)

- To connect a computer through home network (DLNA).
- To connect a mobile device through home network (DLNA).
- You may experience compatibility issues when attempting to play media files via a third-party DLNA server.
- However, the content shared by a computer of a mobile device may not play depending on the encoding type and file format of the content. In addition, some functions may not be available.
- The multimedia content may not smoothly play depending on the network status. If this is the case, use a USB storage device.

1. Select **Network Device** in the **MULTIMEDIA** panel. Devices connected to the TV are listed.
2. Select a device connected via the home network (DLNA). Folders and files shared by the selected device will be listed.
3. Select a media content you wish to play from the list. This plays the selected content.

   Alternatively, move to the media content and press ► to play.

When Connected through Samsung Link

- To connect a computer through Samsung Link.
- To connect a mobile device through Samsung Link.
- However, the content shared by a computer of a mobile device may not play depending on the encoding type and file format of the content. In addition, some functions may not be available.
- The multimedia content may not smoothly play depending on the network status. If this is the case, use a USB storage device.

1. Navigate to **Smart Hub** > **Samsung Account** menu and select **Log In** to sign in with your the Samsung Account.
2. Select **Network Device** in the **MULTIMEDIA** panel. Devices connected to the TV are listed.
3. Select a device connected via Samsung Link. Folders and files shared by the selected device will be listed.
4. Select a media content you wish to play from the list. This plays the selected content.

   Alternatively, move to the media content and press ► to play.

Playing Media Content from a Storage Service

Storage Services store user content such as photo, video, and music files on a server so that they can be viewed/played on the TV over the Internet. It's also possible to view your media content saved on Storage Services such as Dropbox and SkyDrive from the TV.

To play content from a Storage Service, you must log into your Samsung Account and link it to the Storage Service account.

1. Navigate to **Smart Hub** > **Samsung Account** menu and select **Log In** to sign into your **Samsung Account**.
2. Select **Storage Service** in the **MULTIMEDIA** panel. Storage Services linked to your Samsung Account appears.
3. Select a Storage Service. Folders and files found in the selected Storage Service are listed.
4. Select the media content you wish to play from the list. This plays the selected content.

   Alternatively, move to the media content and press ► to play.

Buttons and Functions Available while Viewing Photos

Press enter to access the following buttons. Pressing RETURN hides the playback buttons.

- Pause / Play

  Start or stop the slide show. The slide show feature displays all the photos contained in the selected folder, one photo at a time.

- Previous / Next

  View the previous/next photo in the queue.

- Settings

Function	Description
Slideshow Settings	Speed: Set the slide show speed. Effects: Apply transition effects to the slide show.
Rotate	Rotate the photo.
Zoom	Zoom in by up to a factor of 4.
Picture Mode	Change Picture Mode.
Background Music	Listen to background music while viewing photos. The music file must be located on the same device as the photo files. A mini player appears on the screen when background music is played. Use the mini player to pause the music or play a different music file.
Sound Mode	Change Sound Mode. This option is supported only when background music is playing.
Select Speakers	Choose speakers for the background music.
Send	This function is the same as the "Copy" function of a computer. Use this function to send the current photo to another storage device. For information on storage devices supported by this feature, refer to "Storage Device File Transfers".
Information	View detailed information about the current photo.

Buttons and Functions Available while Watching Video

Press enter to access the following buttons. Pressing RETURN hides the playback buttons.

- **Pause** / **Play**

  Pause or play the video.

  When the video is paused, you can use the following functions. However, audio will not be heard while the video is paused.

  - **Step**: Press ⏸ to scan the paused video one frame at a time.
  - **Slow Motion**: Select the ⏩ button to play the video at reduced speed (1/8, 1/4, 1/2).

- **Rewind** / **Fast Forward**

  Rewind or Fast Forward the video. Repeatedly select the button to make the rewind/fast forward speed faster by up to 3 times. To restore normal playback speed, select ▶.

- **Previous** / **Next**

  Select ⏮ twice to play the previous video. Selecting ⏮ once reloads the current video from the beginning.

  To play the next video, select the ⏭ button.

- Settings

Function	Description
Select Scene	Thumbnails: Select a scene and play the video from the scene. Thumbnails is not available when 1) the thumbnail of the video is not extracted yet, 2) the video contains audio only or 3) the video play time is shorter than 60 seconds. Chapter Titles: Select and play another video in the same folder. Time Bar: You can use the <, > buttons to scan through the video in 10 seconds intervals or enter a specific time value to jump to that point in the video.
Subtitles	Control the subtitle of the video. Language: Turn the subtitles on or off. Sync: When the video and the subtitles are not synchronised, you can adjust the synchronisation. Reset Sync: Reset the subtitle synchronisation adjustment to 0. Size: Choose the font size for the subtitles. Encoding: If the subtitles are broken, you can change the encoding language.
Repeat	Set the repeat mode. Repeat One repeats the current programme only. Repeat All repeats all programmes contained in the folder.
Rotate	Rotate the video.
Picture Size	Change the picture size. However, the supported picture size is determined by the video content.
Picture Mode	Change the Picture Mode setting.
Sound Mode	Change the Sound Mode setting.
Select Speakers	Choose a speaker to play the audio.
Audio Language	Choose a desired audio language. This option works only when the video supports multi-track sound.
Information	View detailed information about the video.

Buttons and Functions Available while Playing Music

Press enter to access the following buttons. Pressing RETURN hides the playback buttons.

- **Pause** / **Play**

  Pause or resume the music.

- **Rewind** / **Fast Forward**

  Rewind or fast forward the music. To restore normal playback speed, select ▶.

- **Previous** / **Next**

  Select ⏮ twice to play the previous music file. Selecting ⏮ once reloads the current music file from the beginning.

  To play the next music file, select the ⏭ button.

- **Repeat**

  Set the repeat mode. **Repeat One** repeats the current music file only. **Repeat All** repeats all music files contained in the folder.

- **Shuffle**

  Play the music files in order or randomly.

- **Select Speakers**

  Choose a speaker to play the audio.

- **Sound Mode**

  Change the Sound Mode setting.

Functions on the Media Content List Screen

The media content screen for the selected storage device includes the following functions.

- **Filter**

  Use this option to filter the list to see only the photo, video, or music files contained in the storage device.

- **Sort by**

  Sort the list by content type.

  This function is not available when **Filter** is set to **All**.

- **Options**

  This function is not available when **Filter** is set to **All**.

Function	Description
Slide Show	Start the slide show. This option is available for photo files. This option is not available with **Sort by** set to **Folder**.
Play Selected	Play only the selected content.
Send	This function is the same as the "Copy" function of a computer. Use this function to send the media content to another storage device. For information on storage devices supported by this feature, refer to "Storage Device File Transfers".
Encoding	If the media content's title is being displayed incorrectly, you can change the encoding method. This function is available only for music files.
Rename Playlist	Rename your playlist. This function is available only when the media content is music.
Delete Playlist	Delete a playlist that you have created. This function is available only for music files.
Add to Playlist	Add a file to an existing playlist or create a new playlist. This function is available only for music files.
Index	If the content list is too long to navigate efficiently, select a letter to quickly skip to that section of the list. This is not available when **Sort by** is set to **Folder**.

TV Control using your Voice

System > **Voice Control**

You can access and select certain menu options and functions using voice commands. For more effective voice recognition, speak slowly and clearly in the language specified in the **System** > **Voice Control** > **Language** option.

- Voice Control is classified into two: interactive voice control that enables conversational instructions, and imperative voice control where only pre-defined instructions are used. Smart Hub setup, and time settings, as well as the user's agreement on the use terms. Trying the interactive voice control without completing any of these requirements will display a notification pop-up. Follow the onscreen instructions and complete the necessary settings. The imperative voice control is available regardless of the interactive voice control settings. Use only "pre-defined commands" in the imperative voice control mode.
- Please read through the instructions before using Voice Control. For more information, refer to "Read Before Using Voice, Motion, or Face Recognition".
- If you use the **Voice Control** function interactively at least once, the TV will change the on-screen menu name from **Voice Control** to **Voice Interaction**.

Enabling Voice Control

1. Press the **VOICE** button on the Samsung Smart Control. The microphone icon appears on the screen when **Voice Control** is enabled.
2. Say a command. You can use Voice Control to operate the TV when you are watching the TV or other videos.

    - Say the command from 10cm to 15cm away from the microphone on the Samsung Smart Control. Voice commands may not be recognised properly if you speak too softly or loudly. The optimal volume for voice commands is between 75 dB and 80dB.

Using the Voice Recognition Tutorial

Support > **Voice Recognition Tutorial**

This lets you familiarise yourself with the basics of using Voice Control. Run **Voice Recognition Tutorial** from the **Support** menu, or run **Voice Control** and say "**Tutorial**".

Learning Voice Control Basics

- **Moving the focus**

  Say "**Focus left**", "**Focus right**", "**Focus up**", or "**Focus down**" to move the focus. However, these commands can only be used in situations when the focus can be moved.

- **Selecting an item**

  Say "**Select**" to confirm the selection.

- **All Voice Commands**

  Say "**Help**" to display the complete list of voice commands, organised by category.

- **Deactivating Voice Control**

  Press VOICE button. This terminates Voice Control.

The TV recognises predefined voice commands only, and the voice commands may differ from the manual depending on the version.

Changing Voice Control Language

System > **Voice Control** > **Language**

Navigate to **System** > **Voice Control** > **Language**, and select a preferred language from the list. Now you can use Voice Control in the specified language.

Interactive Voice Control is not available in some languages. If this is the case, choose a different language.

Using the Voice Interaction function Interactively

Voice Control allows you to set up **Schedule Recording**/**Schedule Viewing**, access VODs, search and launch applications, and execute various other commands using voice commands and without having to remember specific commands or keywords. Saying "Turn off the TV in 30 minutes", for example, instructs the TV to turn off after 30 minutes (Sleep Timer).

If you use the **Voice Control** function interactively at least once, the TV will change the on-screen menu name from **Voice Control** to **Voice Interaction**.

Activate Voice Interaction and say a command. See the examples below:

- **When you don't know which channel a specific programme is on:**

  “Watch **** (Title)”. / “Play **** (Title)”. / “Run **** (Title)”

- **When you want to find a specific programme or content item:**

  "*** (Title)" / "Find *** (Title)."

- **When you want to reserve and record a programme:**

  "Remind me to watch *** (Title)." / "Set up a timer to record *** (Title).” / "Record *** (Title)."

- **When you want to know various daily information:**

  "What's the weather in *** (place name)." / "What is the *** (company) stock price?"

- **When you want programme recommendations:**

  "Recommend something to me." / "Are there any popular drama (genre) out?"

- **When you want to operate the TV:**

  "Volume ** (level)" / "Channel ** (Number) / ** (channel name)"

- **When you play an app for the camera, such as skype, or for fitness:**

  "Camera" / "Fitness" / "Skype"

- **When you log in or out of the Samsung Account:**

  "Sign In *** (User name)" / "Sign Out *** (User name)"

Enabling/Disabling TV Voice

Enable/disable the TV's voice responses to your Voice Control commands. Navigate to **System** > **Voice Control** menu and select **Use TV Voice**.

Enabling TV Voice in Selected Voice Gender

Navigate to **System** > **Voice Control** > **Voice Gender**, and select a voice gender. Enjoy the TV voice in the selected voice gender.

TV Control using Motions

Availability depends on the specific model and area.

System > Motion Control

It's possible to use motion commands to change channels, adjust the volume, and control the pointer while searching the web using Smart Hub. A TV camera (sold separately) needs to be connected in order to use Motion Control.

Motion Control is not available while this function is in use.

- When you are playing UHD-level video saved on a USB device
- When viewing the digital channel with UHD-level resolution

⚠ **The optional TV camera must be connected to the dedicated USB port at the back of the TV. No other USB port is available for this purpose.**

Please note, that not all apps support **Motion Control**.

Please read through the instructions before using Motion Control. For more information, refer to "Read Before Using Voice, Motion, or Face Recognition".

Motion Control is not available while Voice Control is activated.

You can view supported TV camera model at http://www.samsung.com.

Testing Ambient Illumination Using the TV Camera

System > Motion Control > Motion Control Environment Test

Run this test before using Motion Control to ensure proper functionality.

1. Initiate the **Motion Control Environment Test**, and select **Start** 1.5m to 3.5m away from the TV. If the light is reflected onto the TV's screen, or there are moving objects in the background, the motion may not be properly recognised by the TV.
2. Face the TV camera, and follow the onscreen instructions to raise your hand from a comfortable position with the index finger spreading upwards, and move it left or right slowly. A pointer appears on the screen when the TV recognises the action. If the recognition fails, change the hand position and try again.

Checking Illumination (Motion Control Environment Check)

Support > Self Diagnosis > Motion Control Environment Check

Navigate to **Support** > **Self Diagnosis** menu and select **Motion Control Environment Check**. This measures the illumination level around the TV to check if it is suitable for voice and motion control use.

Activating Motion Control

System > **Motion Control** > **Motion Control**

To enable Motion Control, face the TV camera and raise your hand from a comfortable position with the index finger spreading upwards, and move it left or right slowly. When your hand is successfully recognised by the TV camera, Motion Control is activated and a pointer appears on the screen.

- If Motion Control is activated, a pop-up window appears and guides you through basic use of Motion Control.
- Moving your hand out of the range of the TV camera deactivates Motion Control. To reactivate Motion Control, simply raise your hand towards the TV camera within 3 seconds.
- The recognition may be terminated if the index finger does not fully spread out or is moved too fast.

Using Motion Control Tutorial

Support > **Motion Control Tutorial**

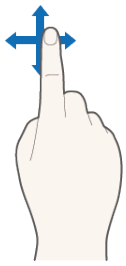
This lets you familiarise yourself with the basics of using Motion Control. From the **Support** menu, run **Motion Control Tutorial**.

- If Motion Control is activated, a pop-up window appears and guides you through basic use of Motion Control.

Learning Motion Control Basics

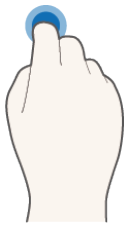
The following basic motion control commands are available:

- **Moving the pointer**



Moving your hand moves the pointer accordingly.

- **Selecting an item**



Fold and then spread your index finger as if clicking on a mouse. You can select a TV menu or run a function. Keeping your index finger folded is like holding down the remote control button.

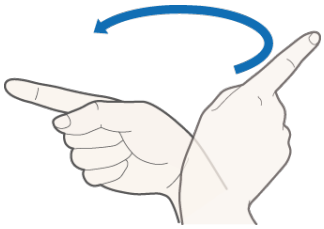
- **Returning to the previous menu**



Make a large counterclockwise circle with your hand to return to the previous menu.

A small circle may not be recognised by the TV.

- **Moving to the Smart Hub panel**



Move your hand from left to right or from right to left as you would turn a book page. You can directly move from Smart Hub to another panel screen. (Example: SAMSUNG APPS panel→ On TV panel)

- **Displaying Smart Hub's context menu**



On the Smart Hub screen, fold your index finger for more than 1 second and spread it out. This displays the selected item's context menu.

The screen's option menu differs depending on the selected lists.

Showing and Hiding Animated Motion Guide

Navigate to **System** > **Motion Control**, and select **Animated Motion Guide** from the menu. Now you can display an animated guide when Motion Control is activated.

Adjusting Pointer Speed

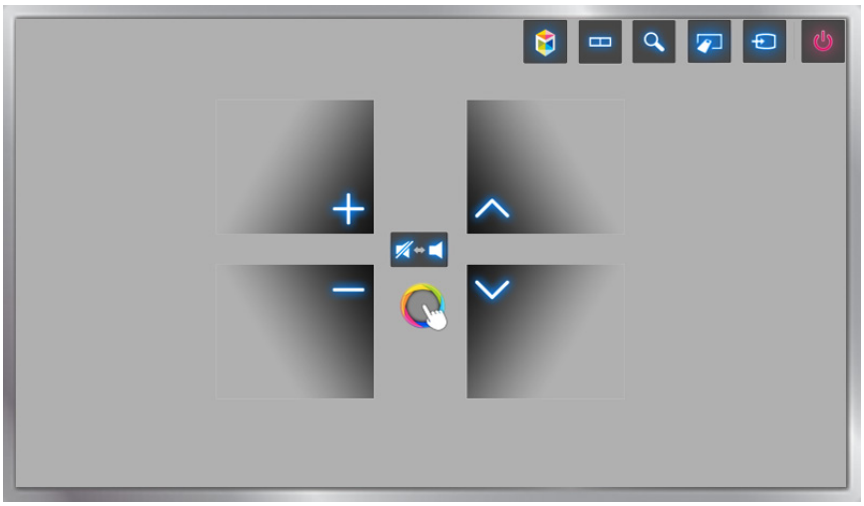
Navigate to **System** > **Motion Control** > **Pointer Speed**, and select a pointer speed.

Motion Control Screen Layout

Motion Control Layout on the TV Screen

Activating Motion Control while watching the TV displays the following icons on the screen:

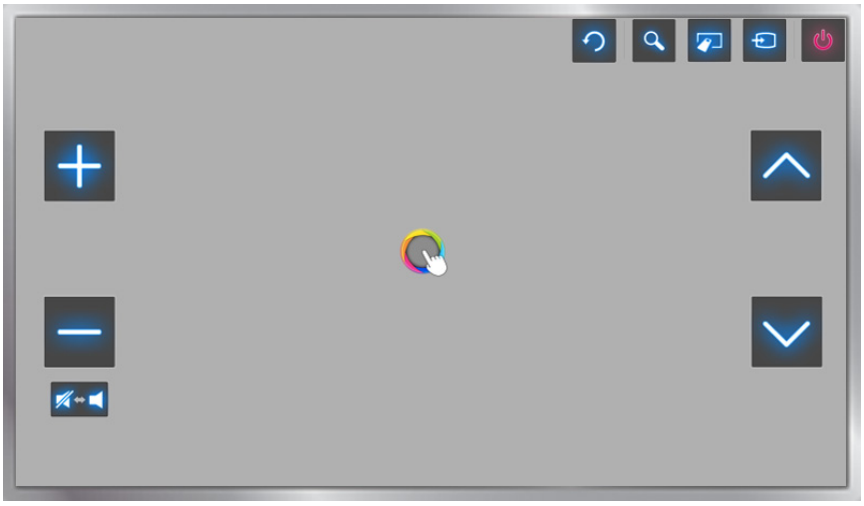
The displayed icon differs depending on the model.



Icon	Description
/	Adjusts the volume.
	Mutes or unmutes the TV.
/	Changes the channel.
	Launches Smart Hub.
	You can split the TV screen and use variable functions such as watching the TV, surfing the web and watching the video and so on.
	Press this button to search for information through the search window in various services.
	The virtual remote control appears.
	Changes the source.
	Turns the TV off.

Motion Control Layout on the Smart Hub Screen

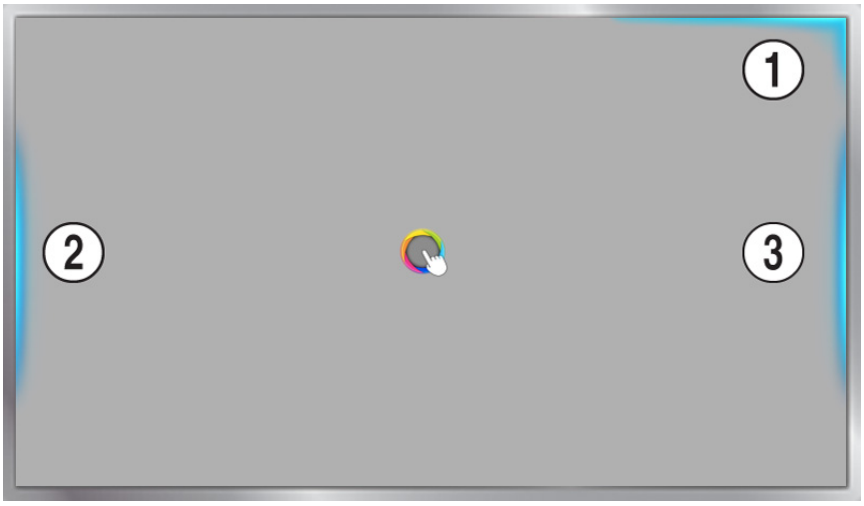
Activating Motion Control while using Smart Hub displays the following icons on the screen:



Icon	Description
/	Adjusts the volume. However, this is only available for On TV.
	Mutes or unmutes the TV. However, this is only available for On TV.
/	Changes the channel. However, this is only available for On TV.
	Returns to the previous menu.
	Press this button to search for information through the search window in various services.
	The virtual remote control appears.
	Changes the source.
	Turns the TV off.

Displaying Hidden Icons When Using Smart Hub

When using Motion Control with Smart Hub, the icons will disappear automatically after 2 seconds of inactivity. To display the hidden icons, move the pointer to one of the three edges shown below (marked in blue) and then hold it there for 1 second. The icons will reappear on the screen.



Icon	Description
①	/ / / /
②	/ /
③	/

Signing in with Face Recognition

Availability depends on the specific model and area.

Users can register their faces using the TV camera, and sign in with their Samsung accounts through Face Recognition. One face may be registered per account. Depending on the ambient illumination level and/or shadows over the face, the TV may have difficulty recognising the user's face.

Please read through the instructions before using Face Recognition. For more information, refer to "Read Before Using Voice, Motion, or Face Recognition".

To enable Face Recognition, first connect the optional TV camera to the TV.

⚠ **The optional TV camera must be connected to the dedicated USB port at the back of the TV. No other USB port is available for this purpose.**

Registering Your Face to Your Samsung Account

Register your face to your Samsung Account to allow the TV to recognise you by your face. Create a new account if you do not already have one.

First, you must sign in with your Samsung Account.

1. Navigate to **Edit profile** (**Smart Hub** > **Samsung Account** > **Edit profile**) and select **Register face** in the account information screen.

   To register your face using the Virtual Remote panel, press **KEYPAD** to select your active Samsung Account and then select **Edit profile**.

   To register your face using the **Games** panel of **Smart Hub**, select the currently signed-in Samsung Account on the screen and then select **Edit profile**.

2. Read the information displayed in the pop-up window, select **OK**, and then enter the account password.

3. On the face registration screen, select **Take picture** and then align your face with the dotted red line displayed on the screen. The dotted line will turn green once your face is recognised.

   Your entire face must be visible to the camera. Make sure the face is brightly lit. Shadows prevent the camera from recognising your face accurately.

   Keep your expression as neutral as possible. In addition, keep your mouth closed but at the same time as neutral as possible.

   Check the box to add password entry to the sign-in process using Facial Recognition for additional security. Select Try Again to try again.

4. On the Samsung Account information screen, select **Save**. This completes the face registration process.

Changing Login Method to Face Recognition

To sign in with your Samsung Account using face recognition, navigate to **Edit profile** (**Smart Hub** > **Samsung Account** > **Edit profile**) and change the login method.

First, you must sign in with your Samsung Account.

1. Navigate to **Smart Hub** > **Samsung Account** and select **Edit profile**.

   To register your face using the Virtual Remote panel, press **KEYPAD** to select your active Samsung Account and then select **Edit profile**.

   To register your face using the **Games** panel of **Smart Hub**, select the currently signed-in Samsung Account on the screen and then select **Edit profile**.

2. Enter the password in the password input box and then select **Done**. The edit profile screen appears.
3. Select **Sign-in Method** and change the login method to Face Recognition.
4. Select **Done**.

Signing into Samsung Account with Your Face

1. Navigate to **Smart Hub** > **Samsung Account** and select **Log In**.

   Press **KEYPAD** on Samsung Smart Control, and select **Sign In**.

   From the **Games** panel of **Smart Hub**, select **Sign In**.

2. Choose your Samsung Account.
3. Face towards the TV camera. If you have set the login method to face recognition, the TV will automatically match your face with your Samsung Account. If recognition fails, try again.

   Password entry is required when logging into accounts that have been configured to require password entry during face registration.

   The user's entire face must be visible to the camera. Make sure the face is brightly lit. Shadows prevent the camera from recognising your face accurately.

   Keep your expression as neutral as possible. In addition, keep your mouth closed but at the same time as neutral as possible.

   Even if more than one registered face matches your face, the TV signs you in with the matching face's account.

Digital Broadcast Information at a Glance

Broadcasting > Guide Try Now

The Guide provides an overview of each digital channel's programme lineup. You can check the programme schedules and set up a Schedule Viewing or Schedule Recording.

Press GUIDE to launch the guide.

The information in the Guide is for digital channels only. Analogue channels are not supported.

Using the Guide

Move to the programme schedule and then press and hold the Enter button. The following options are available:

- **Changing the Channel List**

  If you select Channel Filter, you can change the channels displayed in the channel lists.

- **Navigating the Programme Schedule**

  Press to the ◄◄, ►► button to navigate the programme schedule by 24 hours. You can only view the future programme schedule.

  It is available for moving the page using the ∧, ∨ button.

- **Moving to the Schedule Manager**

  You can move to the Schedule Manager screen.

- **Adding Favourites**

  Click Edit Favourite Channels to add the selected programme to the Favourites.

- **Viewing Detailed Information**

  View detailed information about the selected programme. The programme information may vary depending on the type of incoming signal and may not be available at all for certain programmes.

  – Select a current programme on another channel and select View Details to Watch or Record the programme.

  – Select an upcoming programme and select View Details for Schedule Viewing or Schedule Recording.

Checking the Current Programme Info

While watching TV, select INFO to view information about the current programme.

- In order to view the programme info, you must first set the TV's clock. Set the **Clock** (**System** > **Time** > **Clock**).
- The programme information may vary depending on the type of incoming signal and may not be available at all for certain programmes.

In addition, select right button to view information about the next programme, and press enter, to set up a **Schedule Viewing** or **Schedule Recording** for the upcoming programme.

Change the Broadcast Signal

Broadcasting > **Aerial** Try Now

Choose your preferred method of receiving digital broadcasts.

Digital Signal Info and Strength

Support > **Self Diagnosis** > **Signal Information** Try Now

Select **Support** > **Self Diagnosis** > **Signal Information**. Displays the digital channel's signal information and strength.

- If your TV is attached to a separate, over-the-air antenna, you can use the signal strength information to adjust the antenna for increased signal strength and improved HD channel reception.
- This is only available for digital channels.

Recording Programmes

Availability depends on the specific model and area.

You can record current and upcoming programmes using a USB device instead of a video recorder.

However, this is only available for digital channels. The icon appears next to programmes and channels for which a **Schedule Recording** has been set.

We recommend a USB hard disk drive with a minimum speed of 5,400rpm for TV recording. USB memory sticks are not supported.

Read all precautions before using recording.

Creating a USB Recording Device

> **On TV** > **Recorded TV** or > **MULTIMEDIA** > **USB Drive**

In order to record programmes on a USB device connected to the TV, the device must first be formatted for the TV. Use the **Format Device** option to prepare the USB device.

Formatting a USB device erases all data contained on the device. Back up the data before proceeding. Samsung will not be held responsible for damaged or lost files.

1. Run the Smart Hub and then choose **Recorded TV** from the bottom of the **On TV** screen.
2. Select **Format**, and then select **Format Device**. This will bring up the **Format Device** screen and allow you to format the device for TV recordings.
3. Once formatting is complete, the USB device is tested to see if it has been properly formatted. You will be able to start using the device after the test is completed. If the device fails the test, it means that this device cannot be used to record TV.

Managing USB Recording Devices

You can use the following to manage USB recording devices.

1. Run the Smart Hub and then choose **Recorded TV** from the bottom of the **On TV** screen or **USB Drive** from the bottom of the **MULTIMEDIA** screen. A list of connected devices appears. A list of connected devices appears.
2. Select a USB recording device from the list. The list of recordings contained on the device appears.
3. Select **Options** from the top of the screen and then **Manage Devices**. The **Manage Devices** screen appears.

The following options are available from the **Manage Devices** screen:

- **Format Device**: Formats the USB device for TV recordings.
- **Check Device**: Check the malfunctions of USB device. If the USB have a problem, try to recover.
- **Device Performance Test**: Tests the performance of the USB device. This test tells you whether the USB device can be used for TV recordings.
- **Default Recording Device**: If there are multiple USB recording devices connected to the TV, use this option to specify the default device.

Recording Programmes

You can record current and upcoming programmes.

Instant Recording

Press the REC button to begin recording the current programme right away.

The Instant and Schedule Recording options from the Guide

Select a current programme from the Guide and then select INFO.

You can instantly start recording the programme. Alternatively, select a programme that will air in the future.

The Instant and Schedule Recording options from the Programme Info

Select INFO to display information about the current programme. In the information screen, select a programme that is currently airing to start recording it right away. Alternatively, press <, > button and select a programme that will air in the future to record it.

The Schedule Recording option on a Specified Date and Time

1. Select Broadcasting > Schedule Manager.
2. Select Schedule from the Schedule Manager to bring up a pop-up menu. Select Schedule Recording.
3. Specify the Aerial, Channel, Repeat, Start Time, and End Time options for the programme you want to record, and then select OK to finish.

Buttons and Functions Available While Recording a Programme

Press enter while recording a programme. The following buttons will appear as well as the recording progress bar.

- **Information**

  This displays detailed information about the programme being recorded.

  > The programme information may differ depending on the broadcasting signal and may not be available at all for certain programmes.

- **Recording Time**

  You can select the recording time.

- **Stop Recording / Go to Live TV**

  You can stop recording. / You can watch the live TV while watching a recorded programme.

- **Rewind / Fast Forward**

  Pressing these buttons decreases or increases playback by up to max 5 steps. To restore normal playback speed, select Play.

  > **Fast Forward** cannot be used while watching the Current Programme.

- **Pause / Play**

  Pause/resume video.

- **Channel List**

  You can view the channel list.

- **Tools**

  You can launch the **Tools** menu. The **Tools** menu provides functions that you can use while watching a recorded programme.

Managing the Schedule Recording List

Broadcasting > **Schedule Manager**

You can change the settings of scheduled recording sessions or cancel scheduled sessions altogether.

Deleting Schedule Recording Sessions

You can delete scheduled recording sessions.

1. Select **Broadcasting** > **Schedule Manager**.
2. Select a session from the **Schedule Manager**. A pop-up window appears.
3. Select **Delete**. This cancels the selected recording session.

Editing Schedule Recording Sessions

You can change the settings of scheduled recording sessions.

1. Select **Broadcasting** > **Schedule Manager**.
2. Select a session from the **Schedule Manager**. A pop-up window appears.
3. Select **Edit** and change the settings of the selected session.
4. Once finished, select **OK**. This applies the changes you made to the selected recording session.

Viewing Recorded Programmes

Availability depends on the specific model and area.

> On TV > Recorded TV or > MULTIMEDIA > USB Drive

Recorded broadcasts can be viewed using the Recorded TV option at the bottom of the On TV screen or the USB Drive option at the bottom of the MULTIMEDIA screen.

1. Run the Smart Hub and then choose Recorded TV from the bottom of the On TV screen or USB Drive from the bottom of the MULTIMEDIA screen.
2. Select a USB recording device. A list of recordings appears.
3. Select a recording file from the list or select ► to play the selected file.

Available Buttons and Features while Playing Recordings

Press enter. Playback controls will appear. To hide the controls, press Return.

Buttons that appear are different depending on the file being played.

- Zoom

  You can pause the current file (recorded programme) and zoom in on one of 9 different sections of the screen.

  You can only use this function for programmes recorded in Football Mode.

- Stop

  Stop the playing files(recorded programme) and then, move the storage files(recorded programme).

- Pause / Play

  Pause the file (recorded broadcast) or resume if already paused.

  When the video is paused, you can use the following functions. However, audio will not be heard while the video is paused.

  – **Step**: Press ❚❚ to scan the paused video one frame at a time.

  – **Slow Motion**: The ►► button plays the video back at 1/4 the normal speed.

- **Rewind** / **Fast Forward**

  Rewind or Fast Forward the recording file (recorded programme). Repeatedly select the button to make the rewind/fast forward speed faster by up to max 5 steps. To restore normal playback speed, press the ► button.

- **Previous** / **Next**

  To play the previous file (recorded programme), press ⏮ twice. Selecting ⏮ once reloads the current video from the beginning.

  To play the next file (recorded programme), press ⏭.

  This function is not available when the programme is recorded in **Football Mode**.

- **Highlights Player**

  Select **Highlights Player** to view highlights from the current recording.

  This feature is only available for programmes that were recorded in **Football Mode** and along with highlight data have been saved.

- **Live TV**

  This function enables the PIP feature so that you can watch a live programme through PIP.

  Channels cannot be changed.

  You can only use this function for programmes recorded in **Football Mode**.

- Tools

Function	Description
Search	Search Scene: This will take you to a scene in the video. Search Scene cannot be used if 1) the extraction of the thumbnails from the file (Recorded broadcast) being played back is not finished, 2) playing back a file with audio only (recorded broadcast), or 3) the duration of the recorded file (recorded broadcast) is less than 60 seconds. Search Titles: Select and play a different file located in the same folder. Search Time Bar: Press <, > button to scan through the file in 1-minute increments or enter a specific time value to jump to that point in the video.
Subtitle Settings	Subtitle: Turn the subtitles On or Off. Subtitle Language: Used to change the language.
Repeat Mode	This changes the repeat mode. Choose Repeat One to repeat playing the current file and Repeat All to repeat playing all files contained in the same folder.
Picture Size	Used to change the size of the screen. The supported picture sizes vary depending on the video.
Picture Mode	Change the Picture Mode setting.
Sound Mode	Used to change the Sound Mode.
Select Speakers	Choose a speaker to play the audio.
Audio Language	Choose a desired audio language. This option works only when the video supports multi-track sound.
Information	Displays detailed information about the current file.

Managing Recorded Files

Availability depends on the specific model and area.

> On TV > Recorded TV or > MULTIMEDIA > USB Drive

Select Recorded TV at the bottom of the On TV screen or USB Drive at the bottom of the MULTIMEDIA screen to lock/unlock, rename, delete, and generally manage the recording files.

1. Run the Smart Hub and then choose Recorded TV from the On TV screen or USB Drive from the bottom of the MULTIMEDIA screen.
2. Select a USB recording device. A list of recordings appears.

Saved File List Features

- **Sorting the Saved File List**

  Sorting with Sort by: Select Sort by at the top of the screen and then select a viewing mode. The list is sorted based on the selected viewing mode.

  Sorting with Filter: Select Filter at the top of the screen and then select a filter. The list is refreshed to only show files that match the selected filter.

- Options

Function	Description
Play Selected	Select files from the file list and then select Play. You can create a playlist.
Lock	To prevent to delete the files (recorded programme), you can lock the files (recorded programme).
Unlock	Use this option to unlock any locked files. Select the files and then select Unlock. This unlocks all selected files.
Delete	Deletes recording files. Select the files and then select Delete. This deletes all selected files.
Rename	Renames the file. Enter the new name using the keypad and then select Done to finish. The new name can be up to 29 characters long.
Index	When navigating a large number of media items, select a character. Media items starting with that character appear.
Manage Devices	Used to manage USB recording devices connected to the TV.

Setting Up a Schedule Viewing

Configure the TV to show a specific channel or programme at a specific time and date. The icon appears next to programmes that have been configured for a **Schedule Viewing**.

To set up a **Schedule Viewing**, you must first set the TV's clock. Go to **Clock** (**System** > **Time** > **Clock**).

Setting Up Schedule Viewing

Digital Channel Schedule Viewing

You can set up **Schedule Viewing** for programmes on digital channels on the following screens:

- **The Guide Screen**

  Select an upcoming programme from the **Guide** to set up a **Schedule Viewing** for it.

- **The Programme Info Screen**

  Select **INFO** to display information about the current programme. From the programme information screen, select right button to view information about the next programme, and press enter, to set up a **Schedule Viewing** or **Schedule Recording** for the upcoming programme.

Analogue Channel Schedule Viewing

Broadcasting > **Schedule Manager** Try Now

The **Schedule Viewing** function for programmes on analogue channels can be set up by specifying the time and date.

1. Select **Broadcasting** > **Schedule Manager**.
2. Select **Schedule** from the **Schedule Manager** to bring up a pop-up menu. Select **Schedule Viewing**.
3. Specify the **Aerial**, **Channel**, **Repeat**, and **Start Time** options for the programme you want to watch and then select **OK** to finish.

Managing the Schedule Viewing List

Broadcasting > **Schedule Manager**

You can change the settings of **Schedule Viewing** sessions or cancel scheduled sessions altogether.

Deleting Schedule Viewing Sessions

You can delete **Schedule Viewing** sessions.

1. Select **Broadcasting** > **Schedule Manager**.
2. Select a session from the **Schedule Manager**. A pop-up window appears.
3. Select **Delete**. This cancels the selected viewing session.

Editing Schedule Viewing Sessions

1. You can change the settings of **Schedule Viewing** sessions. Select **Broadcasting** > **Schedule Manager**.
2. Select a session from the **Schedule Manager**. A pop-up window appears.
3. Select **Edit** and change the settings of the selected session.
4. Once finished, select **OK**. This applies the changes you made to the selected viewing session.

Using Timeshift

Availability depends on the specific model and area.

Timeshift lets you pause and rewind live TV as you would a DVD. **Timeshift** is only available for digital channels and activating **Timeshift** disables the **Broadcasting** option.

Timeshift requirements:

- A USB recording device must be connected to the TV in order to use **Timeshift**.
- We recommend a USB hard disk drive with a minimum speed of 5,400rpm for use with the TV's **Timeshift** feature. USB memory sticks are not supported.
- Read all precautions before using the **Timeshift** function.

Press ► while watching TV to activate the **Timeshift** function. This activates **Timeshift** and displays a progress bar and the following buttons at the top of the screen:

- **Information**

  Displays detailed information about the current programme.

  The programme information may vary depending on the type of incoming signal and may not be available at all for certain programmes.

  This button is only available while watching a live programme.

- **Go to Live TV** / **Stop Timeshift**

  Watches the live TV or Exits the **Timeshift**. / You can watch the current programme by selecting this button while watching a recorded programme.

- **Pause**

  Pauses the screen.

  The following features are available while paused. However, audio is not supported while the video is paused.

  - **Step**: ❙❙ Scans the paused video one frame at a time.
  - **Slow Playback**: Select ◄◄ / ►► to play the video back at 1/4 the normal speed.

- **Rewind** / **Fast Forward**

  Slows down or speeds up playback by a factor of up to 5. To restore the normal playback speed, press ►.

  Fast Forward cannot be used while watching the Current Programme.

- **Channel List**

  Displays the channel list.

- **Tools**

  You can launch the Tools menu. Open the Tools menu to access the context menus available in Timeshift mode.

Using the Channel List

Broadcasting > Channel List Try Now

Launch the Channel List while watching TV to change channels or to see what's on other channels.

Select a channel from the Channel List to jump to it right away. To quickly scroll through the list, use the channel up/down buttons. This moves the focus one page at a time.

The Channel List screen contains the following icons:

- A : An analogue channel
- : A favourites channel
- : A locked channel

- **Using Options**

  Press < button to select Options. The following options are available:

Function	Description
Aerial	Choose between Terrestrial, Cable, and Satellite. Availability depends on the specific model and area.
Category	If you select a Category, its channels appear in the list among the TV's channels.
Sorting	Sort the list by Channel Number or by Name (Digital channels only).
Genre	Sort the list to include channels of the selected genre only. However, Genre can only be used channels contain the genre information. Check the network and make sure the TV is connected to the Internet. Your TV needs to be connected to the Internet in order to receive the channel's genre information.
Edit Favourites	Designate favourites channels.

- **Changing to Favourites**

  Press > button to select Favourites 1 through Favourites 5. This shows the selected list's channels. However, a Favourites list can only be selected if it contains at least one favourites channel. If you haven't created a Favourites list yet, you need to create one first.

Registering, Removing, and Editing Channels

Broadcasting > Edit Channel Try Now

Remove channels from the index of channel restore removed channels, and rename analogue channels. The Edit Channel screen icons indicate the following:

- A : An analogue channel
- : A favourites channel
- : A locked channel

Registering and Removing Channels

Broadcasting > Edit Channel

Removing Registered Channels

Remove registered channels from the index.

1. Select the channels you want to remove. Unselect channels by choosing them again. To select all the channels, select Options from the bottom of the screen and then select Select All from the list.
2. Once you have made your selection, select Delete from the bottom of the screen to remove the selected channels.

Editing Registered Channels

Broadcasting > Edit Channel

Select Options at the bottom of the screen to access the following options. However, the available options may vary depending on the broadcast signal.

- Select All

  Selects all channels displayed in the Edit Channel screen.

- Sorting

  (Digital channels only)

  Change the list ordered by Channel Name or Number.

- Aerial

  Choose between Terrestrial, Cable or Satellite.

  Availability depends on the specific model and area.

- **Category**

  If you select a **Category**, its channels appear in the list among the TV's channels.

- **Edit Favourites**

  Organise favourites lists to find favourite channels and switch between channels more easily.

- **Rename channel**

  Rename Analogue Channels. The new name can be up to 5 characters long.

- **Channel Info**

  Check the information of the channel.

- **Information**

  View detailed information about the current programme.

Enabling/Disabling Password Protection on Channels

Broadcasting > **Edit Channel**

You can lock channels you don't want your children to view.

To enable password protection, set **Channel Lock** to **On**. First, navigate to **Broadcasting** > **Channel Lock** and set it to **On**. Try Now

Locking/ Unlocking Channels

Select channels from the **Edit Channel** screen and then select **Lock** or **Unlock** at the bottom of the screen. When the password entry window appears, enter the password. This locks or unlocks the selected channels.

Edit Channel Number

Availability depends on the specific model and area.

Broadcasting > **Edit Channel Number**

Use this to change channel number. When channel number is changed, channel information is not updated automatically.

Creating a Personal Favourites List

Broadcasting > Edit Favourites Try Now

You can designate frequently watched channels as favourites. Favourites channels are highlighted in the Edit Channel and Channel List screens with the ♥ symbol. You can create up to 5 favourites channel lists.

Registering a Channel as Favourites

Broadcasting > Edit Favourites

Registering the Current Channel as a Favourites

Add the current channel to a Favourites list.

1. Select TOOLS while watching TV to display a list of options. Select Edit Favourites from the list.
2. From the pop-up window, select all the Favourites lists you want to add the current channel to and then select OK.
3. This adds the current channel to the selected Favourites list(s). Select OK.

Registering Multiple Channels as Favourites

It's possible to register multiple channels as favourites at the same time.

1. Select Broadcasting > Edit Favourites.
2. Select Category from the bottom of the screen to change the channel list to the one containing that channels you want to register.
3. Select the channels from the list in the middle of the screen.
4. Select Change Fav. and then change the Favourites 1 to the Favourites 5 you want to use.
5. Select Add.

Viewing Favourites List Channels Only

It's possible to flip through Favourites list channels using only the channel up/down buttons.

A Favourites list can only be selected if it contains at least one favourites channel.

1. Run **Channel List**. (**Broadcasting** > **Channel List**).
2. Press > button to select **Favourites 1** through **Favourites 5**.
3. Choose a channel from the selected Favourites list. This changes the channels and **Channel List** changes to the selected Favourites channel.

Editing a Favourites List

Broadcasting > **Edit Favourites**

You can rename and edit Favourites lists.

Edit Favourites Features

Select **Options** from the bottom of the **Edit Favourites** screen to access the following options:

- **Copy to Favourites**

  Copy channels from one favourites channels list to another.

  This can only be used when the focus has selected a channel registered to a Favourites list.

- **Rename Favourites**

  Rename an existing favourites channels list.

  This can only be used when the focus has selected a channel registered to a Favourites list.

- **Sorting**

  Change the list ordered by Channel **Name** or **Number**. This function is not available on analogue channel.

- **Aerial**

  Choose between **Terrestrial**, **Cable** or **Satellite**.

  Availability depends on the specific model and area.

- **Edit Channel**

  You can manage the channels saved on the TV.

- **Information**

  View detailed information about the current programme.

Removing Registered Channels from a Favourites List

Remove channels from a favourites channels list.

1. Select **Change Fav.** at the bottom of the screen and then change the Favourites list to the Favourites list you want to use.
2. Select the channels you want to remove from the selected Favourites list.
3. Select **Delete**.

Rearranging a Favourites List

Rearrange the order of the channels in a Favourites Channels List.

1. Select **Change Fav.** at the bottom of the screen and then change the Favourites list to the Favourites list you want to use.
2. From the selected Favourites list, select the channels you want to rearrange.
3. Select **Change order** from the bottom of the screen and then rearrange the selected channels. Press enter to finish.

Renaming a Favourites List

Rename an existing favourites channels list.

1. Select **Change Fav.** at the bottom of the screen and then change the Favourites list to the Favourites list you want to use.
2. Select **Options**. A list appears.
3. Select **Rename Favourites** from the list. A pop-up window appears. Rename the list in the pop-up window. The new name can be up to 20 characters long.

Copying a Favourites List to a Different Favourites List

Copy channels from one favourites channels list to another.

1. Select **Change Fav.** and then change the Favourites list on the side of the screen to the Favourites list you want to use.
2. From the Favourites list displayed on the side of the screen, select all the channels you want to copy.
3. Select **Options**. A list appears.
4. Select **Copy to Favourites** from the list. A pop-up window appears.
5. From the pop-up window that appears on the screen, select the Favourites lists you want to copy the selected channels to. This copies the selected channels to the selected Favourites lists.

> **Copy to Favourites** is only available when there are channels in the Favourites list.

Adding Realism to Sports

Availability depends on the specific model and area.

System > Football Mode Try Now

Football Mode enables optimal picture and sound settings for sports events, making them appear and sound as if you were actually there. In addition, it will be possible to use video recording and time shift functions at the same time while watching a sports event and manually or automatically designated highlight scenes if a recording device is connected to the TV when you are using Football Mode.

For more information about recording a programme and using a recording device, refer to the "Recording Programmes" section.

Whether Football Mode or Soccer Mode is displayed depends on the area.

For more information about the "Time Shift" feature, refer to the "Using Timeshift" section.

Using the colour buttons may be restricted in Soccer Mode while using the Data Service.

Enabling Football Mode

System > Football Mode > Football Mode

Select System > Football Mode and then set Football Mode to On. Picture and sound settings of the TV are automatically optimised for sports events.

Enabling Football Mode changes the Picture Mode to Stadium and the Sound Mode to Stadium, and disables some Picture and Sound menus.

Press ⚽ while watching TV to activate/deactivate Football Mode.

Extracting Highlights Automatically

System > Football Mode > Auto Highlights

Select System > Football Mode and set the Auto Highlights to On. You can set the TV to automatically save highlights without user intervention.

However, Auto Highlights is not available with these TV operations:

- Recording two channels simultaneously
- When Audio Description is set to On
- Switching the input signal using the SOURCE button
- When 3D mode is active

The Auto Highlights performance depends on the signal characteristics.

It is advisable to use Auto Highlights only while watching a soccer game. Using this for other sporting events may display irrelevant picture frames.

Functions Available in Football Mode

Press enter. The following buttons will appear.

- **Zoom**

  You can pause the current video and zoom in on one of 9 different sections of the screen. Pan the zoomed-in image using ∧, ∨, <, > buttons.

  > You cannot use this function when watching a 3D channel or when **PIP** or **MULTIMEDIA** is active.

  > When the **Data Service** is running, the **Zoom** is not available.

- **Manual Highlight**

  Pressing this button saves 10 seconds of video leading up to that point and 10 seconds of video that follows as a highlight.

  > This function can also be accessed using the B button.

  > Available only while recording is in progress.

  > Also possible to configure the TV to automatically save highlights without user intervention. Select **System** > **Football Mode** and then set **Auto Highlights** to **On**.

- **Stop Recording** / **Go to Live TV**

  Use this button while watching a live programme to stop recording it. Use while watching a recorded programme to watch a live programme.

  > Available only when recording is in progress.

- **Record**

  Start recording the sports event being watched.

  > Available only with the recording function supported.

- **Rewind**

  Rewind the current video. Select repeatedly to increase the rewind speed by up to max 5 steps.

  > Available only when recording is in progress.

- **Pause** / **Play**

  Pause/resume video.

  > Available only when recording is in progress.

- **Fast Forward**

  Fast forward the current video. Select repeatedly to increase the fast forward speed by up to max 5 steps.

  Available only when recording is in progress.

- **Highlights Player**

  Use **Highlights Player** to view manually or automatically saved highlight segments of the recording.

  However, **Highlights Player** is not available with these TV operations:

  - Recording two channels simultaneously
  - When **Audio Description** is set to **On**
  - Switching the input signal using the **SOURCE** button
  - When 3D mode is active

  Available only when recording is in progress.

- **Watch Live TV at the same time**

  Select while viewing a recorded programme to watch live TV on a PIP window. Press once more to exit PIP mode.

  However, **Watch Live TV at the same time** is not available with these TV operations:

  - Recording two channels simultaneously
  - When **Audio Description** is set to **On**
  - Switching the input signal using the **SOURCE** button
  - When 3D mode is active

  Available only when recording is in progress.

  Available only while watching a recorded programme.

- **Information**

  Displays detailed information about the current programme.

  Available only when recording is in progress.

- **Go to Social TV** / **SOCIAL TV**

  Used to launch an SNS app.

Viewing a Sports Event Recorded in Football Mode

View recorded sports events using the **Recorded TV** option in the **On TV** screen or the **USB Drive** option in the **MULTIMEDIA** screen.

TV-Viewing Support Features

Showing Subtitles

System > Accessibility > Subtitle Try Now

Show subtitles. Subtitles will be displayed when watching a broadcast that supports subtitles. Switches subtitles On or Off.

Press and hold the button on the Samsung Smart Control to turn on or off Subtitle.

DVD subtitles are only available if the DVD player is connected to an external input connector.

- Subtitle Mode

  Set the subtitle mode.

- Subtitle Language

  Set the subtitle language.

  The TV cannot control or modify DVD or Blu-ray subtitles. To control DVD or Blu-ray subtitles, use the subtitle feature of the DVD or Blu-ray player and the player's remote control.

Subtitle Options

System > Accessibility > Subtitle

Select a subtitle mode. The list of modes may vary depending on the broadcast.

- Primary Subtitle

  Set the primary subtitle language.

- Secondary Subtitle

  Set the secondary subtitle language.

Changing Teletext Language

Broadcasting > Channel Settings > Teletext Language

Availability depends on the specific model and area.

Use this to set the teletext language.

- Primary Teletext

  Set the primary teletext language.

- Secondary Teletext

  Set the secondary teletext language.

Digital Text

This function is only available in UK.

Broadcasting > **Channel Settings** > **Digital Text**

Availability depends on the specific model and area.

If the programme broadcasts with digital text, this feature is enabled.

MHEG (Multimedia and Hypermedia Information Coding Experts Group) An International standard for data encoding systems used in multimedia and hypermedia. This is at a higher level than the MPEG system which includes data-linking hypermedia such as still images, character service, animation, graphic and video files as well as multimedia data. MHEG is user runtime interaction technology and is being applied to various fields including VOD (Video-On-Demand), ITV (Interactive TV), EC (Electronic Commerce), tele education, teleconferencing, digital libraries and network games.

PIP Broadcast Viewing

Picture > **PIP** Try Now

Use the **PIP** (Picture-In-Picture) function to watch TV in a small window while also watching images from an external source such as a DVD player, a Blu-ray player, or a computer in the background.

Select **Picture** > **PIP** to display the PIP settings window. This settings window contains the following options:

- **PIP**

  Activates/deactivates **PIP**.

- **Aerial**

  Select the **PIP** sub-picture broadcast signal.

- **Channel**

  Select the **PIP** sub-picture channel.

- **Size**

  Select the **PIP** sub-picture size.

- **Position**

  Select the **PIP** sub-picture position.

- **Sound Select**

  Select the audio source.

Scanning for Available Channels

Broadcasting > **Auto Tuning** Try Now

Availability depends on the specific model and area.

Automatically scans and indexes all channels received through the TV's antenna input connector.

If there are saved channels, this feature deletes the existing list and then saves the newly scanned channels.

If the TV is connected to a cable box or satellite receiver, you do not need to do this.

1. Select **Broadcasting** > **Auto Tuning**.
2. Select **Start** when prompted. This initiates the Auto Programme function. The process can take up to 30 minutes to complete.

- **Auto Tuning**

  Scans for channels automatically and stores them in the TV's memory.

- **Cable Search Option** (when the aerial was set to **Cable**)

  Availability depends on the specific model and area.

  Sets additional search options such as the frequency and symbol rate for a cable network search.

- **Standby Auto Tuning**

  Availability depends on the specific model and area.

  Auto-tune channels while your TV is in standby mode.

- **Wake-up Timer**

  Availability depends on the specific model and area.

  Schedule timer to turn the TV on and scan channels automatically.

Aerial Connection Type

Broadcasting > **Aerial Connection Type** Try Now

Choose your aerial connection type **Dual** or **Single**.

This function is available when Aerial is set to Satellite.

Availability depends on the specific model and area.

Selecting the Broadcast Audio Options

Broadcasting > Audio Options Try Now

- Audio Language

  (Digital channels only)

  Change the default value for audio languages.

  Primary Audio: Set the primary audio language.

  Secondary Audio: Set the secondary audio language.

  The available language may differ depending on the broadcast.

- Audio Format

  (Digital channels only)

  Change a desired audio format. The supported audio format may vary depending on the broadcast programme.

Audio Description

System > Accessibility > Audio Description

(Not available in all locations) (Digital channels only)

This function handles the Audio Stream for the AD (Audio Description) which is sent along with the Main audio from the broadcaster.

Audio Description: Turn the audio description function on or off.

Volume: Adjust the audio description volume.

Genre Selection

Broadcasting > Genre Selection

Availability depends on the specific model and area.

Turn the channel genre selection feature on or off when you run Guide.

Adult genre enabling

Broadcasting > Adult genre enabling

Availability depends on the specific model and area.

Enables or disables all adult services. When disabled, adult services will not be available.

Using the Channel Settings

Broadcasting > Channel Settings

Country (Area)

Broadcasting > Channel Settings > Country (Area) Try Now

Select your country so that the TV can correctly auto-tune the broadcasting channels. This depends on the country or region.

When the PIN input screen appears,enter your 4 digit PIN number.

- Digital Channel

  Change the country for digital channels.

- Analogue Channel

  Change the country for analogue channels.

Manual Tuning

Broadcasting > Channel Settings > Manual Tuning Try Now

Scans for a channel manually and stores in the TV.

If a channel is locked using the Channel Lock function, the PIN input window appears.

This function depends on the country and region.

When Aerial Source is set to Terrestrial or Cable

- **Digital Channel Tuning**

  Scans for a digital channel.

1. Select the **New**.

   When selecting **Aerial** → **Terrestrial**: **Channel**, **Frequency**, **Bandwidth**

   When selecting **Aerial** → **Cable**: **Frequency**, **Modulation**, **Symbol Rate**

2. Select the **Search**. When scanning has finished, a channel is updated in the channel list.

- **Analogue Channel Tuning**

  Scans for an analogue channel.

1. Select the **New**.
2. Set the **Programme**, **Colour System**, **Sound System**, **Channel** and **Search**.
3. Select the **Store**. When scanning has finished, a channel is updated in the channel list.

Channel mode

- **P** (programme mode)

  When tuning is complete, the broadcasting stations in your area have been assigned to position numbers from P0 to P99. You can select a channel by entering the position number in this mode.

- **C** (aerial channel mode) / **S** (cable channel mode)

  These two modes allow you to select a channel by entering the assigned number for each aerial broadcasting station or cable channel.

Fine-Tuning the Screen

Broadcasting > **Channel Settings** > **Fine Tune** Try Now

Available for analogue broadcasts only.

Analogue pictures can become shaky and full of noise. If this happens, you can fine-tune the signal and/or reduce noise to clear up the picture.

1. Select **Channel Settings** > **Fine Tune**. An adjustment bar appears on the screen.
2. Make adjustments using the Samsung Smart Control until the picture clears up and then select **Save** or **Close**. Select **Reset** to reset the Fine-Tune operation.

Transfer Channel List

Broadcasting > Channel Settings > Transfer Channel List Try Now

Imports or exports the channel map. When the PIN input screen appears, enter the PIN.

You should connect a USB storage device to use this function.

- Import from USB: Import channel list from USB.
- Export to USB: Export channel list to USB. This function is available when USB is connected.

Delete CAM Operator Profile

Broadcasting > Channel Settings > Delete CAM Operator Profile Try Now

Select the CAM operator to delete.

Satellite System

Availability depends on the specific model and area.

Broadcasting > Channel Settings > Satellite System Try Now

A set of satellite dish settings must be configured for each wanted satellite before performing a channel scan.

Satellite System is available when Aerial is set to Satellite. When the PIN input screen appears, enter the PIN.

- Satellite Selection: You can choose the satellites for this TV.
- LNB Power: Enables or disables the power supply for the LNB. Try Now
- LNB Settings: Configures the outdoor equipment. Try Now

  Satellite: Selects the satellite for receiving digital broadcasts.

  Transponder: Selects a transponder from the list or adds a new transponder.

  DiSEqC Mode: Selects DiSEqC mode for the selected LNB.

  Lower LNB Oscillators: Sets the LNB oscillators to a lower frequency.

  Upper LNB Oscillators: Sets the LNB oscillators to a higher frequency.

  Tone 22 kHz: Selects the Tone 22 kHz depending on the LNB type. For a universal LNB it should be Auto.

- **Positioner Settings**: Configures the aerial positioner. Try Now

  Positioner: Enables or disables the positioned control.

  Positioner Type: Sets the positioned type between DiSEqC 1.2 and USALS (Universal Satellite Automatic Location System).

  - **My Longitude**: Sets the longitude for my location.
  - **My Latitude**: Sets the latitude for my location.
  - **Satellite Longitude Settings**: Sets the longitude of user defined satellites.

  User Mode: Sets the position of satellite aerial according to each satellite.

  If you store the current position of satellite aerial according to a certain satellite, when the signal of that satellite is needed, the satellite aerial can be moved to pre-populated position.

  - **Satellite**: Selects the satellite to set the position for.
  - **Transponder**: Selects a transponder from the list for signal reception.
  - **Moving Mode**: Selects the movement mode between discrete and continuous movement.
  - **Step Size**: Adjusts the step size degrees for the aerial rotation. Step Size is available when Moving Mode is set to Step.
  - **Go To Stored Position**: Rotates the aerial to the stored satellite position.
  - **Aerial Position**: Adjusts and stores the aerial position for the selected satellite.
  - **Store Current Position**: Stores current position as the selected positioner limit.

  Installer Mode: Sets limits to the scope of movement of satellite aerial or reset the position. Generally, installation guide uses this function.

  - **Limit Position**: Selects the direction of the positioner Limit.
  - **Aerial Position**: Adjusts and stores the aerial position for the selected satellite.
  - **Store Current Position**: Stores the current position as the selected positioner Limit.
  - **Go to zero**: Moves the aerial to the reference position.
  - **Reset positioner limit**: Allows the aerial to rotate over the full arc.
- **Reset all settings**: All satellite settings will be reset to the initial values.

Common Interface

Broadcasting > Common Interface Try Now

- **CI Menu**

  Enables the user to select from the CAM-provided menu. Select the CI menu based on the menu PC Card.

- **CAM video transcoding**

  You can configure the setting to transcode the video codec from the CAM automatically. Turn it **Off** if you do not want to use it.

  You must use a CAM that supports video codec transcoding.

- **Application Info**

  View information about the CAM inserted into the CI slot and about the “CI or CI+ CARD” inserted into the CAM. You can install the CAM any time, with or without the TV turned on.

1. Purchase a CI CAM module at your nearest dealer or by phone.
2. Firmly insert the “CI or CI+ CARD” into the CAM in the direction of the arrow.
3. Insert the CAM with the “CI or CI+ CARD” into the common interface slot, in the direction of the arrow so that it aligns parallel with the slot.
4. Check if you can see a picture on a scrambled signal channel.

- **CICAM PIN Manager**

  Manage CICAM (Common Interface Common Access Module) PIN. Save PIN or change stored PIN and then set other PIN options.

Changing the Picture Mode and Adjusting the Picture Quality

Choosing the Right Picture Mode for the Viewing Environment

Picture > Picture Mode Try Now

The following picture modes utilise different contrast and brightness settings to provide the best viewing experience for the environment.

When connected to a PC via an HDMI-to-DVI cable, only the **Standard** and **Entertain** modes can be chosen.

- **Dynamic**

  If the ambient lighting is too bright and makes the screen blurry, use this mode to make the picture clearer.

- **Standard**

  This is the default mode suitable for most environments.

- **Natural**

  This mode is useful for reducing eye strain.

- **Movie**

  Appropriate for darkened rooms, for watching movies, and when experiencing eye fatigue. Darkens the screen and reduces glare.

- **Entertain**

  Sharpens images for a more dynamic viewing experience.

  This mode is only available when connected to a computer via an HDMI-to-DVI cable.

Adjusting the Picture Quality for Each Picture Mode

Picture > **Backlight**, **Contrast**, **Brightness**, **Sharpness**, **Colour** or **Tint (G/R)**

Select one of the settings to display its slide bar. Change the adjustment value using <, >. Change the item using ∧, ∨. Adjusted values are applied to the current source and picture mode.

> The **Colour** and **Tint (G/R)** settings cannot be adjusted when the TV is connected to a computer via an HDMI to DVI cable.

Choose a **Picture Mode** and then adjust the settings.

- **Backlight** Try Now

  Adjusts the brightness of individual pixels. Decreasing the brightness reduces power consumption.

- **Contrast** Try Now

  Adjusts the screen contrast.

- **Brightness** Try Now

  Adjusts the overall brightness.

- **Sharpness** Try Now

  Sharpens or dulls the edges of objects.

- **Colour** Try Now

  Adjusts the overall colour saturation.

- **Tint (G/R)** Try Now

  Adjusts the ratio of green to red. Increase the green value to saturate the greens and the red value to saturate the reds.

  > Adjusted values are saved by the TV for the current source and picture mode, and remain in effect each time the source and picture mode are selected. Consequently, the TV can have different picture settings for each external source.

Applying the Current Picture Settings to Other Input Sources

Picture > **Apply Picture Mode** Try Now

You can apply the picture quality setting that you configured for the TV to all external devices connected to the TV or to the current source only.

To apply the setting to all external devices connected to the TV, select **All Sources**. To apply the setting to the current input only, select **Current Source**.

Fine-Tuning Each Picture Mode (Advanced Settings)

Picture > **Advanced Settings** Try Now

Select **Picture** > **Advanced Settings** to fine-tune how images are displayed on the TV screen for each **Picture Mode**.

- **Advanced Settings** is only available when the **Picture Mode** is set to **Standard** or **Movie**.
- When the TV is connected to a computer via an HDMI-DVI cable, only **White Balance** and **Gamma** can be adjusted.

Choose a **Picture Mode** and then adjust the settings.

- **Dynamic Contrast** Try Now

  Automatically adjusts the screen contrast. Use this option to achieve the optimal contrast setting.

- **Black Tone** Try Now

  Adjusts the black colour depth.

- **Flesh Tone** Try Now

  Darkens or lightens skin tones.

- **RGB Only Mode** Try Now

  Adjusts the red, green, and blue levels individually.

- **Colour Space** Try Now

  Adjusts the range of colours that can be displayed on screen. **Auto** automatically adjusts the colour space depending on the input signal. **Native** applies a range that is wider than the input signal. **Custom** allows you to adjust the colour space manually.

- **White Balance** Try Now

  Adjust the colour temperature of the picture to make white objects look white, and the overall picture appear natural.

  2 Point: Adjust each of the 3 colour's luminosity with the offset menu and the brightness with the gain menu. To restore the default values, select **Reset**.

  10 Point: Adjust the white balance by adjusting the brightness of each of the 10 sections of red, green, and blue colours of the input signal. To choose a section, select a desired section in **Level** field.

  > You can use the **10 Point** function only when the **Picture Mode** is set to **Movie**. Some external devices may not support this.

- **Gamma** Try Now

  Adjusts the primary colour intensity.

- **Motion Lighting** Try Now

  > Availability depends on the specific model and area.

  Adjusts the brightness in response to on-screen movements to reduce power consumption.

  > This feature is only available when the **Picture Mode** is set to **Standard** and is not available in 3D mode.

  > Adjusting the **Contrast**, **Brightness**, and other picture quality settings deactivates the feature.

Adjusting the Picture for Easier Viewing (Picture Options)

Picture > **Picture Options** Try Now

Select **Picture** > **Picture Options** to make additional adjustments for an easier viewing experience.

> When the TV is connected to a computer via an HDMI-DVI cable, only **Colour Tone** can be adjusted.

Choose a **Picture Mode** and then adjust the settings.

- **Colour Tone** Try Now

  Adjusts the colour tone. The setting is applied on an individual **Picture Mode** basis. When a **Picture Mode** is changed, the corresponding setting will be applied automatically.

  > If the **Picture Mode** is set to **Dynamic**, you will only be able to choose **Cool** or **Standard**.

- **Digital Clean View** Try Now

  Reduces static and ghosting caused by a weak signal. Selecting **Auto Visualisation** displays the signal strength at the bottom the screen. Green indicates the best possible signal.

  > Available for analogue channels only.

- **MPEG Noise Filter** Try Now

  Reduces MPEG noise and improves video quality.

- **HDMI Black Level** Try Now

  Some external devices connected to the TV via an HDMI cable can have issues, such as low black level, low contrast, and dull colours. Use HDMI Black Level to adjust the black level to compensate.

  > This is only available when using an external device connected to the TV via an HDMI connector.

- **HDMI UHD Color**

  If an external UHD player is connected to the TV, follow these steps to convert the TV's HDMI connector to a mode optimised for the UHD 50P/60P signals.

  > Each HDMI connector can be individually optimised for **HDMI UHD Color**. However, **HDMI UHD Color** is available only with a video source featuring the specification of UHD 50P/60P 4:4:4 and 4:2:2.

1. Turn off the external UHD player, and then disconnect the HDMI cable between the TV and the external device.
2. Navigate to **Picture** > **Picture Options**, and then select **HDMI UHD Color**. The Settings screen appears.
3. In the Settings screen, set the UHD player-connected HDMI connector to **On**. A popup window appears.
4. Select **Yes**. The TV automatically turns off and then on again to set the selected HDMI connector to **HDMI UHD Color**.

   > Before selecting **Yes** from the popup window, make sure that the HDMI cable is not connected to the TV. The **HDMI UHD Color** settings will be completed only when the HDMI cable is not connected to the HDMI connector.

5. When the settings are complete, a confirmation message will be displayed. Select **OK**.
6. Connect the TV to the external UHD player using the HDMI cable, and then turn on the external UHD player.

   > After setting the HDMI connector to **On**, it takes some time to complete the conversion.

   > If the HDMI connector with **HDMI UHD Color** enabled is connected to a device that does not support UHD content, the device may not operate properly. If this is the case, set **HDMI UHD Color** for the HDMI connector to Off.

   > The HDMI connector with **HDMI UHD Color** set to Off supports up to UHD 50P/60P 4:2:0, while the HDMI connector with **HDMI UHD Color** set to On supports up to UHD 50P/60P 4:4:4 and 4:2:2. For more information, refer to "Supported Resolutions for UHD".

- **Film Mode** Try Now

  Optimises the picture quality for movies. Select this mode for watching movies.

  This feature is only available when watching TV or when the input signal is AV, Component (480i, 1080i), or HDMI (1080i).

- **Motion Plus** Try Now

  Availability depends on the specific model and area.

  Removes blurring and judder from scenes with rapid movement. If you select **Custom**, you can configure Blur Reduction and Judder Reduction manually and set **LED Clear Motion** on for a sharper LED image.

  The Info screen on your TV displays the resolution and frequency of the incoming signal (60Hz), but not the frequency the TV is generating for the image it is displaying by using **Motion Plus** function.

  If noise occurs on the screen, please set up the **Motion Plus** to **Off**.

  If **LED Clear Motion** is **On** at 60Hz video signal, the screen may flicker.

  Reset: Reset the custom settings to the factory defaults.

  If you have Motion Plus on, and then bring up the INFO screen, the INFO screen displays the resolution and frequency of the incoming video signal (60Hz). This frequency is not the same as the frequency of the picture the TV is displaying when Motion Plus is on.

- **Smart LED**

  This controls the brightness of individual areas on screen to maximum contrast automatically.

  This function is not supported depending on the region or model.

Viewing in 3D

Availability depends on the specific model and area.

Picture > **3D** Try Now

The 3D option lets you view 3D media content and broadcasts. You will need to wear Samsung 3D Active Glasses to play 3D content. IR-type Samsung 3D Active Glasses and third-party 3D glasses are not supported.

Carefully read the health and safety information concerning 3D viewing before viewing 3D content. Refer to the "3D Precautions" section for more information.

Whether 3D video is displayed in true HD is usually determined by the quality of the content.

Starting 3D

1. Play 3D content or turn on a channel that's showing a 3D broadcast.
2. Put the Samsung 3D glasses on and then select **3D**. 3D viewing is enabled.

The ideal viewing distance is three times the height of the screen or more. 3D images may not appear if you do not adhere to the recommended viewing angle or distance.

The 3D feature may not work properly if there is another 3D product or an electronic device running nearby. If there is a problem, keep other electronic devices as far away as possible from the 3D Active Glasses.

The left and right 3D images may initially overlap when the TV is turned on. It takes a moment for the display to optimise for the overlapping to go away.

There are several restrictions when using 3D TV:

- Launching Smart Hub automatically disables 3D mode.
- **PIP** cannot be used.
- Certain **Picture** options are disabled.

Changing the 3D Mode

Availability depends on the specific model and area.

Picture > **3D** > **3D Mode** Try Now

1. Launch 3D and then select **3D Mode** under **Picture** > **3D**.
2. Choose from the 3D modes that appear on the screen. Supported **3D Mode** may vary depending on the 3D content.

   3D Mode is automatically configured for most 3D content.

The following **3D Mode** is available. However, mode availability may vary depending on the 3D content's format.

The supported resolutions vary for each mode. Refer to the "Supported Resolutions for each 3D Mode" section for more information.

- Off (Off)

  Deactivates 3D viewing.

- 2D→3D (Normal)

  Converts normal images to 3D images.

  Some formats do not support this mode.

- (L/R)

  Splits a single image into left and right overlapping images to create the 3D effect.

- (T/B)

  Splits a single image into top and bottom overlapping images to create the 3D effect.

Adjusting the 3D Effect

Availability depends on the specific model and area.

Picture > 3D

Configure the viewpoint, depth, and other 3D settings for a custom viewing experience.

- **Adjusting the 3D perspective** Try Now

  Availability depends on the specific model and area.

  Select Picture > 3D > 3D Perspective. Use the adjustment bar shown on the screen to adjust the perspective.

- **Adjusting the 3D Depth** Try Now

  Availability depends on the specific model and area.

  Select Picture > 3D > Depth. Use the adjustment bar shown on the screen to adjust the depth.

  This option cannot be used if 3D mode is set to (L/R) or (T/B).

- **Reversing the Left/Right 3D Images** Try Now

  Select Picture > 3D > L/R Change. This option is used to reverse the left and right images.

- **Displaying 3D Content in 2D** Try Now

  Select Picture > 3D > 3D → 2D. This option is used to enable 2D viewing of 3D content.

  This function is not available if 3D mode is set to (Normal) or Off (Off).

Picture Support Functions

PIP Broadcast Viewing

Picture > **PIP**

Use the **PIP** ("Picture-In-Picture") function to watch TV in a small window while also watching content from a DVD player, Blu-ray player, computer, or a different external device in the background.

Select **Picture** > **PIP** to display the PIP settings window. This settings window contains the following options:

- **PIP**

  Activates/deactivates **PIP**.

- **Aerial**

  Select the **PIP** sub-picture broadcast signal.

- **Channel**

  Select the **PIP** sub-picture channel.

- **Size**

  Select the **PIP** sub-picture size.

- **Position**

  Select the **PIP** sub-picture position.

- **Sound Select**

  Select the audio source.

Changing the Picture Size and Position

Choosing the Right Screen Size

Picture > **Picture Size** > **Picture Size** Try Now

Most TV programmes and videos are displayed in full screen, but some programmes and videos are larger or smaller. Change the screen size for such programmes and videos so that the picture fits the screen better.

Supported screen sizes vary depending on the input signal. Refer to the "Picture Sizes and Input Signals" section for more information about supported screen sizes.

The **Picture Size** option is not available for images in the UHD resolution because the supported screen size is fixed.

- **Auto Wide**

  Automatically adjusts the picture size to the 16:9 aspect ratios.

- **16:9**

  Set the picture to the 16:9 wide-screen format.

- **Wide Zoom**

  Magnifies the picture size more than 4:3. A magnified picture can be moved up and down.

- **Zoom**

  Magnifies the 16:9 wide pictures vertically to fit the screen size. A magnified picture can be moved up and down.

  Zoom is not available when **Picture Size** set to **Wide Zoom**.

- **4:3**

  Sets the picture to basic 4:3 mode.

⚠ **Do not leave the TV in 4:3 mode for an extended period. The dark borders displayed on the left and right / top and bottom of the screen may cause image retention. This phenomenon can appear on LED and PDP TVs. (Screen burn - this phenomenon can appear on PDP TVs.) This is not covered by the warranty.**

- **Screen Fit**

  Displays the full image without any cutoff.

- **Smart View 1**

  Reduces a 16:9 picture by 50%.

- **Smart View 2**

  Reduces a 16:9 picture by 25%.

Adjusting the Screen Position

Picture > **Picture Size** > **Zoom/Position** or **Position**

Adjusts the screen position.

This option is only available with **Picture Size** set to **Wide Zoom**, **Zoom**, or **Screen Fit**. When the TV is tuned to a digital channel, the screen position cannot be adjusted if the **Picture Size** is set to **Screen Fit**.

The Picture Size option is not available for images in the UHD resolution be cause the supported screen size is fixed.

1. To adjust the screen's position, select **Picture** > **Picture Size** > **Zoom/Position** or **Position**. A pop-up window appears.
2. Select **Zoom** or **Position** again from the pop-up window.
3. Adjust the screen. Once done, select **Zoom** or **Position** and then **Close**. Select **Reset** to reset the screen position.

Adjusting the 4:3 Screen Size

Picture > **Picture Size** > **4:3 Screen Size** Try Now

Available only when picture size is set to Auto Wide. You can determine the desired picture size at the 4:3 WSS (Wide Screen Service) size or the original size. Each European country requires different picture size.

Not available in Component or HDMI mode.

Listening to Audio Only with the Screen Turned Off (Picture Off)

Picture > **Picture Off** Try Now

Turns off the screen and plays audio through the speakers only. To turn the screen back on, press any button other than the **TV** and **VOLUME** buttons.

Resetting the Picture Mode Settings

Picture > **Reset Picture** Try Now

Use this option to reset the current **Picture Mode** to its factory settings. This does not affect the settings of other Picture Modes.

Changing the Sound Mode and Using Sound Effects

Choosing the Right Sound Mode for the Environment

Sound > Sound Mode Try Now

Sound modes apply preset adjustments to the sound output, optimised for different viewing and listening circumstances.

The sound modes cannot be used when you are listening to audio through external speakers.

- Standard

  This is the normal sound mode.

- Music

  This mode emphasises normal music instead of voice.

- Movie

  This mode is calibrated to provide the best sound for movies.

- Clear Voice

  This mode emphasises voice.

- Amplify

  This mode increases the overall intensity of high-frequency sounds for a better listening experience. It is designed for hearing-impaired listeners.

- Stadium

  Setting Football Mode (System > Football Mode) to On automatically configures Sound Mode to Stadium for a more realistic viewing experience.

  Stadium cannot be selected by the user.

Using Sound Effects

Sound > Sound Effect Try Now

Use sound effects to alter how the TV projects sound.

Restrictions:

- Sound effects can only be used with the Sound Mode set to Standard.
- Sound effects cannot be used when you are listening to audio through external speakers.

Choose a Sound Effect and then adjust the settings.

- Virtual Surround Try Now

  Produces sound that will make you feel like you are sitting in a movie theatre or concert hall.

- Dialog Clarity Try Now

  Increases voice intensity to make dialog clearer.

- Equaliser Try Now

  Lets you adjust the speaker balance and make bandwidth adjustments. Select Reset to reset the settings.

Sound Support Functions

Selecting Speakers

Sound > Speaker Settings > TV Sound Output Try Now

This lets you choose which speakers the TV uses for audio output. To listen to the audio through the speakers of a connected receiver or home theatre only, select Receiver or Audio Out. To listen to audio through the TV's speakers and the speakers of a connected AV receiver or home theatre simultaneously, select TV Speaker. If this causes an echo effect, choose any speaker option other than TV Speaker to mute the TV speakers, or turn off the receiver or home theatre.

Using external speakers alone disables the volume button and the mute function. In addition, certain Sound options will also be disabled.

Designating the TV's Installation Type

Sound > Speaker Settings > TV Speaker > TV Installation Type

Specify the TV's installation type. Choose between Wall Mount and Stand to optimise the TV's sound automatically.

Listening to TV Sound through Samsung Bluetooth or Wi-Fi Audio

Sound > Speaker Settings > TV Speaker > SoundShare Settings

Connect the TV to a Samsung audio device for a richer, clearer sound.

This option is only available for Samsung audio devices that support SoundShare.

You can't use Bluetooth headphones, SoundShare Settings and Surround features simultaneously.

Pair the Samsung audio device using the TV's Bluetooth function. Refer to the Samsung audio device's operating manual for more information on pairing.

- SoundShare Settings

  Samsung Audio Device List

  Displays a list of paired Samsung audio devices. Select a device to display its menu options. You can activate/deactivate the audio device or remove it from the list.

  Add New Device

  Enables/disables SoundShare. The connection signals from new devices are ignored if Add New Device is set to Off.

  When listening to TV audio through a Samsung audio device, certain types of content may produce video-to-audio synching issues.

Listening to TV Sound through Samsung Multiroom Link compatible Speakers

Sound > **Speaker Settings** > **TV Speaker** > **Multiroom Link**

Configure this product for connection to a Samsung Multiroom Link compatible speaker and enjoy rich sound.

- To use this feature, at least one Samsung Multiroom Link compatible speaker must be connected.
- Sound quality may be affected by the condition of the wireless network.
- Network connection status can be negatively influenced and even can be lost, if the network environment getting worse by time.
- Activating **Screen Mirroring** disables **Multiroom Link**.
- For further details, refer to the Multiroom Link manual from the web site. (www.samsung.com > SUPPORT > Firmware Manuals & Downloads)
- The audio from each device may lag behind the video and audio of the device which is playing the source contents.
- While playing the **Multi-Link Screen**, you can hear the selected audio.

- **Settings**

  Set the configuration of Samsung Multiroom Link compatible speaker(s) you connected to the TV.

  – **Multiroom Link**

    Surround: Set numbers of Samsung Multiroom Link compatible speaker(s) in a space and enjoy surround system.

    Multiroom: Configure the Samsung Multiroom Link compatible speaker so that all play the same, combined audio. Channels are ignored.

    SoundBar+Surround: If you have connected a Sound Bar, set **SoundBar+Surround** to rear speakers. The Sound Bar already includes the Center and Front Left and Right channels.

  – **Volume Level**

    Adjust the volume of each speaker individually or all speakers at once.

  – **Speaker Test**

    Send a test sound to each speaker to make sure your system is working properly.

  – **Edit Name**

    You can give each speaker a name.

Enabling the Sound (Additional Settings)

Sound > Additional Settings Try Now

Configure additional settings for optimum audio output.

- DTV Audio Level Try Now

  (Digital channels only)

  The TV cannot freely control the volume of the digital audio that it sends to the AV receiver. Use this to set the digital audio volume at a comfortable level.

  According to the type of broadcast signal, MPEG / HE-AAC can be adjusted between -10dB and 0dB.

  To increase or decrease the volume, adjust between the range 0 and -10 respectively.

- Audio Format, Audio Delay

  This Smart TV is SPDIF-enabled. The Sony Philips Digital Interface (SPDIF) provides digital audio output to speakers and various digital devices, including A/V Receivers and home theatres.

  Audio Format Try Now

  Selects the Digital Audio output (SPDIF) format. The available Digital Audio output (SPDIF) formats may vary depending on the input source.

  Audio Delay Try Now

  This setting helps correct timing mismatches between the audio and video tracks when you are watching TV and listening to audio through a digital audio device. Enabling the feature displays a slide bar that you can use to adjust the delay by up to 250ms.

- Dolby Digital Comp Try Now

  Some digital TV programmes provide 5.1-channel Dolby audio. This TV converts Dolby audio to stereo audio so that it can play the sound through the TV's speakers. There are two methods to choose from. RF is for better sound at lower volumes, and Line is for higher volumes.

- Auto Volume Try Now

  When you change channels, video sources, or content, Auto Volume automatically adjusts the TV's volume level so that the volume level remains the same for all sources. For example, if you switch from a streaming video application to a Blu-ray player or a favourite TV channel, Auto Volume can modify the volume up to 12db to equalise the sound.

  The Auto Volume function has two settings: Normal and Night. Normal applies a normal level of volume adjustment. Night applies a slightly lower volume level and is ideal for late-night TV viewing. If you want to use the volume control of a connected source device to control the sound, deactivate the Auto Volume function. When you use the Auto Volume function with a source device, the device's volume control may not function properly.

Listening to 3D Audio in 3D Mode

Availability depends on the specific model and area.

Sound > **3D Audio** Try Now

3D audio technology provides immersive sound that matches the pop-up effect of 3D video by using perspective in the audio depth control.

Only available in 3D mode.

Resetting All Sound Settings

Sound > **Reset Sound** Try Now

Use to reset all sound settings to the factory default

Setting the Time and Using the Timer

Setting the Current Time

System > Time > Clock Try Now

Set the clock manually or automatically. Once the clock has been set, you can select the INFO button to check the current time.

The clock must be reset every time the power is disconnected.

Setting the Clock using Digital Broadcast Info

System > Time > Clock > Clock Mode Try Now

Set Clock Mode to Auto. The TV automatically downloads the correct time from a digital channel. To enable this option, the TV's Antenna jack must be connected to either an antenna or a cable output and must be receiving digital broadcasts. The accuracy of the time information received may vary depending on the channel and signal. If your TV is connected to a set-top-box or satellite box using HDMI or Component connections, you must set the time manually.

Availability depends on the specific model and area.

If the Clock is Wrong in Auto Mode...

System > Time > Clock > Time Offset Try Now

If the time set automatically is incorrect, you can offset the clock in 1-hour increments by as much as -/+ 12 hours. Select System > Time > Clock > Time Offset and offset the clock to the correct time.

Time Offset adjusts the time through network connections and is only available if the Clock Mode is set to Auto and the TV is connected to the Internet though a local area network.

Time Offset will adjust the time if the TV fails to receive time information through normal digital broadcast signals.

Setting the Clock Manually

Manually enter the time. Set Clock Mode to Manual and then select Clock Set to enter the current time and date.

Clock Set: Set the current Date and Time.

Time Zone: Select your time zone.

This function is only available when the Clock Mode is set to Auto.

DST: Switches the DST (Daylight Saving Time) function on or off.

This function is only available when the Clock Mode is set to Auto.

GMT: Selects your time zone.

When Country is set to others, you can use this function.

Using the Timers

Using the Sleep Timer

System > **Time** > **Sleep Timer** Try Now

This automatically shuts off the TV after a preconfigured period of time. Select **System** > **Time** > **Sleep Timer**. You can set the timer up to 180 minutes in 30-minute increments.

Turning On the TV using On Timer

System > **Time** > **On Timer** Try Now

Set the On Timer so that the TV turns on automatically at a chosen time. Select **System** > **Time** > **On Timer**. The timer configuration window appears. Configure the following settings:

The **On Timer** is only available if the **Clock** has been set.

- **Setup**

  Specify the dates and the duration. Use **Manual** to specify the days of the week.

- **Time**

  Set the time that the TV turns on automatically.

- **Volume**

  Specify the volume when the TV turns on.

- **Source**

  Select the signal source from the list. Specify the channel or source to be displayed when the TV turns on. To specify a USB device, a USB device must first be connected to the TV. To play media from an HDMI or Component source such as a DVD player or Blu-ray player, the device must already be turned on, and playing the media when the TV is turned on.

- **Aerial**

  Set the **Source** to **TV** to select a broadcast signal.

- **Channel**

  Set the **Source** to **TV** to select a channel.

- **Music** / **Photo**

  Set the **Source** to **USB** to choose a USB folder that contains music or photo files. Selecting both music and image files plays the music files and displays the images at the same time.

Restrictions:

- This feature will not function properly if the selected USB device does not contain media files or a folder has not been specified.
- The slideshow will not start if there is only one image file on the USB device.
- Folders with long names cannot be selected.
- Always use different folder names for multiple USB devices.
- Use a USB memory stick or multi-card reader. The **On Timer** may not work with certain battery-powered USB devices, MP3 players, or PMPs because the TV may take too long to recognise the device.

Turning Off the TV Using Off Timer

System > **Time** > **Off Timer** Try Now

Set the Off Timer to turn the TV off automatically at a specific time. Select **System** > **Time** > **Off Timer**. The timer configuration window appears. Configure the following settings:

The **Off Timer** is only available if the **Clock** has been set.

- **Setup**

  Specify the dates and the duration. Use **Manual** to specify the days of the week.

- **Time**

  Set the time that the TV turns off automatically.

Using the Screen Burn Protection and Energy Saving Features

Preventing Screen Burn

System > **Auto Protection Time** Try Now

Still images can leave burned-in after-images on the screen if left for a long time. Use Screen Burn Protection to protect the screen. Select **System** > **Auto Protection Time** and then choose a time setting from the list. If a still image is shown on the screen for longer than the time you selected, the TV will automatically activate Screen Burn Protection to prevent burned-in after- images that may damage the screen.

Using Energy Saving Features

System > **Eco Solution** Try Now

Eco Solution adjusts the TV's brightness level and prevents overheating to reduce overall power consumption.

- **Energy Saving** Try Now

  Select a brightness setting from the list to reduce the TV's power consumption.

- **Eco Sensor** Try Now

  Automatically adjusts the TV's brightness level based on the ambient light level to reduce the TV's power consumption. If the Eco Sensor has adjusted the screen's brightness level, you can manually adjust the screen's minimum brightness level by adjusting the **Min. Backlight**. Changing the **Picture** menu's **Backlight** setting while **Eco Sensor** is running automatically disables **Eco Sensor**.

- **No Signal Power Off** Try Now

  Select a time from the list. If no signal is received for the specified duration, the TV automatically cuts off the power to reduce power consumption.

- **Auto Power Off** Try Now

  If the TV remains turned on for four hours without any user input, the TV will automatically turn off to prevent overheating.

Using Anynet+ (HDMI-CEC)

Use Anynet+ (HDMI-CEC) to control all external devices that support HDMI-CEC using just the TV's remote control. Note that Anynet+ (HDMI-CEC) only works with the TV's remote control and not with the panel keys.

You can configure the TV's universal remote function to control third-party cable boxes, Blu-ray players, and home theatres that do not support HDMI-CEC using the TV's remote control.

Anynet+ Requirements:

- Anynet+ cannot be used to control external devices that do not support HDMI-CEC.
- Anynet+ devices must be connected to the TV using an HDMI cable. Some HDMI cables may not support Anynet+ (HDMI-CEC). In this case, you will need to replace the HDMI cable.
- The TV remote control may not function under certain circumstances. If this occurs select the Anynet+ device again.
- Anynet+ (HDMI-CEC) only works with external devices that support HDMI-CEC and only when those devices are either in standby mode or turned on.
- Anynet+ (HDMI-CEC) can control up to 12 compatible external devices (up to 3 of the same type). With home theatre systems, however, the number of systems that can be controlled is limited to one.
- To listen to 5.1-channel audio from an external device, connect the device to the TV via an HDMI cable and the device's digital audio output connector directly to the home theatre system.
- A home theatre system that has been connected to the TV using an HDMI cable and an optical cable supports 2-channel audio only. 5.1-channel audio is, however, available for digital broadcasts with 5.1-channel audio.

Setting Up Anynet+ (HDMI-CEC)

System > Anynet+ (HDMI-CEC) Try Now

- Anynet+ (HDMI-CEC) Try Now

  Enables/disables Anynet+ (HDMI-CEC). Set to Off to disable all Anynet+ related features. Set to On to enable all Anynet+ (HDMI-CEC) related features.

- Auto Turn Off Try Now

  When set to Yes, turns off Anynet+ (HDMI-CEC) compatible external devices when the TV is turned off.

  Some Anynet+ (HDMI-CEC) compatible devices do not support this feature.

- Search for Devices Try Now

  Search for Anynet+ (HDMI-CEC) compatible devices.

Using Anynet+ (HDMI-CEC)

Selecting an External Device

1. Select TOOLS. The **Tools** list appears.
2. Select **Anynet+ (HDMI-CEC)** from the list. The **Select Device** screen appears.
3. Select a device and wait for the switch to take place. This process may take up to 2 minutes to complete and cannot be cancelled once started.

Accessing the External Device's Menu

Once the TV has switched over to the selected device, you can access the device's menu using the TV's remote control.

Select TOOLS. The following list appears, though it may differ based on the external device:

- **Anynet+ (HDMI-CEC)**

  Displays a list of HDMI-CEC-compliant devices connected to the TV. Select **View TV** to exit Anynet+ (HDMI-CEC), and start watching TV. To switch to the screen of an external device, simply select that respective device.

- (Connected Device) **Menu**

  Display the menu of the connected device. If the target device is a DVD player, the DVD menu is shown.

- (Connected Device) **Tools**

  Displays a list of frequently-used functions available for the device. If the target device is a DVD player, the DVD playback menu is shown.

  Some external devices may not support this option.

- (Connected Device) **Title Menu**

  Display the connected device's title menu. If the target device is a DVD player, the DVD title menu is shown.

  Some external devices may not support this option.

Using the e-Manual

Launching the e-Manual

Support > **e-Manual**

The embedded e-Manual contains information.

You can also download a copy of the e-Manual from Samsung's website, and read it on your computer or print it out.

Yellow words indicate a menu item; white bold words indicate remote control buttons. Arrows are used to indicate the menu path. (Example: **Picture** > **Picture Mode**)

1. Select **e-Manual**. The e-Manual loads.
2. Select a category from the side of the screen. Once a selection has been made, the contents of the selected category appear.
3. Select an item from the list. This opens the e-Manual on the corresponding page.

If a description doesn't fit on a single screen...

You can scroll pages in one of the following ways.

- Position the focus on the page to display  /  on the screen. Press ∧, ∨ button.

Additional e-Manual Features

Loading Pages using Keywords

Select **Search** from the side of the screen to bring up the search screen. Enter a search term and then select **Done**. Select an item from the search results to load the corresponding page.

Loading Pages from the Index Page

Select **Index** from the side of the screen to bring up the index screen. Select a keyword from the list to navigate to the relevant page.

Using History to Load Previously Read Pages

Select **Recent pages** from the side of the screen. A list of previously read pages is shown. Select a page. The e-Manual jumps to the selected page.

Accessing the Menu from the e-Manual (Try Now)

Select (**Try Now**) on a feature-description to directly move to the corresponding menu and try out the feature.

If you want to read an **e-Manual** entry on a specific screen menu feature, press the **KEYPAD** button and select **e-Manual** using Samsung Smart Control.

Certain menu options cannot be used.

Loading Reference Pages

Select (**Link**) from the side of a feature-description page to access the corresponding reference page.

Updating the e-Manual to the Latest Version

You can update the e-Manual in the same way as updating apps.

1. Select the **e-Manual** item in the **SAMSUNG APPS** screen.
2. Press and hold the Enter button. The Options menu appears.
3. From the Options menu on the screen, select **Update apps**. A pop-up window appears.

   Update apps is shown on the screen only when an update is required.
4. Select **e-Manual** in the pop-up window and then select **Update**. You can update the e-Manual to the latest version.

Updating the Software

Support > Software Update Try Now

Check your TV's software version and upgrade it if necessary.

If the TV is connected to the Internet, TV is set to update software automatically. If you don't want to update it automatically, set Auto update (Software Update > Auto update) to Off.

Updating Software over the Internet

Support > Software Update > Update now

Select Support > Software Update > Update now. An online upgrade downloads and installs the upgrade software directly from the Internet.

This option requires an Internet connection.

⚠ DO NOT turn off the TV's power until the upgrade is complete. The TV will turn off and on automatically after completing the software upgrade. All video and audio settings return to the default settings after a software upgrade.

Updating Software using a USB connection

Support > Software Update > Update now

1. Visit Samsung's website on a computer and download the update package to a USB device.

   Save the update package in the USB device's top-level folder. Otherwise, the TV will not be able to locate the update package.

2. Connect the USB device with the update package to the TV.
3. Select Support > Software Update > Update now. The software is updated using the update package on the USB device.

⚠ DO NOT turn off the TV's power until the upgrade is complete. The TV will turn off and on automatically after completing the software upgrade. All video and audio settings return to the default settings after a software upgrade.

Enabling Automatic Software Updates

Support > Software Update > Auto update Try Now

If the TV is connected to the Internet, the Auto update option upgrades the TV's software while it is in Standby Mode. In Standby Mode, the TV appears to be turned off, but still has access to the Internet. This allows the TV to upgrade itself automatically while it is not in use.

This option requires an Internet connection.

Because the TV's internal processes are operating, the screen may emit a faint glow, and this may continue for more than 1 hour until the software download is complete.

If you agree to the Smart Hub terms and conditions, Auto update will be set to On, If you don't want the TV's software updated automatically, set Auto update (Support > Software Update > Auto update) to Off.

1. Select Support > Software Update > Auto update.
2. Specify when you want the upgrade to take place. The TV will connect to the server at the specified time, download the update package, and upgrade its own software.

Software Update via satellite channel

Availability depends on the specific model and area.

Support > Software Update > Manage Satellite Channels

(When the Aerial was set to Satellite) Manage software downloads via a satellite channel.

Protecting the TV from Hacking and malicious code

System > Smart Security Try Now

When the TV is connected to the Internet, it is vulnerable to hacks and malicious code. Smart Security protects the TV and storage media connected to the TV from such threats.

Navigate to System > Smart Security and set Smart Security to On. Try Now

Checking the TV and Connected Storage Media

System > Smart Security > Scan

Navigate to System > Smart Security and select Scan. This scans the TV and connected media for the presence of malicious code. If no malicious code is detected, a notification window appears on the screen.

If malicious code is detected...

If malicious code was found, the results of the scan will appear on the screen. This result window displays all malicious code found, and provides options to either quarantine the code or allow them to continue.

1. Select all malicious code to quarantine or allow.
2. Select **Block** or **Allow**. This moves the selected malicious code to the **Isolated List** or **Allowed List**.

   The **Isolated List** displays all blocked malicious code. You can also relocate codes from this list to the Allowed List.

   The **Allowed List** displays all allowed malicious code. You can also relocate codes from this list to the Isolated List.

Automatically Scanning when the TV is Powered On

System > **Smart Security** > **Settings** > **Auto Scan**

Navigate to **System** > **Smart Security** > **Settings** and then set **Auto Scan** to **On**. This automatically scans the TV and connected storage media when the TV is powered on.

Automatically Adding malicious code to the Blocked List

System > **Smart Security** > **Settings** > **Move to Isolated List automatically**

Navigate to **System** > **Smart Security** > **Settings** and set **Move to Isolated List automatically** to **On**. Malicious code found during the scanning process is automatically added to the Blocked List.

Using Other Functions

Enabling Voice Guide for the Visually Impaired

System > **Accessibility** > **Voice Guide**

Availability depends on the specific model, area and language.

Voice Guide provides guiding information in voice to aid the visually impaired to use the TV more conveniently. Enabling this option provides voice guide regarding focus change, channel change, volume change, and various other TV statues.

Navigate to **System** > **Accessibility** > **Voice Guide** and set **Voice Guide** to **On**.

Press and hold the button on the Samsung Smart Control to turn on or off the **Voice Guide**.

The Voice Guide is only provided in the language set in the **Menu Language**(**System** > **Menu Language**). However, some of the languages are not supported by Voice Guide even though they are listed in the **Voice Guide** screen. If this is the case, choose a different language.

To change the speaker's gender for the Voice Guide option, navigate to **System** > **Voice Control** > **Use TV Voice** and change the **Voice Gender** option.

If the **Voice Guide** is set to **On**, the Samsung Smart Control's motion sensor(gyro sensor) does not work. To use the Samsung Smart Control's motion sensor, set the **Voice Guide** to **Off**.

The Voice Guide will give information for the following functions on the TV.

Some sub-functions or function menus may not provide Voice Guide. In this case, the TV will tell you that Voice Guide is not provided.

- Change Channels
- Changing TV Volume
- Programme Info Window (**Information**)
- **Channel List**
- **Source**
- **Guide**
- **On TV**
- **Voice Control**
- TV' menu

Changing the Volume, Speed and Level of Voice Guide

Navigate to **System** > **Accessibility** and then select **Voice Guide**. This changes the volume, speed, pitch and description level of the **Voice Guide**.

- **Volume**

  Change the **Voice Guide** option's volume level.

  The **Voice Guide** volume may vary depending on the TV volume setting.

- **Speed**

  Change the **Voice Guide** option's tempo.

- **Pitch**

  Adjust the pitch of the Voice Guide.

- **Description Level**

  Adjust the **Voice Guide** option to better suit the user's description Level.

Enabling the High Contrast

System > **Accessibility** > **High Contrast** Try Now

Navigate to **System** > **Accessibility** and set the **High Contrast** option to **On**. This option changes major service screens to white text on black background or change the transparent TV menus to opaque so that text can be more easily read.

Press and hold the button on the Samsung Smart Control to turn on or off **High Contrast**.

Adjusting the Menu Transparency

System > **Accessibility** > **Menu Transparency** Try Now

Navigate to **System** > **Accessibility** and adjust the opacity level. Adjust the menu's transparency.

When the **High Contrast** (**System** > **Accessibility** > **High Contrast**) setting is set to **On**, menu display is automatically set to opaque and you cannot change the **Menu Transparency** settings.

Expanding the Smart Hub's Focus Area

System > **Accessibility** > **Enlarge** Try Now

Navigate to **System** > **Accessibility** and set **Enlarge** to **On**. This zooms in the focused item when you use Smart Hub.

Press and hold the button on the Samsung Smart Control to turn on or off **Enlarge**.

Changing the Menu Language

System > **Menu Language** Try Now

Select **System** > **Menu Language** and then choose a language from the list. Use this option to change the menu language.

Checking Notifications

System > **Notifications** Try Now

Select **Notifications** from the **System** menu to view the list of event messages generated by the TV. **Notifications** appear on the screen when events such as an update release for an app or Samsung Account login/logout occurs.

Select **Delete All** to delete all notifications.

Select **Service Notice** to check the SMART TV service notifications in a web browser.

Setting Up a Password

System > **Change PIN** Try Now

Set a PIN (Personal Identification Number) to lock channels, reset the TV, and change the TV settings.

1. Select **System** > **Change PIN**. The PIN input window appears.
2. Enter a PIN. The default PIN is 0000. (For France, Italy: “1-1-1-1”)
3. Enter a new PIN and then enter it again to confirm it. The PIN change is complete.

If you forget your PIN, you can reset it using the Samsung Smart Control. With the TV turned on, press the following buttons on the remote to reset the PIN to 0000: → + → **RETURN** → − → **RETURN** → + → **RETURN**. + is the Volume Up button. − is the Volume Down button. The button is on the left side of the remote.

Programme Rating Lock

Broadcasting > **Programme Rating Lock** Try Now

Availability depends on the specific model and area.

The **Programme Rating Lock** blocks programmes with ratings higher than those desired. This is useful for controlling what children watch on TV. This will not function for programmes originating from external sources, such as DVD players or USB files.

This PIN is required to watch a blocked programme.

The **Programme Rating Lock** is not available in HDMI or Component mode.

Enabling Game Mode

System > **General** > **Game Mode** Try Now

Game Mode optimises the TV's settings for playing video games on a gaming console such as PlayStation™ or Xbox™.

Requirements:

- Game Mode cannot be used for normal TV viewing.
- Connect the gaming console before enabling Game Mode. Otherwise, the picture quality may suffer.
- The screen may shake a little.
- Enabling Game Mode automatically sets the **Picture Mode** to **Standard** and the **Sound Mode** to **Movie**.
- To use a different external device, first disconnect the game console and disable Game Mode.

Enjoying Rich Colours and Superior Picture Quality (BD Wise)

System > **General** > **BD Wise** Try Now

Connecting a Samsung DVD player, Blu-ray player, or home theatre system that supports **BD Wise** enables the richest colours and best possible picture quality. Enabling BD Wise automatically optimises the TV's resolution.

This feature is only available when the external device is connected via an HDMI cable.

Enabling/Disabling Sound Feedback

System > General > Sound Feedback Try Now

Sound Feedback provides audio cues as you navigate through menus and select menu options.

Locking/Unlocking the Panel Keys

System > General > Panel Lock Try Now

Use to lock and unlock the TV's front panel buttons.

Showing/Hiding the Samsung Logo while Booting

System > General > Boot Logo Try Now

Use to enable or disable the Samsung logo display that appears when the TV starts up.

Enabling the TV to Boot Faster

System > General > Samsung Instant On Try Now

Enable or disable the functionality that enables your TV to turn on quickly.

Anti Flicker

System > General > Anti Flicker

Availability depends on the specific model and area.

Change the power frequency for the cable to stop the camera from flickering.

Enabling/Disabling the Front Indicators

System > General > Light Effect Try Now

Use to turn the indicators on the front of the TV on/off. Turning the Light Effect off reduces the TV's power consumption.

The colour of the TV's light may vary depending on the model.

Availability depends on the specific model and area.

UHD Evolution Kit Backup

System > UHD Evolution Kit Backup

Upgrade your Samsung TV with the 2015 Evolution Kit for more benefits. However, this upgrade requires backing up and converting existing data in your TV and apps accordingly to ensure they remain on the upgraded device.

1. Connect a USB storage device to the TV.
2. In the **System** menu, select **UHD Evolution Kit Backup**. The **UHD Evolution Kit Backup** screen appears.
3. Select **Start**. Data in the TV will be backed up to the USB storage.

   Do not turn the TV off or unplug the power cable of the TV during this backup.

   Do not disconnect the USB storage device during this backup.
4. When complete, select **Done**.

Update Recorded Programmes

Availability depends on the specific model and area.

System > Update Recorded Programmes

To watch a previously recorded programme on Samsung TV with the 2015 Evolution kit, it is necessary to convert the recorded programme saved on a USB Drive to the Samsung TV format with the 2015 Evolution kit.

1. Connect the recording USB device to the USB HDD 5V 1A port.
2. In the **System** menu, select **Update Recorded Programmes**. The **Update Recorded Programmes** screen appears.
3. Select **Start**. Start conversion so material is properly displayed on the TV.
4. When complete, select **Done**.

Registering the TV as a DivX-Certified Device (Watching Paid DivX Movies)

System > **DivX® Video On Demand** Try Now

Viewing DivX® DRM-protected DivX movies on the TV first requires registration of the TV as a DivX-certified device.

- DRM ("Digital rights management") Digital Rights Management is a digital security measure designed to protect copyright.
- You can watch personally-created and free DivX content without registering the TV.
- Visit the DivX website (http://www.divx.com) and log into your user account before registering the TV as a DivX-certified device. If you do not have an account, please create one.

1. Select **System** > **DivX® Video On Demand**. A window with a registration code appears on the screen.
2. Visit the DivX website on a computer and click [Register Your Device] under [Support] from the top menu.
3. Enter the registration code shown on the TV's screen in the [Enter your registration code] field.
4. Enter the TV's name in the [Name your device] field and then select [NEXT].
5. Click [DOWNLOAD] and save the [device_name.divx] file.
6. Transfer the [device_name.divx] file from the computer onto a USB device and then plug the USB device into the TV.
7. Play the [device_name.divx] file on the TV to register the TV as a DivX-certified device.

Restoring the TV to the Factory Settings

Support > **Self Diagnosis** > **Reset** Try Now

This option restores all TV settings (excluding the Internet) to the factory defaults.

1. Select **Support** > **Self Diagnosis** > **Reset**. The Security PIN entry window appears on the screen.
2. Enter the Security PIN and then select **Yes**. All settings are then reset. The TV turns off and on again automatically, and then displays the **Setup** screen.

   For more information on Setup, refer to the user manual that came with the TV.

Turning the TV into a Display Model (for retail stores)

Support > **Use Mode** Try Now

Select **Support** > **Use Mode** > **Store Demo**. This turns the TV into a display model for use in a retail environment.

For all other uses, select **Home Use**.

Store Demo should be used in retail environments only. With **Store Demo**, certain functions are disabled and the TV automatically resets itself after a certain amount of time.

Data Service

This function may not be available, depending on the country.

Allows the user to use information (text, still images, graphics, documents, software, etc.) transmitted via broadcast media.

Auto Run Data Service

Broadcasting > **Channel Settings** > **Auto Run Data Service**

Sets whether or not to automatically run data service. **Auto Run Data Service** automatically runs data service without user intervention.

If any other secondary function is under way, **Auto Run Data Service** may not work.

Using Data Service

If the channel you are currently watching provides data service, you can enjoy a variety of data services by selecting A.

Provided Data Service information may vary depending on broadcast.

While using data services, changing the channel using numeric keys may not be possible, depending on the service.

1. Select A and then select a desired service.

   If **Auto Run Data Service** is **On**, the data service will automatically run with loading banner. In this case, the A function does not work.

2. Select A to display the data service screen.
3. Move to a desired option on the data service screen and then select **OK**. The selected service starts.
4. If you select **EXIT**, data service closes.

HbbTV

This function may not be available, depending on the country.

Access services from entertainment providers, online providers and CE manufactures through HbbTV.

- In some countries, HbbTV is a data service.
- This service may be supported in other countries.
- Some broadcasting may not support the HbbTV.

HbbTV is turned off by default. To use HbbTV, go to **System** > **Data Service** and set it **Enable**. (Depending on the country)

- HbbTV is not available when Timeshift is running or when a recorded video is being played back.
- An application on HbbTV may malfunction temporarily depending on the circumstances of the broadcast station or application provider.
- An application is only available for use on HbbTV when the TV network is connected to an external network. The application may malfunction depending on the network conditions.
- If the current channel is compatible with both the HbbTV and non-HbbTV text input modes, activate TTX by select TTX key twice.

Using HbbTV:

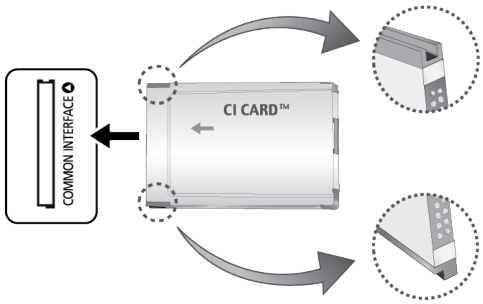
- When the screen indicates (with the A, etc.) that HbbTV is being accessed.
- Select TTX using the remote once to enter the HbbTV text-input mode.
- Select TTX using the remote twice to enter the non-HbbTV text-input mode.

Connecting to a TV Viewing Card slot

To connect the CI CARD, follow these steps:

A CI Card Adapter that lets the TV use two different CI Cards is available, depending on the model.

Using the “CI or CI+ CARD”



To watch paid channels, the “CI or CI+ CARD” must be inserted.

Turn the TV off to connect or disconnect a CI card.

- If you don’t insert the “CI or CI+ CARD”, some channels will display the message “Scrambled Signal”.
- The pairing information containing a telephone number, the “CI or CI+ CARD” ID the Host ID and other information will be displayed in about 2~3 minutes. If an error message appears please contact your service provider.
- When the configuration of channel information has finished, the message “Updating Completed” is displayed, indicating the channel list is updated.

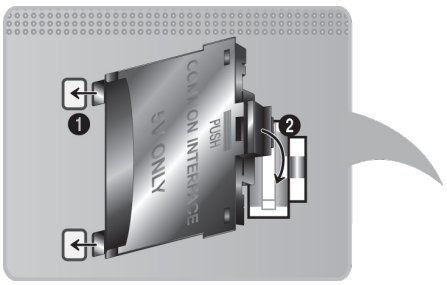
Requirements:

- You must obtain a “CI or CI+ CARD” from a local cable service provider.
- When removing the “CI or CI+ CARD”, carefully pull it out with your hands since dropping the “CI or CI+ CARD” may cause damage to it.
- Insert the “CI or CI+ CARD” in the direction marked on the card.
- The location of the COMMON INTERFACE slot may be different depending on the model.
- “CI or CI+ CARD” is not supported in some countries and regions; check with your authorised dealer.
- If you have any problems, please contact a service provider.
- Insert the “CI or CI+ CARD” that supports the current aerial settings. The screen will be distorted or will not be seen.

To connect the CI CARD Adapter, follow these steps:

- We recommend attaching the adapter before installing the wall mount, or inserting the “CI or CI+ CARD”.
- Turn the TV off to connect or disconnect a CI card adapter.

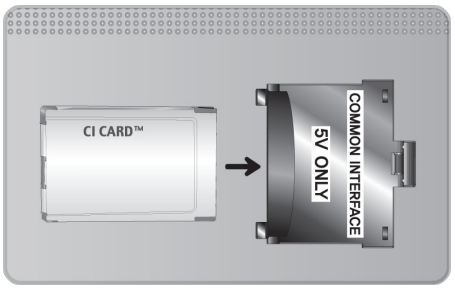
<TV Rear>



1. Insert the CI CARD Adapter into the two holes on the product 1.
   - Please find two holes on the rear of the TV. Two holes are beside the **COMMON INTERFACE** port.
2. Connect the CI CARD Adapter into the **COMMON INTERFACE** port on the product 2.
3. Insert the “CI or CI+ CARD”

⚠ **We recommend that you insert the CI card before you mount the TV on a wall. It may be difficult to insert after the mounting. Insert the card after attaching the CI-Module on TV. It is difficult to attach the module if you insert the card before attaching.**

Using the “CI or CI+ CARD”



To watch paid channels, the “CI or CI+ CARD” must be inserted.

- If you don’t insert the “CI or CI+ CARD”, some channels will display the message “Scrambled Signal”.
- The pairing information containing a telephone number, the “CI or CI+ CARD” ID the Host ID and other information will be displayed in about 2~3 minutes. If an error message appears please contact your service provider.
- When the configuration of channel information has finished, the message “Updating Completed” is displayed, indicating the channel list is updated.

Requirements:

- You must obtain a “CI or CI+ CARD” from a local cable service provider.
- When removing the “CI or CI+ CARD”, carefully pull it out with your hands since dropping the “CI or CI+ CARD” may cause damage to it.
- Insert the “CI or CI+ CARD” in the direction marked on the card.
- The location of the COMMON INTERFACE slot may be different depending on the model.

Teletext Feature

Availability depends on the specific model and area.

The index page of the Teletext service gives you information on how to use the Service. For Teletext information to be displayed correctly, channel reception must be stable. Otherwise, information may be missing or some pages may not be displayed.

You can change Teletext pages by select numeric using your remote control.

Teletext on / **mix** / **off**: Activates the Teletext mode for the current channel. Press twice to overlap the Teletext mode with the current broadcasting screen. Press it one more time to exit teletext.

Store: Stores the Teletext pages.

Size: Displays the teletext on the upper half of the screen in double-size. To move the text to the lower half of the screen, press it again. For normal display, press it once again.

Hold: Holds the display at the current page, in the case that there are several secondary pages that follow automatically. To undo, press it again.

Colour buttons (**red**, **green**, **yellow**, **blue**): If the FASTEXT system is used by the broadcasting company, the different topics on a Teletext page are colour-coded and can be selected by coloured buttons. Press the colour corresponding to the topic of your choice. A new colour coded page appears. Items can be selected in the same way. To display the previous or next page, select corresponding coloured button.

Mode: Selects the Teletext mode (LIST / FLOF). If pressed during LIST mode, switches the mode to List save mode. In List save mode, you can save a Teletext page into a list using the (store) button.

Sub-page: Displays the available sub-page.

Page up: Displays the next Teletext page.

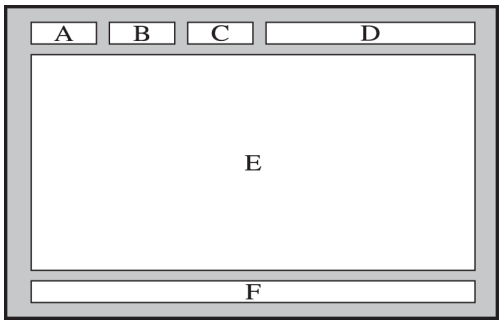
Page down: Displays the previous Teletext page.

Index: Displays the index (contents) page at any time while you are viewing Teletext.

Reveal: Displays the hidden text (answers to quiz games, for example). To display the normal screen, press it again.

Cancel: Shrinks the Teletext display to overlap with the current broadcast.

Typical Teletext page



Part	Contents
A	Selected page number.
B	Broadcasting channel identity.
C	Current page number or search indications.
D	Date and time.
E	Text.
F	Status information. FASTEXT information.

Getting Support

The TV has several built-in systems designed for user and TV system support.

Support through Remote Management

Support > Remote Management Try Now

If you need assistance with your TV, you can use this feature to let Samsung Electronics diagnose your TV remotely. You will need to read and agree to the service agreement before using this feature. A Samsung Electronics technician will then diagnose, repair, and update your TV remotely.

This option requires an Internet connection.

What Does Remote Service Do?

Samsung Remote Support service offers you one-on-one support with a Samsung Technician who can remotely.

- **Diagnose** your TV
- **Adjust the TV settings** for you
- **Perform a factory reset** your TV
- Install recommended **firmware updates**

How Does it Work?

Having a Samsung Tech remotely service your TV is easy.



Call the Samsung Contact Centre and ask for remote support.



Open the menu on your TV and go to the Support section.



Select Remote Management, and then read and agree to the service agreements. When the PIN screen appears, provide the PIN number to the agent.



The agent accesses your TV.

Finding the Information You Need for Service

Support > **Contact Samsung** Try Now

Use this option to find the support service website's address and contact number, your TV's model number, your TV's software version, the Smart Hub info, and other information you need to receive the service support.

Press A to view the open source licence.

There is a problem with the screen

Testing the Picture

Support > **Self Diagnosis** > **Picture Test** Try Now

Before you review the list of problems and solutions below, run the Picture Test to determine if the problem is caused by the TV. The Picture Test displays a high definition picture you can examine for flaws or faults. If the test picture does not appear or there is noise or distortion, the TV may have a problem. Contact Samsung's Call Centre for assistance. If the test picture is displayed properly, there may be a problem with an external device. Please check the connections. If the problem persists, check the signal strength or refer to the external device's user manual.

If the test picture does not appear or there is noise or distortion, the TV may have a problem. Contact Samsung's Call Centre for assistance.

If the test picture is displayed properly, there may be a problem with the external device. Please check the connections. If the problem persists, check the signal strength or refer to the external device's user manual.

The Problem	Try this!
Flickering and Dimming	If your Samsung Television is flickering or dimming sporadically, you may need to disable some of the energy efficiency features. Disable Energy Saving (System > Eco Solution > Energy Saving) or Eco Sensor (System > Eco Solution > Eco Sensor).
Component Connections/Screen Colour	If the colour on your Samsung television screen is not correct or the black and white colours are off, run Picture Test (Support > Self Diagnosis > Picture Test). If the test results indicate that the problem is not caused by the TV, do the following: • Make sure to connect to an external device. • Check the other connections as well. If the TV is connected to an external device via a component cable, confirm that the Pb, Pr, and Y jacks are plugged into their proper connectors.
In HDMI mode, there is something wrong with the screen.	HDMI UHD Color is specific to a UHD source, and does not operate properly for any other source. In this case, navigate Picture > Picture Options > HDMI UHD Color menu, and then set the HDMI UHD Color-enabled HDMI connector to Off.
Screen Brightness	If the colours on your Samsung TV are correct but just a little too dark or bright, try adjusting the following settings first. • Go to the Picture menu and adjust the Contrast, Brightness, Sharpness, Colour, and Tint (G/R) settings.
Motion Plus/Blur	If you notice ghosting or blurring on the screen, use the Motion Plus option (Picture > Picture Options > Motion Plus) to resolve the issue.
Unwanted Powering Off	If your Samsung TV appears to turn off by itself, try disabling some of the TV's energy efficiency features. See if Sleep Timer (System > Time > Sleep Timer) has been enabled. The Sleep Timer automatically turns the TV off after a specified period of time. If the Sleep Timer has not been enabled, see if No Signal Power Off (System > Eco Solution > No Signal Power Off) or Auto Power Off (System > Eco Solution > Auto Power Off) has been enabled and disable them.
Problems Powering On	When the TV is turned on, the remote control receiver flashes 5 times before the screen turns on. If you are having problems powering on your Samsung television, there are a number of things to check before calling the service department. Confirm that the TV's power cord is connected correctly at both ends and that the remote control is operating normally. Make sure that the antenna cable or cable TV cable is firmly connected. If you have a cable/satellite box confirm that it is plugged in and turned on.
Unable to find a Channel	Launch Setup (System > Setup) or Auto Tuning (Broadcasting > Auto Tuning). If your TV is not connected to a cable box or satellite box, run Setup (System > Setup) or Auto Tuning (Broadcasting > Auto Tuning).

The Problem	Try this!
The TV image does not look as good as it did in the store.	Store displays are all tuned to digital, HD (high definition) channels. If you have an analogue cable/set top box, upgrade to a digital set top box. Use HDMI or Component cables to deliver HD (high definition) picture quality. Many HD channels are upscaled from SD (Standard Definition) content. Look for a channel that is broadcasting true HD content. • Cable/Satellite Subscribers: Try HD channels from the channel lineup. • Terrestrial/Cable Aerial Connection: Try HD channels after running the Auto Tuning function. Adjust the cable/satellite box's video output resolution to 1080i or 720p.
The picture is distorted.	The compression of video content may cause picture distortions, especially in fast moving pictures from sports programmes and action movies. A weak or bad quality signal can cause picture distortions. This is not an issue with the TV. Mobile phones used close to the TV (within 1 m) may cause noise in analogue and digital channels.
The colour is wrong or missing.	If you're using a Component connection, make sure that the Component cables are connected to the correct jacks. Incorrect or loose connections may cause colour problems or a blank screen.
The colour is poor or the picture is not bright enough.	Go to the Picture menu and then adjust the Picture Mode, Brightness, Sharpness, and Colour settings. See if Energy Saving (System > Eco Sensor > Energy Saving) has been enabled. Try resetting the picture. (Picture > Reset Picture)
There is a dotted line on the edge of the screen.	If the Picture Size has been set to Screen Fit, change the setting to 16:9. Change the cable/satellite box resolution.
The picture is black and white.	Make sure to properly connect any external device to the TV properly.
The colour is wrong or missing.	If you are using a Component connection, make sure that the Component cables are connected to the correct jacks. Incorrect or loose connections may cause colour problems or a blank screen.

I can't hear the sound clearly

Testing the Sound

Support > Self Diagnosis > Sound Test Try Now

Before you review the list of problems and solutions below, make sure that the Speaker Select menu item is set to TV Speaker, and then listen to the speakers again. If the TV still does not play audio, run the Sound Test. The Sound Test uses a built-in melody to check for sound problems. If the TV does not play sound during the Sound Test, or the sound is distorted, there may be a problem with the TV. Contact Samsung's Call Centre for assistance. If the TV plays the Sound Test melody without distortion, there may be a problem with an external device. Please check the connections. If the problem persists, refer to the external device's user manual.

If you can't hear the melody or there is a problem, make sure Sound > Speaker Settings > TV Sound Output is set to TV Speaker and then try again. If the problem persists, there may be a problem with the TV. Contact Samsung's Call Centre for assistance.

If the melody is played, there may be a problem with the external device. Please check the connections. If the problem persists, refer to the external device's user manual.

The Problem	Try this!
There is no sound or the sound is too low at maximum volume.	Check the volume control of the device (cable/satellite box, DVD, Blu-ray, etc.) connected to your TV.
The picture is good but there is no sound.	Set Sound > Speaker Settings > TV Sound Output to TV Speaker. If you are using an external device, check the device's audio output option. (For example, you may need to change your cable box's audio option to HDMI if the box connected to your TV is using an HDMI cable.) To listen to the computer sound, connect the external speaker to the computer's audio output connector. If your TV has a headphone jack, make sure there is nothing plugged into it. Reboot the connected device by disconnecting and then reconnecting the device's power cable.
The speakers are making an odd sound.	Make sure that the audio cable is connected to the correct audio output connector on the external device. For antenna or cable connections, check the signal information. A low signal level may cause sound distortions. Run Sound Test (Support > Self Diagnosis > Sound Test).
In HDMI mode, an audio is intermittently stop or there is no sound.	HDMI UHD Color is specific to a UHD source, and does not operate properly for any other source. In this case, navigate Picture > Picture Options > HDMI UHD Color menu, and then set the HDMI UHD Color-enabled HDMI connector to Off.

I can't see 3D images clearly.

Testing 3D Picture Quality

Availability depends on the specific model and area.

Support > **Self Diagnosis** > **3D Picture Test** Try Now

If you have not paired your 3D glasses with the TV, pair them first. To test 3D picture quality, the TV and the 3D glasses must have been paired.

Put on the 3D glasses, navigate to **Support** > **Self Diagnosis** and select **3D Picture Test**. The 3D Picture Test displays a high definition picture to examine the 3D screen for flaws or faults. If the test fails to identify a problem, there may be a problem with an external device or the signal strength.

If the test picture does not appear or there is noise or distortion, the TV may have a problem. Contact Samsung's Call Centre for assistance.

If the test picture is displayed properly, there may be a problem with the external device. Please check the connections. If the problem persists, check the signal strength or refer to the external device's user manual.

The Problem	Try this!
The 3D glasses are not working correctly.	Make sure the glasses are powered on. The 3D feature may not work properly if there is another 3D product or an electronic device running nearby. If there is a problem, keep other electronic devices as far away as possible from the 3D Active Glasses.
I can't see 3D images clearly.	The ideal viewing distance is three times or more the height of the screen. We also recommend watching 3D content with your eyes level with the screen.
The batteries in the 3D glasses are flat.	Turn off the 3D glasses when they are not in use. If you leave the 3D glasses on, the battery lifespan is shortened.

There is a problem with the broadcast.

The Problem	Try this!
The TV is not receiving all channels.	If your TV is not connected to a cable box or satellite box: • Confirm that the coaxial cable is securely connected to the TV. • If you are using an antenna, verify it is positioned correctly and the all the connections are secure. • Run Setup (System > Setup) or Auto Tuning (Broadcasting > Auto Tuning).
There are no captions with digital channels.	Go to Subtitle (System > Accessibility > Subtitle) and change the Subtitle Mode. Some channels may not have caption data.
The picture is distorted.	The compression of the video content may cause picture distortions. This is especially true with fast moving pictures from sports programmes and action movies. A weak signal can cause picture distortions. This is not a problem with the TV.

The computer won't connect.

The Problem	Try this!
The "Mode Not Supported" message appears.	Set your PC's output resolution so it matches a resolution supported by the TV.
The video is OK but there is no audio.	If you are using an HDMI connection, check the audio output setting on your PC. If you are using a DVI to HDMI cable, a separate audio cable is required.

I can't connect to the Internet.

The Problem	Try this!
The wireless network connection failed.	Make sure the TV is connected to a wireless IP router.
The software update over the Internet has failed.	Check the network connection status. If the TV is not connected to a network, connect to a network. The upgrade stops if you already have the latest software version.

Data Service

The Problem	Try this!
Why am I getting on-screen messages when I haven't selected the Data Service option?	If Auto Run Data Service is set to On, messages will automatically appear on the screen when you watch a broadcast that supports the Data Service. If the broadcast doesn't support the Data Service, no messages will appear on the screen. If you do not wish to receive Data Service messages, disable Auto Run Data Service.
How do I hide Data Service messages?	Press EXIT button to hide the messages. If you do not wish to receive Data Service messages, disable Auto Run Data Service.
How do I use the Data Service?	Enabling the Auto Run Data Service option automatically displays messages on the screen whenever you watch a broadcast that supports the Data Service. You can press the corresponding buttons shown on the screen to access additional features and functions offered by that broadcast.
What is an interactive service and how does it work?	Interactive services include viewer surveys, quizzes, ticket requests, product purchases, and other interactions between the viewer and the TV station. Generally, you will need to set up an account with the broadcaster and log in to the account in order to enjoy the interactive services they offer. Note that interactive services are only available when your TV is connected to the Internet. In addition, T-Commerce requires that you have a certificate. Copy your certificate from the computer to a USB device and connect that device to the TV. (Interactive services are not being offered yet. The actual service launch date varies depending on the broadcaster.)
A message displays "Receiving" but no change happens.	This indicates an error has occurred while receiving data. An execution error message will also appear on the screen. If this happens, try again.
Nothing appears on the screen after the Data Service is launched.	The Data Service may be initialising or the signal may have been severed by the broadcaster.

The Schedule Recording/Timeshift function isn't working.

The Problem	Try this!
The TV cannot recognise the USB device or the Format Device, Check Device and Device Performance Test functions fail.	Refer to the USB device's manual and see if data can be stored on it. Check if the USB device is in a locked state. Check if the USB device was formatted when it was connected to a computer. Formatting a USB device after connecting it to the TV may result in a formatting failure. If Device Performance Test or Format Device has failed, there may be a problem with the USB device or its specifications. Try using a different USB device.
There is a message saying I need to format the USB Drive.	Check if the USB device is in a locked state. Use the USB recovery function to recover the USB device.
Schedule Recording cannot be used.	Check if there is a USB device connected to the TV. Check if the channel is a digital channel that can be recorded. Recording will automatically stop if the signal becomes too weak. The Timeshift function will not work if there isn't enough storage space on the USB device.
I get a performance test failure message and then Schedule Recording and the Timeshift operation stops working.	This problem can occur when using a low-performance USB Drive that does not support recording. A USB hard drive with a speed of 5,400rpm or above is recommended. A USB memory stick is not supported.

Anynet+ (HDMI-CEC) isn't working.

The Problem	Try this!
Anynet+ does not work.	Confirm that the device is an Anynet+ device. The Anynet+ system supports Anynet+ devices only. Check if the power cord of the Anynet+ device is properly connected. Check the cable connections of the Anynet+ device. Go to System and see if Anynet+ (HDMI-CEC) has been set to On. Check whether the TV remote control is in TV mode. Check whether the remote control is Anynet+ compatible. Anynet+ may not function when certain functions are operational. (Channel Search, Smart Hub, set up, etc.) If you have disconnected and then reconnected the HDMI cable, scan for devices again or turn your TV off and on. HDMI UHD Color is specific to a UHD source, and does not operate properly for any other source. In this case, navigate Picture > Picture Options > HDMI UHD Color menu, and then set the HDMI UHD Color-enabled HDMI connector to Off.
I want to start Anynet+.	Check if the Anynet+ device is properly connected to the TV and then navigate to the System menu to see if Anynet+ (HDMI-CEC) is set to On. Once verified, select TOOLS button. A list appears. Select Anynet+ (HDMI-CEC) from the list and then a device.
I want to exit Anynet+.	Select View TV from the Anynet+ menu. Select a non-Anynet+ device from the Source list.
The message "Connecting to Anynet+ device..." or "Disconnecting from Anynet+ device" appears on the screen.	You cannot use the remote control when you are configuring Anynet+ or switching to a viewing mode. Use the remote control after the TV has completed the Anynet+ configuration or has switched to a viewing mode.
The Anynet+ device won't play.	You cannot use the play function when Setup is in progress.
The connected device is not displayed.	Check whether the device supports Anynet+. Check whether the HDMI cable is properly connected. Go to System and see if Anynet+ (HDMI-CEC) has been set to On. Scan for Anynet+ devices again. Anynet+ devices must be connected to the TV using an HDMI cable. Make sure the device is connected to your TV with an HDMI cable. Some HDMI cables may not support Anynet+. If the connection is terminated because there has been a power failure or the HDMI cable has been disconnected, please scan for the device again.
The TV audio is not being played through the receiver.	Connect an optical cable to the TV and the receiver. ARC enables digital sound to be outputted via the HDMI (ARC) port. However, ARC is only available when the TV is connected to an audio receiver that supports ARC.

I am having trouble launching/using apps.

The Problem	Try this!
I launched an app, but it's in English. How can I change the language?	Languages supported by the app may be different from the user interface language. The ability to change the language depends on the service provider.
My application is not working.	Check with the service provider. Refer to the help section on the application service provider's website.

My file won't play.

The Problem	Try this!
Some files can't be played.	This problem may occur with high-bitrate files. Most files can be played back, but you might experience problems with high-bitrate files.

I want to reset the TV.

Reset	Path	Description
Reset Settings	Support > Self Diagnosis > Reset	Reset Picture, Sound, Channel, Smart Hub, and all other settings except for the network settings to their factory default settings.
Resetting Smart Hub	Smart Hub > Reset Smart Hub	Reset all saved information relating to Samsung accounts and linked service accounts, as well as Smart Hub service agreements and applications.

Other Issues

The Problem	Try this!
The TV is hot.	Watching TV for an extended period of time causes the panel to generate heat. The heat from the panel is dissipated through internal vents running along the top of the TV. The bottom, however, may feel hot to the touch after extended use. Children watching TV need constant adult supervision to prevent them from touching the TV. This heat, however, is not a defect and does not affect the TV's functionality.
The picture won't display in full screen.	HD channels will have black bars on either side of the screen when displaying upscaled SD (4:3) content. Black bars will appear at the top and bottom of the screen when you watch movies that have aspect ratios different from your TV. Adjust the picture size options on your external device or set the TV to full screen.
The "Mode Not Supported" message appears.	The output resolution of the attached device is not supported by the TV. Check the supported resolutions of the TV and adjust the external device's output resolution accordingly.
The Subtitle item in the TV menu is grayed out.	You cannot select the Subtitle menu if you have selected a source connected to the TV via HDMI or Component connections. To view subtitle, turn on the external device's subtitle function.
The TV smells of plastic.	This smell is normal and will dissipate over time.
The Signal Information option under Self Diagnosis isn't activated.	Verify that the current channel is a digital channel. The Signal Information is only available for digital channels.
The TV is tilted to the side.	Remove the base stand from the TV and reassemble it.
The Broadcasting option has been deactivated.	Broadcasting is only available when the Source is set to TV. The Broadcasting menu cannot be accessed while watching TV using a cable box or satellite receiver. Certain Broadcasting menus cannot be accessed while recording or while the TimeShift operation is in progress.
The settings are lost after 5 minutes or every time the TV is turned off.	If the Use Mode is set to Store Demo, the TV's audio and video settings are automatically reset every 5 minutes. Change the Use Mode (Support > Use Mode) to Home Use.
There is an intermittent loss of audio or video.	Check the cable connections and reconnect them. Loss of audio or video can be caused by using overly rigid or thick cables. Make sure the cables are flexible enough for long term use. If you are mounting the TV to a wall, we recommend using cables with 90-degree connectors.
There are small particles on the TV's bezel.	This is part of the product's design and is not a defect.
The PIP menu is not available.	PIP functionality is only available when you are using an HDMI or Component source.

The Problem	Try this!
A POP (TV's internal banner ad) appears on the screen.	Change the **Use Mode** (**Support** > **Use Mode**) to **Home Use**.
The TV is making a popping noise.	The expansion and contraction of the TV's outer casing may cause a popping noise. This does not indicate a product malfunction. The TV is safe to use.
The TV is making a humming noise.	Your TV utilises high-speed switching circuits and high levels of electrical current. Depending on the TV's brightness level, the TV may seem slightly noisier than a conventional TV. Your TV has undergone strict quality control procedures that meet our demanding performance and reliability requirements. Some noise coming from the TV is considered normal and is not an acceptable cause for an exchange or refund.

Before Using the Recording and Timeshift Functions

Availability depends on the specific model and area.

Before Using the Recording and Schedule Recording Functions

- To set up a Schedule Recording, you must first set the TV's clock. Set the **Clock** (**System** > **Time** > **Clock**).
- Recordings are DRM-protected and therefore cannot be played back on a computer or on a different TV. In addition, these files cannot be played back on your TV if its video circuit has been replaced.
- A USB hard drive with a speed of 5,400rpm or above is recommended. However, RAID-type USB hard drives are not supported.
- USB memory sticks are not supported.
- The total recording capacity may vary depending on the amount of available hard drive space and the recording quality level.
- **Schedule Recording** requires at least 100MB of free space on the USB storage device. Recording will stop if the available storage space falls below 50MB while recording is in progress.
- If the available storage space falls below 500MB while both the Schedule Recording and Timeshift functions are in progress, only the recording will stop.
- The maximum recording time is 360 minutes.
- A video is played according to the TV settings.
- If the input signal is changed while recording is in progress, the screen will go blank until the change is made. In this case, recording will resume, but ● will not be available.
- **Device Performance Test** must be performed on the USB storage device connected to the TV before a recording can be made. To perform the **Device Performance Test**, select **Recorded TV** in the **On TV** panel or **USB Drive** in the **MULTIMEDIA** panel and then select the recording device. When you make a recording on the **Guide** or Programme Info screen, if the USB storage device has failed in the **Device Performance Test**, the **Format Device** and **Device Performance Test** are performed again.
- When using the Record or Schedule Recording function, the actual recording may start a second or two later than the specified time.
- If the Schedule Recording function is operating while a recording is being made on an HDMI-CEC external device, the priority is given to the Schedule Recording.
- Connecting a recording device to the TV automatically deletes abnormally saved recording files.
- If the **Off Timer** or **Auto Power Off** has been set, the TV will overide these settings, continue to record, and turn off after the recording has ended.
- For UHD channels, recording is not available.

Before the Using Timeshift Function

- A USB hard drive with a speed of 5,400rpm or above is recommended. However, RAID-type USB hard drives are not supported.
- USB memory sticks or flash drives are not supported.
- The total recording capacity may vary depending on the amount of available hard drive space and the recording quality level.
- If the available storage space falls below 500MB while both the Schedule Recording and Timeshift functions are in progress, only the recording will stop.
- The maximum amount of time available for the Timeshift function is 90 minutes.
- The Timeshift function is not available for locked channels.
- A time-shifted video is played according to the TV settings.
- Before the Timeshift function can be used, the **Device Performance Test** must be performed on the USB storage device connected to the TV. To perform the **Device Performance Test**, select **Recorded TV** in the **On TV** panel or **USB Drive** in the **MULTIMEDIA** panel and then select the recording device.
- The Timeshift function may be terminated automatically once it reaches its maximum capacity.
- The Timeshift function requires at least 1.5GB of free space available on the USB storage device.
- Launching an app, switching to an analogue channel, or changing the TV to a mode that does not support the Timeshift function automatically terminates the Timeshift function. The Timeshift operation will resume if the TV is changed back to a digital channel again.
- For UHD channels, Timeshift is not available.

S-Recommendation Disclaimer

Availability depends on the specific model and area.

S Recommendation with Voice Interaction

Recommendation given to common speech commands

Voice Interaction limited to the official language of the country of purchase. Performance may vary based on content availability, clarity and volume of your voice, and ambient noise levels. Strong regional accents may not be recognised.

Certain Samsung Smart TV features may not be available without express consent to the collection and use of personal information.

Certain features within S Recommendation require internet access and may not be available based on service provider, language, dialect and region.

Visit www.samsung.com for more information about service operator compatibility.

Actual remote control may differ from image shown.

S Recommendation

Content recommendations to fit your TV viewing preferences

Certain Samsung Smart TV features may not be available without express consent to the collection and use of personal information.

Certain features within S Recommendation require internet access and may not be available based on service provider, language, dialect and region.

Visit www.samsung.com for more information about service operator compatibility.

Actual remote control may differ from image shown.

Before Using 3D Viewing Mode

3D Precautions

⚠ **Warning**

- When viewing a 3D video under a fluorescent lamp (50 Hz - 60 Hz) or 3-wavelength lamp, you may notice a small amount of screen flickering.

  If this occurs, dim or turn off the light.

- Switching the input mode while watching a 3D movie may disable the 3D function on the TV.

  As a result, the 3D glasses may not function and the movie may not be displayed properly.

- Ensure you are within the working distance of the glasses when you view a 3D video.

  The images may not be viewable in 3D if you move outside of the working distance for 3 seconds.

  If the 3D glasses are moved outside of their working distance, the signal from the TV will disconnect and the glasses' 3D function will turn off after several seconds. When this happens, the red LED will turn on for 3 seconds.

- If you lie on your side while watching TV with 3D active glasses, the picture may appear dark or may not be visible. The actual 3D effect may be experienced differently depending on the viewer. The 3D effect may not be visible if the visual ability of your left eye differs greatly from the visual ability of your right eye.
- If a part of the 3D glasses or lenses is defective or damaged, it cannot be repaired and the glasses should be replaced. If the glasses stop working within the warranty period, the glasses can be repaired or replaced for free. If the glasses have been damaged due to the fault of the customer or the warranty period has expired, a new pair of glasses will have to be purchased.
- The 3D glasses may not work properly due to interference from other 3D products or electronic devices that operate on the 2.4GHz frequency such as a microwave oven or Internet AP. If the 3D function malfunctions due to interference, please move all other electronic or wireless communication devices as far away from the glasses and the TV as possible.
- The 3D glasses may not work properly due to interference from other 3D products or electronic devices that operate on the 2.4GHz frequency such as a microwave oven or Internet AP. If the 3D function malfunctions due to interference, please move all other electronic or wireless communication devices as far away from the glasses and the TV as possible.
- The vividness of the image may appear degraded if you view 3D video in a place that is exposed to direct sunlight or illumination.
- The 3D glasses may malfunction if there is an electric field or metallic object such as a steel plate nearby. Keep the glasses as far away as possible from electric fields and metallic objects.
- With SSG-3570 model glasses, the glasses may power off if you remain stationary while viewing 3D video for an extended period of time.
- With SSG-3570 model glasses, if the 3D glasses do not function immediately after you put them on when the TV is in 3D mode, take them off and then put them back on.

⚠ Caution

IMPORTANT HEALTH AND SAFETY INFORMATION FOR 3D IMAGES. READ THE FOLLOWING CAUTIONS BEFORE YOU OR YOUR CHILD USE THE 3D FUNCTION.

- Adults should frequently check on children who are using the 3D function. If there are any complaints of tired eyes, headaches, dizziness, or nausea, stop the child from viewing the 3D TV and ensure that they rest.
- Do not use the 3D glasses for other purposes such as general wear, sunglasses, protective goggles, etc.
- Some viewers may experience discomfort such as dizziness, nausea, and headaches while viewing 3D TV. If you experience any of these symptoms, stop viewing the 3D TV, remove the 3D glasses, and rest for awhile.
- Watching 3D pictures for an extended period of time may cause eye strain. If you experience any eye strain, stop viewing the 3D TV, remove the 3D glasses, and rest for a while.
- Do not use the 3D function or 3D glasses while walking or moving around. Using the 3D function or 3D Active Glasses while moving around may result in injury from running into objects, tripping, and/or falling.
- Do not sleep with the 3D glasses on. You can damage or break the temples.
- The temples on your 3D glasses are not foldable. Forcing the temples to fold will damage the 3D glasses.
- With SSG-3570 model glasses, do not shake your 3D glasses repeatedly. Shaking the glasses will power them on and can cause the battery to discharge faster than it would normally.
- With SSG-5100GB model glasses, there is a danger of explosion if the battery is incorrectly replaced.
- With SSG-5100GB model glasses, make sure to replace the battery with the same type.

⚠ Safety Precautions

The following safety instructions are to ensure your personal safety and prevent property damage. Please read the following to ensure the proper use of the product.

- Do not place the product in a location exposed to direct sunlight, heat, fire, or water. Exposure may result in a product malfunction or fire.
- Do not apply force to the lenses of the 3D glasses. Do not drop or bend the product. Applying force, dropping, or bending may result in a 3D glasses malfunction.
- Keep the components of the 3D glasses out of reach of children. Especially, ensure children do not swallow any of the components. If your child swallows a component, consult your doctor immediately.
- When cleaning the product, do not spray water or cleaner directly onto the surface of the product. Spraying water or cleaner directly onto the glasses may result in fire or electric shock, damage to the product's surface, or cause the indicator labels on the product's surface to come loose.
- Do not apply chemicals containing alcohol, solvent, or surfactant such as wax, benzene, thinner, pesticide, air freshener, lubricant, or cleaner to the product. These chemicals may cause the product's exterior to be discolored or cracked, or labels or instructions to be removed. Use only a soft cloth such as superfine fibers or cotton flannels for cleaning the product as the surface or the lenses easily crack. Because the product can be easily scratched with foreign substances, make sure to dust off the cloth before using.
- Do not disassemble, or attempt to repair or modify your 3D active glasses by yourself.
- Be careful not to let the temple ends of the 3D active glasses harm your eye.
- Do not sleep with the 3D glasses on. You can break the arms.
- Use your hands to put on or remove the 3D glasses.
- Use only the specified standard batteries. When replacing the battery, insert the battery so that its polarity (+, –) is correct. Failing to do so may damage the battery or result in fire, personal injury or environmental damage caused by liquid leaking from the battery. (applicable to the SSG-5100 only)
- Keep the used battery out of the reach of children so that they do not accidently swallow the battery. If your child has swallowed the battery, consult your doctor immediately. (applicable to the SSG-5100 only)
- Swallowing the cylindrical (button type) battery can cause serious damage to your internal organs. If this happens, contact a doctor immediately.

Supported Resolutions for each 3D Mode

Availability depends on the specific model and area.

These specifications apply to the 16:9 display ratio only.

HDMI

- 3D Mode: (L/R), (T/B)

Resolution	Frequency (Hz)
1280 x 720p	50 / 59.94 / 60
1920 x 1080i	50 / 59.94 / 60
1920 x 1080p	23.98 / 24 / 25 / 29.97 / 30 / 50 / 59.94 / 60
3840 x 2160p	24 / 25 / 30 / 50 / 60

Component

Resolution	Frequency (Hz)
1280 x 720p	50 / 59.94 / 60
1920 x 1080i	50 / 59.94 / 60
1920 x 1080p	23.98 / 24 / 25 / 29.97 / 30 / 50 / 59.94 / 60

Digital Channel

Resolution	Frequency (Hz)
1280 x 720p	50 / 59.94 / 60
1920 x 1080i	50 / 59.94 / 60
1920 x 1080p	25

Videos/Photos

Refer to the "Photo, Video, and Music File Limitations" section.

Computer via HDMI Cable.

The optimal resolution for computers connected to the TV via an HDMI cable is 1920 x 1080. If you select another resolution, the TV may not display 3D images correctly and may not be able to display the computer video in full screen.

Supported Resolutions for UHD

HDMI Connector except for the MHL-to-HDMI Connector

If HDMI UHD Color is set to Off

- Resolution: 3840 x 2160p, 4096 x 2160p

  The HDMI connector with **HDMI UHD Color** set to **Off** supports up to UHD 50P/60P 4:2:0, while the HDMI connector with **HDMI UHD Color** set to **On** supports up to UHD 50P/60P 4:4:4 and 4:2:2.

Frequency (Hz)	RGB	YCbCr 4:4:4	YCbCr 4:2:2	YCbCr 4:2:0
24 / 25 / 30	O	O	O	-
50 / 60	-	-	-	O

If HDMI UHD Color is set to On

- Resolution: 3840 x 2160p, 4096 x 2160p

  The HDMI connector with **HDMI UHD Color** set to **Off** supports up to UHD 50P/60P 4:2:0, while the HDMI connector with **HDMI UHD Color** set to **On** supports up to UHD 50P/60P 4:4:4 and 4:2:2.

Frequency (Hz)	RGB	YCbCr 4:4:4	YCbCr 4:2:2	YCbCr 4:2:0
24 / 25 / 30	O	O	O	-
50 / 60	O	O	O	O

MHL-to-HDMI Connector

- Resolution: 3840 x 2160p, 4096 x 2160p

  The MHL-to-HDMI connector supports the following specifications regardless of the **HDMI UHD Color** settings.

Frequency (Hz)	RGB	YCbCr 4:4:4	YCbCr 4:2:2	YCbCr 4:2:0
24 / 25 / 30	O	O	O	-
50 / 60	-	-	-	O

Read Before Using Voice, Motion, or Face Recognition

Precautions for Voice, Motion and Face Recognition

Face Recognition

- This product saves thumbnail images of users' faces for use during the Face Login.
- Logging into the Smart Hub via Face Recognition may be less secure than logging in using an ID and password.

Using the TV Camera

- Under some circumstances and under certain legal conditions, the use/misuse of the TV camera may result in illegal actions. There may be obligations under local privacy laws regarding the protection of individuals concerning personal data and on the free movement of such data, and possibly other laws including criminal laws regulating camera surveillance both in the workplace and elsewhere.
- By using the TV camera, users agree that it will not be used (i) in locations where cameras are generally prohibited (such as bathrooms, locker rooms or changing rooms), (ii) in any manner that will result in an invasion of a person's privacy, or (iii) in violation of any applicable laws, regulations or statutes.

Motion Control

- **Motion Control** uses the camera. For **Motion Control** to work, you must be within the camera's recognition range. The camera's recognition range varies depending on the ambient light level and other factors.
- Run the **Motion Control Environment Test** before using Motion Control to determine the camera's recognition range.
- You may experience physical fatigue when using **Motion Control** for extended periods

Voice Control

- Voice Control does not support signs such as the minus (-) symbol and special characters, neither a word nor sentence that contains numbers or signs. It may be not available for certain languages or dialects, or in some areas. It also differs in performance depending on the selected language, pronunciation, voice sound level, and ambient noise.
- Voice Text Input requires that you agree to any third-party app's voice privacy policy and that you provide Samsung with the your MAC address and other private information.
- Voice Text Input lets you enter text using voice commands instead of a mouse, keyboard, or remote control. This feature is particularly useful for searching, browsing the web, and using applications.
- You must agree to the following privacy notices before using Interactive Voice Control:
  - Voice Recognition Privacy Notice and Nuance Privacy Notice

Requirements for Using Voice, Motion, or Face Recognition

Requirements for Using Voice Recognition

- The voice recognition rate varies depending on the volume/tone, pronunciation, and ambient sound environment (TV sound and ambient noise).

Requirements for Using Motion Recognition

- Before using motion recognition, make sure the TV's camera has been turned on.
- You should be located between 1.5m and 3.5m from the camera. The actual recognition range may vary depending on the camera angle and other factors.
- Motion Control relies on the TV camera and therefore will not function if the camera is pointed up or down. Adjust the camera's angle using the wheel on the back of the camera. Do not point the camera directly at the sun or any other light source or obstruct its view.
- For the camera to recognise movement, you have to stand out from the background.
- The appropriate ambient brightness is 50 to 500 lux. (100 Lux: Bathroom, 400 Lux: Living Room)
- Avoid direct sunlight when using **Motion Control**.
- Run the **Motion Control Environment Test** to assess the camera's recognition range before using Motion Control.

Requirements for using Face Recognition

- You should be located between 1.5m and 4m from the camera. The actual recognition range may vary depending on the camera angle and other factors.
- The appropriate ambient brightness is 50 to 500 lux. (100 Lux: Bathroom, 400 Lux: Living Room)
- Face Recognition can recognise up to 5 different users at a time.
- The TV may have difficulty recognising twins and people with similar faces as two different individuals.
- Note the following when using Face Recognition:
  - Do not cover your face with a hat, a pair of sunglasses, or your hair.
  - Your entire face must be visible to the camera. Avoid shadows over your face. Shadows prevent the camera from recognising your face accurately.
  - Keep your expression as neutral as possible. In addition, keep your mouth closed and as neutral as possible.
  - When you log into your Samsung account, your facial expression must be the same as the facial expression you had when you registered. Facial expression you had during the registration process.

Read Before Using SAMSUNG APPS

- Due to the product characteristics featured on the Samsung Smart Hub, as well as limitations in available content, certain features, applications, and services may not be available on all devices or in all territories. Some Smart Hub features may also require additional peripheral devices or membership fees. Visit http://www.samsung.com for more information on specific device information and content availability. Services and content availability are subject to change without prior notice.
- Samsung Electronics takes no legal responsibility whatsoever for any interruption of app services caused by the service provider for any reason.
- Application services may be provided in English only and available content may vary depending on the area.
- For more information about applications, visit the applicable service provider's website.
- An unstable Internet connection may cause delays or interruptions. In addition, applications may terminate automatically depending on the network environment. If this occurs, check your Internet connection and try again.
- Application services and updates may become unavailable.
- Application content is subject to change by the service provider without prior notice.
- Specific services may vary depending on the version of the application installed on the TV.
- An application's functionality may change in future versions of the application. If this occurs, run the application's tutorial or visit the service provider's website.
- Depending on the service provider's policies, certain applications may not support multitasking.

Web Browser Restrictions

- Select **Web Browser**. The browsing screen may differ from the one on your computer.
- The web browser is not compatible with Java applications.
- You cannot download files. If you attempt to download a file, you will receive an error message instead.
- The web browser may not be able to access certain websites.
- Playing Flash videos may be restricted.
- E-commerce for online purchases is not supported.
- With websites that have scrollable windows, scrolling a window can result in corrupted characters.
- ActiveX is not supported.
- Certain options are not accessible in Link Browsing mode. (Switch to Pointer Browsing to activate those options.)
- Only a limited number of fonts are supported. Certain symbols and characters may not be displayed properly.
- The response to remote commands and the resulting on-screen display may be delayed while a webpage is loading.
- Loading a webpage may be delayed or suspended completely with certain operating systems.
- The copy and paste operations are not supported.
- When composing an email or a simple message, certain functions such as the font size and colour selection may not be available.
- There is a limit to the number of bookmarks and the size of the log file that can be saved.
- The number of windows that can be opened concurrently varies depending on the search conditions and the TV model.

- The web browsing speed will vary depending on the network environment.
- Playing embedded video automatically disables PIP. Video playback may not commence after PIP is disabled. In this case, you will have to reload the page.
- The web browser supports .mp3 audio files only.
- The web browser supports a specific file format for importing and exporting bookmarks. (Compatible Format: Netscape-bookmark file- 1)
- The folder tree information is not included when importing and exporting bookmarks.
- Exporting bookmarks to a USB device connected to the TV saves the bookmarks under a folder named "Samsung SmartTV Bookmark".
- If the **Clock** (**System** > **Time** > **Clock**) has not been set, the browsing history will not be saved.
- The browsing history is saved from latest to oldest, with the oldest entries being overwritten first.
- Depending on the types of video/audio codecs supported, it might not be possible to play certain video and audio files while playing Flash content.
- Video sources from PC-optimised streaming service providers may not play properly on our proprietary web browser.
- Using the on-screen QWERTY keyboard automatically disables PIP. (Except when entering a URL.)

Photo, Video, and Music File Limitations

- The TV supports MSC (Mass Storage Class) USB devices only. MSC is a class designation for mass USB Drives. Types of MSC devices include external hard drives, flash card readers, and digital cameras. (USB hubs are not supported.) These kinds of devices must be connected directly to the TV's USB port. The TV may not be able to recognise the USB device or read the files on the device if it is connected to the TV via a USB extension cable. Do not disconnect the USB device while transferring files.
- When connecting an external hard drive, use the USB (HDD) port. We recommend that you use an external hard drive with its own power adapter.
- Certain digital cameras and audio devices may not be compatible with the TV.
- If there are multiple USB devices connected to the TV, the TV might not be able to recognise some or all the devices. USB devices that use high-power input should be connect the USB [5V, 1A] port.
- The TV supports the FAT, exFAT, and NTFS file systems.
- After sorting files in the Folder view mode, the TV can display up to 1000 files per folder. If the USB device contains more than 8,000 files and folders, however, some files and folders might not be accessible.
- The PTP (pier to pier) connection mode is available only for digital cameras. If you connect a smartphone or tablet to the TV using PTP mode, the TV will not recognise it.

Storage Device File Transfers

Storage device containing media content	Target device
USB Device	DLNA Device, SugarSync, Dropbox, SkyDrive, Mobile Device
Camera	DLNA Device
DLNA Device	USB Device
SugarSync, Dropbox, SkyDrive	USB Device
Mobile Device	USB Device

Supported External Subtitles

Certain files, depending on how they were encoded, may not play on the TV.

Name	Format
MPEG-4 Timed text	.ttxt
SAMI	.smi
SubRip	.srt
SubViewer	.sub
Micro DVD	.sub or .txt
SubStation Alpha	.ssa
Advanced SubStation Alpha	.ass
Powerdivx	.psb
SMPTE-TT Text	.xml

Supported Internal Subtitles

Certain files, depending on how they were encoded, may not play on the TV.

Name	Container
Xsub	AVI
SubStation Alpha	MKV
Advanced SubStation Alpha	MKV
SubRip	MKV
VobSub	MKV
MPEG-4 Timed text	MP4
TTML in smooth streaming	MP4
SMPTE-TT TEXT	MP4
SMPTE-TT PNG	MP4

Supported Image Formats and Resolutions

Certain files, depending on how they were encoded, may not play on the TV.

File Extension	Format	Resolution
*.jpg *.jpeg	JPEG	15360x8640
*.png	PNG	4096x4096
*.bmp	BMP	4096x4096
*.mpo	MPO	15360x8640

Supported Music Formats and Codecs

Certain files, depending on how they were encoded, may not play on the TV.

File Extension	Format	Codec	Note
*.mp3	MPEG	MPEG1 Audio Layer 3	
*.m4a *.mpa *.aac	MPEG4	AAC	
*.flac	FLAC	FLAC	Supports up to 2 channels
*.ogg	OGG	Vorbis	Supports up to 2 channels
*.wma	WMA	WMA	Supports up to 10 Pro 5.1 channels WMA lossless audio is not supported Supports up to the M2 profile
*.wav	wav	wav	
*.mid *.midi	midi	midi	Supports type 0 and type 1 "Seek" not supported Available only on USB storage devices
*.ape	ape	ape	NonSmart not supported
*.aif *.aiff	AIFF	AIFF	
*.m4a	ALAC	ALAC	

Supported Video Codecs

- Codec availability depends on the model.
- Certain files, depending on how they were encoded, may not play on the TV.

<table>
<tr><th>File Format</th><th>Container</th><th>Video Codecs</th><th>Resolution</th><th>Frame Rate (fps)</th><th>Bitrate (Mbps)</th><th>Audio Codec</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="15">*.avi
*.mkv
*.asf
*.wmv
*.mp4
*.mov
*.3gp
*.vro
*.mpg
*.mpeg
*.ts
*.tp
*.trp
*.mov
*.flv
*.vob
*.svi
*.m2ts
*.mts
*.divx</td><td rowspan="15">AVI
MKV
ASF
MP4
3GP
MOV
FLV
VRO
VOB
PS
TS
SVAF</td><td>H.264 BP/MP/HP</td><td rowspan="2">4096x2160</td><td>4096X2160: MAX 30
3840X2160: MAX 30
FHD: MAX 30
HD : MAX 60</td><td rowspan="2">50</td><td rowspan="15">Dolby Digital
LPCM
ADPCM(IMA, MS)
AAC
HE-AAC
WMA
Dolby Digital Plus
MPEG(MP3)
DTS(Core, LBR)
G.711(A-Law, µ-Law)</td></tr>
<tr><td>HEVC(H.265)</td><td>4096X2160: MAX 30
3840X2160: MAX 60
FHD: MAX 30
HD : MAX 60</td></tr>
<tr><td>MVC</td><td rowspan="6">1920x1080</td><td rowspan="6">FHD: MAX 30
HD: MAX 60</td><td>60</td></tr>
<tr><td>DivX 3.11 / 4 / 5 / 6</td><td rowspan="6">30</td></tr>
<tr><td>MPEG4 SP/ASP</td></tr>
<tr><td>Window Media Video v9(VC1)</td></tr>
<tr><td>MPEG2</td></tr>
<tr><td>MPEG1</td></tr>
<tr><td>Motion JPEG</td><td rowspan="4">1280x720</td><td rowspan="4">MAX 30</td></tr>
<tr><td>Microsoft MPEG-4 v1 , v2 , v3</td></tr>
<tr><td>Window Media Video v7(WMV1),v8(WMV2)</td></tr>
<tr><td>H 263 Sorrenson</td></tr>
<tr><td>*.webm</td><td>WebM</td><td>VP8</td><td>1920x1080</td><td>6~30</td><td>20</td><td>Vorbis</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="7">VP6</td></tr>
</table>

Other Restrictions

- Codecs may not function properly if there is a problem with the content data.
- Video content does not play or does not play correctly if there is an error in the content or container.
- Sound or video may not work if they have standard bit rates/frame rates above the TV's compatibility ratings.
- If the Index Table is wrong, the Seek (Jump) function does not work.
- When playing video over a network connection, the video may not play smoothly because of data transmission speeds.
- Some USB/digital camera devices may not be compatible with the player.
- HEVC codec is only available in MKV /MP4 / TS containers.

Video Decoders

- Supports up to FHD.264, Level 5.1
- Supports up to UHD.264, Level 5.1
- Supports up to HEVC FHD, Level 5.1
- Supports up to HEVC UHD, Level 5.1
- VC1 AP L4 is not supported.
- All video codecs excluding WMV v7, v8, MSMPEG4 v3, MVC, and VP6:

  Below 1280x720: 60 frame max

  Above 1280x720: 30 frame max
- GMC 2 or above is not supported.
- SVAF supports Top/Bottom, Side by side, and Left/Right view sequence types (2 ES).
- This can only support the BD MVC specifications.

Audio Decoders

- WMA is supported up to 10 Pro 5.1 channels. Supports up to the M3 profile. This does not support WMA lossless audio.
- QCELP and AMR NB/WB are not supported.
- Dolby Digital Plus is supported for up to 5.1 channels.
- The DTS LBR codec is only available for MKV / MP4 /TS containers.
- Vorbis is supported for up to 5.1 channels.

Restrictions

Restrictions to PIP (Picture-in-Picture)

- PIP cannot be used while Smart Hub or 3D is active.
- Turning off the TV automatically disables PIP.
- Playing a game or using the karaoke feature on the main screen can result in lower PIP picture quality.
- To watch TV as a picture-in-picture, the main screen's source must be set to Component or HDMI. The PIP window supports TV signals only.

  Availability depends on the specific model and area.
- PIP is not supported in UHD source.

Flexible CI

Not supported 2 Scrambed Channel

Tuner 1	Tuner 2	Compatibility
Watch (Pay)	Watch (Pay)	X
Watch (Pay)	Watch (Free)	○
Watch (Free)	Watch (Pay)	○
Watch (Free)	Watch (Free)	○

Read After Installing the TV

Picture Sizes and Input Signals

Picture Size	Input Signal
Auto Wide	ATV, EXT, AV, DTV (576i/p, 720p), DTV (1080i, 1080p)
16:9	ATV, EXT, AV, DTV (576i/p, 720p, 1080i, 1080p), Component (480i/p, 576i/p, 720p, 1080i, 1080p), HDMI (480i/p, 576i/p, 720p, 1080i, 1080p), HDMI (4096 x 2160p)
Wide Zoom, Zoom	ATV, EXT, AV, DTV (576i/p, 720p, 1080i, 1080p), Component (480i/p, 576i/p, 720p, 1080i, 1080p), HDMI (480i/p, 576i/p, 720p, 1080i, 1080p)
4:3	ATV, EXT, AV, DTV (576i/p, 720p, 1080i, 1080p), Component (480i/p, 576i/p, 720p, 1080i, 1080p), HDMI (480i/p, 576i/p, 720p, 1080i, 1080p)
Smart View 1	HDMI (480i/p, 576i/p, 720p, 1080i, 1080p)
Smart View 2	DTV (576i/p, 720p, 1080i, 1080p), HDMI (480i/p, 576i/p, 720p, 1080i, 1080p)
Screen Fit	DTV (1080i, 1080p), Component (1080i, 1080p), HDMI (720p, 1080i, 1080p), HDMI (3840 x 2160p, 4096 x 2160p)

The **Picture Size** setting is applied to the current source. The applied **Picture Size** will remain in effect whenever you select that source unless you change it.

The **Picture Size** option is not available for images in the UHD resolution because the supported screen size is fixed.

Installing an Anti-Theft Kensington Lock

A Kensington Lock is a physical device that can be used to protect the TV against theft. Look for the Kensington slot on the back of the TV. The slot has a icon next to it. To use the lock, wrap the lock cable around an object that is too heavy to carry and then thread it through the TV's Kensington slot. The lock is sold separately.

The method of using a Kensington Lock may differ for each TV model. Refer to the Kensington Lock manual for more information.

Read Before Setting Up a Wireless Internet Connection

Wireless Internet Precautions

- This TV supports the IEEE 802.11a/b/g/n communication protocols. Samsung recommends using IEEE 802.11n. Video files stored on a device connected to the TV via DLNA may not play back smoothly.
- To use wireless Internet, the TV must be connected to a wireless router or modem. If the wireless router supports DHCP, the TV can use a DHCP or static IP address to connect to the wireless network.
- Select a channel that is not currently in use for the wireless router. If the channel set for the wireless router is currently being used by another device, the result is usually interference and/or a communications failure.
- Most wireless networks have an optional security system. To enable a wireless network's security system, you need to create a security key using characters and numbers. This security key is then needed to connect to a security-enabled AP.

Wireless Security Protocols

The TV only supports the following wireless network security protocols and is unable to connect to non-certified wireless routers:

- Authentication Modes: WEP, WPAPSK, WPA2PSK
- Encryption Types: WEP, TKIP, AES

In compliance with the newest Wi-Fi certification specifications, Samsung TVs do not support WEP or TKIP security encryption in networks running in the 802.11n mode.

If the wireless router supports WPS (Wi-Fi Protected Setup), you can connect the TV to your network using PBC (Push Button Configuration) or a PIN (Personal Identification Number). WPS automatically configures the SSID and WPA key settings.

Computer Connection Precautions

When you connect your TV to a computer, set the computer's video card to one of the standard resolutions listed in the tables below or on the next page. The TV will automatically adjust to the resolution you choose. Note that the optimal and recommended resolution is 1920 x1080.

Choosing a resolution not included in the tables can result in a blank screen or just the power indicator turning on. Refer to the user manual of your graphics card for compatible resolutions.

IBM

Resolution (DotsxLines)	Display Format	Horizontal Frequency (KHz)	Vertical Frequency (Hz)	Clock Frequency (MHz)	Polarity (Horizontal/ Vertical)
720x400	70Hz	31.469	70.087	28.322	-/+

MAC

Resolution (DotsxLines)	Display Format	Horizontal Frequency (KHz)	Vertical Frequency (Hz)	Clock Frequency (MHz)	Polarity (Horizontal/ Vertical)
640x480	67Hz	35.000	66.667	30.240	-/-
832x624	75Hz	49.726	74.551	57.284	-/-
1152x870	75Hz	68.681	75.062	100.000	-/-

VESA DMT

Resolution (DotsxLines)	Display Format	Horizontal Frequency (KHz)	Vertical Frequency (Hz)	Clock Frequency (MHz)	Polarity (Horizontal/ Vertical)
640x480	60Hz	31.469	59.940	25.175	-/-
640x480	72Hz	37.861	72.809	31.500	-/-
640x480	75Hz	37.500	75.000	31.500	-/-
800x600	60Hz	37.879	60.317	40.000	+/+
800x600	72Hz	48.077	72.188	50.000	+/+
800x600	75Hz	46.875	75.000	49.500	+/+
1024x768	60Hz	48.363	60.004	65.000	-/-
1024x768	70Hz	56.476	70.069	75.000	-/-
1024x768	75Hz	60.023	75.029	78.750	+/+
1152x864	75Hz	67.500	75.000	108.000	+/+
1280x720	60Hz	45.000	60.000	74.250	+/+
1280x800	60Hz	49.702	59.810	83.500	-/+
1280x1024	60Hz	63.981	60.020	108.000	+/+
1280x1024	75Hz	79.976	75.025	135.000	+/+
1366x768	60Hz	47.712	59.790	85.500	+/+
1440x900	60Hz	55.935	59.887	106.500	-/+
1600x900RB	60Hz	60.000	60.000	108.000	+/+
1680x1050	60Hz	65.290	59.954	146.250	-/+
1920x1080	60Hz	67.500	60.000	148.500	+/+
1920x1200	60Hz	74.556	59.885	193.250	-/+

Supported Video Resolutions

CEA-861

Resolution (DotsxLines)	Display Format	Horizontal Frequency (KHz)	Vertical Frequency (Hz)	Clock Frequency (MHz)	Polarity (Horizontal/ Vertical)
720(1440)x480i	60Hz	15.734	59.940	27.000	-/-
720(1440)x576i	50Hz	15.625	50.000	27.000	-/-
720x480	60Hz	31.469	59.940	27.000	-/-
720x576	50Hz	31.250	50.000	27.000	-/-
1280x720	60Hz	45.000	60.000	74.250	+/+
1280x720	50Hz	37.500	50.000	74.250	+/+
1920x1080i	60Hz	33.750	60.000	74.250	+/+
1920x1080i	50Hz	28.125	50.000	74.250	+/+
1920x1080	60Hz	67.500	60.000	148.500	+/+
1920x1080	50Hz	56.250	50.000	148.500	+/+
1920x1080	30Hz	33.750	30.000	74.250	+/+
1920x1080	25Hz	28.125	25.000	74.250	+/+
1920x1080	24Hz	27.000	24.000	74.250	+/+
3840x2160	24Hz	54.000	24.000	297.000	+/+
3840x2160	25Hz	56.250	25.000	297.000	+/+
3840x2160	30Hz	67.500	30.000	297.000	+/+
3840x2160	50Hz	112.500	50.000	594.000	+/+
3840x2160	60Hz	135.000	60.000	594.000	+/+
4096x2160	24Hz	54.000	24.000	297.000	+/+
4096x2160	25Hz	56.250	25.000	297.000	+/+
4096x2160	30Hz	67.500	30.000	297.000	+/+
4096x2160	50Hz	112.500	50.000	594.000	+/+
4096x2160	60Hz	135.000	60.000	594.000	+/+

HDMI

Resolution (DotsxLines)	Display Format	Horizontal Frequency (KHz)	Vertical Frequency (Hz)	Clock Frequency (MHz)	Polarity (Horizontal/ Vertical)
3840x2160	30Hz	67.500	30.000	297.000	+/+
3840x2160	25Hz	56.250	25.000	297.000	+/+
3840x2160	24Hz	54.000	24.000	297.000	+/+
4096x2160	24Hz	54.000	24.000	297.000	+/+

Licence

DivX Certified® to play DivX® video up to HD 1080p, including premium content.
ABOUT DIVX VIDEO: DivX® is a digital video format created by DivX, LLC, a subsidiary of Rovi Corporation. This is an official DivX Certified® device that has passed rigorous testing to verify that it plays DivX video. Visit divx.com for more information and software tools to convert your files into DivX videos.
ABOUT DIVX VIDEO-ON-DEMAND: This DivX Certified® device must be registered in order to play purchased DivX Video-on-Demand (VOD) movies. To obtain your registration code, locate the DivX VOD section in your device setup menu. Go to vod.divx.com for more information on how to complete your registration.
DivX®, DivX Certified® and associated logos are trademarks of Rovi Corporation or its subsidiaries and are used under licence.
Covered by one or more of the following U.S. patents: 7,295,673; 7,460,668; 7,515,710; 7,519,274

Manufactured under a license from U.S. Patent No's: 5,956,674, 5,974,380, 5,978,762, 6,487,535, 6,226,616, 7,212,872, 7,003,467, 7,272,567, 7,668,723, 7,392,195, 7,930,184, 7,333,929 and 7,548,853. DTS, the Symbol, and DTS and the Symbol together are registered trademarks & DTS Premium Sound | 5.1 is a trademark of DTS, Inc. ©2012 DTS, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

Manufactured under a license from U.S. Patent No's: 6,285,767, 8,027,477, 5,319,713, 5,333,201, 5,638,452, 5,771,295, 5,970,152, 5,912,976, 7,200,236, 7,492,907, 8,050,434, 7,720,240, 7,031,474, 7,907,736 and 7,764,802. DTS, the Symbol, and DTS and the Symbol together are registered trademarks & DTS Studio Sound is a trademark of DTS, Inc. ©2012 DTS, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories.
Dolby and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.

The terms HDMI and HDMI High-Definition Multimedia Interface, and the HDMI Logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of HDMI Licensing LLC in the United States and other countries.

Trademark: Rovi and Rovi Guide are trademarks of Rovi Corporation and/or its subsidiaries.
Licence: The Rovi Guide system is manufactured under licence from Rovi Corporation and/or its subsidiaries.
Patent: The Rovi Guide system is protected by patents and patent applications filed in the US, Europe, and other countries including one or more of the United States patents 6,396,546; 5,940,073; 6,239,794 issued to Rovi Corporation and/or its subsidiaries.
Disclaimer: Rovi Corporation and/or its subsidiaries and related affiliates are not in any way liable for the accuracy or availability of the programme schedule information or other data in the Rovi Guide system and cannot guarantee service availability in your area. In no event shall Rovi Corporation and/or its related affiliates be liable for any damages in connection with the accuracy or availability of the programme schedule information or other data in the Rovi Guide system.

Open Source Licence Notice
Open Source used in this product can be found on the following webpage. (http://opensource.samsung.com)
Open Source Licence Notice is written only English.

Glossary

- **480i/480p/720p/1080i/1080p**

  Generally refers to the number of effective scanning lines that determines the screen's resolution. There are two scanning methods: interlaced and progressive.

  - Scanning

    Sequential projection of pixels to form images. The higher the number of pixels, the clearer and more vivid the images.

  - Progressive

    A sequential scanning method that scans every line, one after another.

  - Interlaced

    A staggered scanning method that scans every other line until the end of the screen and then fills in the remaining lines.

  Example) If the number of horizontal scan lines is 480i

  Scans 240 lines from start to finish and then scans the remaining 240 lines for a total of 480 lines.

  * General differences between 480i and 480p are as follows:

	480i	480p
Horizontal Frequency	15.75Khz	31.5Khz
FPS	30	60
Lines on Screen	480	480

- **ARC (Audio Return Channel)**

  Generally, a separate RCA or optical cable needs to be connected in order for the TV audio to be heard through an AV receiver. With receivers that support ARC, however, digital audio can be transmitted via the HDMI cable only.

- **DVI (Digital Visual Interface)**

  Connecting the TV's DVI connector to a computer's DVI connector via an HDMI-to-DVI cable lets you use the TV as a computer monitor. However, HDMI-to-DVI cables deliver video signals only. You must connect a set of speakers to the computer using a separate cable to hear the computer's audio.

- **HDMI (High Definition Multimedia Interface)**

  HDMI is a method of transmitting both video and audio signals via a single cable.

- **Dynamic versus Static IP Addresses**

  If the network requires a dynamic IP address, use an ADSL modem or router that supports the Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP). Modems and routers that support DHCP automatically provide the IP address, subnet mask, gateway and DNS values the TV needs to access the Internet, so they do not have to be entered manually. Most home networks use a dynamic IP address.

  If the network requires a static IP address, enter the IP address, subnet mask, gateway, and DNS values manually when setting up the network connection. To get the IP address, subnet mask, gateway and DNS values, contact your Internet Service Provider (ISP).

  If the network requires a static IP address, use an ADSL modem that supports DHCP. ADSL modems that support DHCP also allow static IP addresses.

- **Ethernet**

  Ethernet is a LAN (Local Area Network) that uses coaxial cables standardised by the IEEE.

- **Component Connection**

  Component connections are mostly used for game consoles and transmit the video signal by splitting it into a luminance signal (Y) and two colour signals (Pb and Pr). The connector is marked as [Component IN]_(Pr, Pb, Y) on the back of the TV. On some devices, it is sometimes marked as Cr, Cb, Y. Cb and Cr are the digital conversions of the Pb and Pr signals.

  The connectors are normally colour-coded red (R), blue (B), and green (G) and offer the best picture quality possible for an analogue connection.